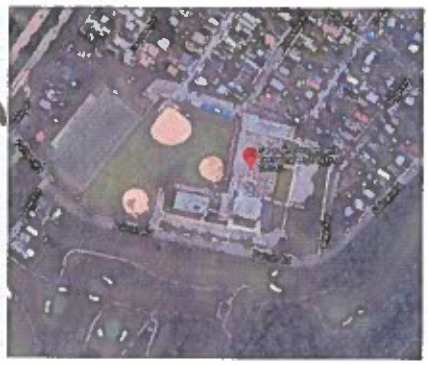
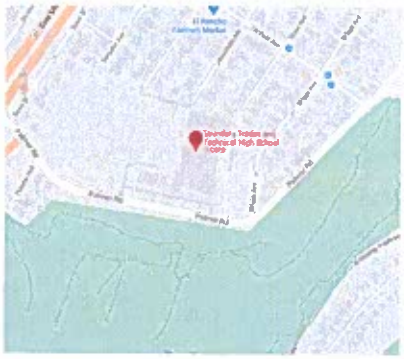




Yonkers Public Schools
Saunders Trades & Technical High School

HVAC Upgrades Project

Yonkers, NY

YPS CIP #10881

SED # 66-23-00-01-0-206-017

100% Construction Documents Submission

April 17, 2020

Prepared for: Yonkers Public Schools Facilities Management

Prepared by:

Jonah R. Allaben

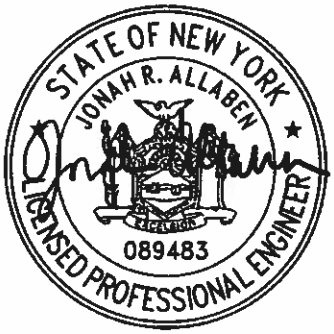
LiRo Engineers
3 Aerial Way
Syosset, NY 11791

John D'Angelo

Fuller + D'Angelo P.C.
45 Knollwood Road
Elmsford, NY 10523

Peter Gerbasi

LiRo Engineers
100 Duffy Ave #402
Hicksville, NY 11801



SPECIFICATIONS LIST

ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Preconstruction meeting.

B. Progress meetings.

C. Proof of Orders & Delivery Dates.

D. Submittals for review, information, and project closeout.

E. Number of copies of submittals.

F. Submittal procedures.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 01 3216 - Construction Progress Schedule: Form, content, and administration of schedules.

B. Section 01 3553 - Security Procedures .

C. Section 01 7000 - Execution: Additional coordination requirements.

D. Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals:

1.4 PROJECT COORDINATION

A. Project Coordinator: Owner Representative .

B. Coordination: The contractor shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other subcontractors and entities to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. The contractor shall coordinate its operations with operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation

C. Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors and/or subcontractor to ensure maximum accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair

D. Cooperate with the Project Coordinator in allocation of mobilization areas of site, access, traffic, parking facilities, field offices, and sheds.

E. Comply with Architect's and Project Coordinator's procedures for intra-project communications; submittals, reports and records, schedules, coordination drawings, and recommendations; and resolution of ambiguities and conflicts.

F. Comply with instructions of the Project Coordinator for use of temporary utilities and construction facilities.

G. Make the following types of submittals to Engineer

1. Requests for interpretation.
2. Requests for substitution.
3. Shop drawings, product data, and samples.
4. Test and inspection reports.
5. Design data.
6. Manufacturer's instructions and field reports.
7. Applications for payment and change order requests.
8. Progress schedules.
9. Correction Punch List and Final Correction Punch List for Substantial Completion.
10. Closeout submittals.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PRECONSTRUCTION MEETING

A. Engineer will schedule a meeting after Notice of Award.

B. Attendance Required:
   1. Yonkers Public Schools.
   2. Engineer.
   3. Consultants.
   4. Contractor and field superintendent.

C. Agenda:
   1. Execution of Yonkers Public Schools-Contractor Agreement.
   2. Submission of executed bonds and insurance certificates.
   3. Distribution of Contract Documents.
   4. Submission of list of Subcontractors, list of Products, schedule of values, and progress schedule.
   5. Designation of personnel representing the parties to Contract Yonkers Public Schools, and Engineer.
   6. Procedures and processing of field decisions, submittals, substitutions, applications for payments, proposal request, Change Orders, and Contract closeout procedures.
   7. Scheduling.
   8. Scheduling activities of Roofing Manufacturer's field inspections.
   9. Use of premises by Contractor.
   10. Yonkers Public Schools's requirements and occupancy prior to completion.
   11. Construction facilities and controls provided by Yonkers Public Schools.
   12. Temporary utilities provided by Yonkers Public Schools.
   13. Survey existing facilities prior to staring construction.
   14. Security and housekeeping procedures.
   15. Requirements for start-up of equipment.

D. Record minutes and distribute copies within two days after meeting to participants, with two copies to Engineer, Yonkers Public Schools, participants, and those affected by decisions made.

E. Engineer will record minutes and distribute copies within five days after meeting to all participants. Contactor shall distribute to all entities of the Contractor affected by decisions made.

3.2 PROGRESS MEETINGS

A. Engineerwill make arrangements for meetings, prepare agenda with copies for participants, preside at meetings.
   1. Meetings will be scheduled throughout progress of the Work at minimum at two week intervals.

B. Attendance Required:
   1. Contractor.
   2. Yonkers Public Schools.
   3. Engineer.
   4. Consultants.
   5. Contractor Superintendent.
   6. Major Subcontractor sand suppliers as appropriate to agenda topics for each meeting.

C. Agenda:
   1. Review minutes of previous meetings.
   2. Review of Work progress.
   3. Field observations, problems, and decisions.

4. Identification of problems that impede, or will impede, planned progress.
5. Review of submittals schedule and status of submittals.
6. Review of delivery schedules.
7. Review construction safety programs.
8. Review exiting and separation of construction
9. Maintenance of progress schedule.
10. Corrective measures to regain projected schedules.
11. Planned progress during succeeding work period.
12. Coordination of projected progress.
13. Maintenance of quality and work standards.
14. Effect of proposed changes on progress schedule and coordination.
15. Other business relating to Work.

D. Engineer will record minutes and distribute copies within five after meeting to all participants. Contactor shall distribute to all entities of the Contractor affected by decisions made.

3.3 WEEKLY COORDINATION MEETINGS

A. The Contractor shall schedule and hold weekly general project coordination meetings with the Owner's Representative, to review the work schedule for the week in order to insure the planned work does not conflict with facility operations.

3.4 CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE - See Section 01 3216

3.5 PROOF OF ORDERS AND DELIVERY DATES

A. Within two (2) weeks after the approval of shop drawings, samples, product data and the like, the Contractor(s) shall provide copies of purchase orders for all equipment and materials which are not readily available in local stock. The Contractor(s) shall submit written statements from suppliers confirming the orders and stating promised delivery dates. Dates shall be indicated and coordinated with the Construction Schedule.

3.6 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

A. All submittals are the product and the property of the Contractor. The Owner, Owner's Representative , Architect, or Consultants shall not be responsible for the contractor's construction means, methods or techniques: safety precautions or programs; Acts or admissions; or failure to carry out the work in accordance to the contract documents

B. Shop Drawing Submittal Log no later than ten (10) days after award of contract.

C. Shop Drawing Submittals shall be submitted no later than twenty (20) days after Letter of Award of Contract. No further payments will be made to the contractor after twenty (20) until all major submittals are made.

D. When the following are specified in individual sections, including but not limited to the following, submit them for review:
1. Product data.
2. Shop drawings.
3. Samples for selection.
4. Templates.

E. Submit to Engineer for review for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the contract documents.
1. Submittals for roofing or others requiring consultant review submit directly to consultant with copy to Architect

F. Samples will be reviewed only for aesthetic, color, or finish selection and for record documents purposes described in Section 01 7800 - Closeout Procedures.

G. After review, provide copies and distribute in accordance with Submittal Procedures article below .

H. The Architect shall review and approve or take other appropriate action on the Contractor submittals, such as shop drawings, product data, samples and other data, which the Contractor is required to submit, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with the design concept and the information shown in the Construction Documents. This review shall not include review of the accuracy or completeness of details, such as quantities, dimensions, weights or gauges, fabrication processes, construction means or methods, coordination of the work with other trades or construction safety precautions, all of which are the sole responsibility of the Contractor. The Architect's review shall be conducted with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's judgment to permit adequate review. Review of a specific item shall not indicate that the Architect has reviewed the entire assembly of which the item is a component. **The Architect shall not be responsible for any deviations from the Construction Documents not brought to the attention of the Architect, in writing, by the Contractor.** The Architect shall not be required to review partial submissions or those for which submissions of correlated items have not been received.

I. Marking or comments on shop drawings shall not be construed as relieving the Contractor from compliance with the contract project plans and specifications, nor departure therefrom. The contractor remains responsible for details and accuracy for conforming and correlating all quantities, verifying all dimensions, for selecting fabrication processes, for techniques of assembly and for performing their work satisfactorily and in a safe manner.

J. **Architect will review the original submittal and one (1) re submittal. Additional reviews will be additional services provided to the Owner and charged accordingly. The Owner will back charge the contractor accordingly.**

K. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing.

L. Deviations: Highlight, encircle, or otherwise identify deviations from the Contract Documents on submittals.

3.7 SUBMITTALS FOR INFORMATION

A. When the following are specified in individual sections, submit them for information:
   1. Design data.
   2. Certificates.
   3. Inspection reports.
   4. Manufacturer's instructions.
   5. Manufacturer's field reports.
   6. Other types indicated.

B. Submit for Engineer's knowledge as contract administrator for Yonkers Public Schools. No action will be taken.

3.8 SUBMITTALS FOR PROJECT CLOSEOUT

A. Refer to Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals.

3.9 NUMBER OF COPIES OF SUBMITTALS

A. Documents: Submit one electronic copy in PDF format; an electronically-marked up file will be returned. Create PDFs at native size and right-side up; illegible files will be rejected. All submittals shall be in electronic format and conforming to the following:
   1. Each item shall be in a separate file.
   2. Each file name shall start with the specification section number and contain an abbreviated explanation of what it contains; for example:
      a. 03 3000 Concrete; 07 5323 EPDM.pdf; 07 5323 Bond Adh.pdf ; 07 7100 Drain.pdf; 07 7100 Hatch.pdf; 09900 Painting;
   3. Add Revision number (Rev2 Rev3, etc) to the file name when resubmitting items, for example:
      a. 07 5323 EPDM Revl.pdf 07 5323 Bond AdhRevl.pdf

4. Use capital letters and spaces to make the names "readable" do not use special characters, underscores, hyphens, etc.
5. Keep the file names short, no more than 25 characters.
6. Provide a transmittal with each electronic submittal and list each item that's included.
7. Provide a Cover Sheet with each item - in the same file as the technical submittal.
8. Do not add dates to the file names, the files are automatically dated when created..
9. Do not zip the files, and do not put the files in Folders.
10. Do not email electronic submittal attachments larger than 5 MB.
11. Do not email multiple electronic submittals- rather bum the submittals on a CD and send the CD via FedEx or other overnight mail.
12. Make all technical submittals at one time per trade- refer to the specification for additional submittal requirements for example:
    a. Concrete; Masonry; Miscellaneous Fabrications; Roofing; etc.
13. Do not send MSDS with the technical submittals; collate all of the MSDS needed for the entire project in three ring binders, organized by specification section, and submit the binders to the Owner, with copy of Transmittal to the Architect, and maintain one copy at the project site.

B. Samples: Submit the number specified in individual specification sections; one of which will be retained by Engineer.
1. After review, produce duplicates.
2. Approved sample will be retained at the project site.
3. Retained samples will not be returned to Contractor unless specifically so stated.
4. Submit with each sample, in electronic PDF, data, cuts, photos, color, charts, etc.

3.10 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

A. Shop Drawing Procedures:
1. Prepare accurate, drawn-to-scale, original shop drawing documentation by interpreting the Contract Documents and coordinating related Work.
2. Do not reproduce the Contract Documents to create shop drawings.
3. Generic, non-project specific information submitted as shop drawings do not meet the requirements for shop drawings.

B. Transmit each submittal with a copy of approved submittal form attached to this section .

C. Identify Project, Contractor, Subcontractor or supplier; pertinent drawing and detail number, and specification section number, as appropriate on each copy.

D. Apply Contractor's stamp, signed or initialed certifying that review, approval, verification of Products required, field dimensions, adjacent construction Work, and coordination of information is in accordance with the requirements of the Work and Contract Documents.
1. Contractor's submittal of shop drawings certifies that the contractor has reviewed and coordinated this shop drawing and they are in conformance to the plans, specifications, applicable codes and other provisions of the Contract Documents.

E. All submitted shop drawings shall be stamped and signed by the Contractor with the following note:
1. "We the undersigned certify that we have reviewed and coordinated this shop drawing and they are in conformance to the plans, specifications, applicable codes and other provisions of the Contract Documents."

F. Deliver submittals to Fuller and D'Angelo e-mail address and/or Consultants when directed.

G. Schedule submittals to expedite the Project, and coordinate submission of related items.

H. For each submittal for review, allow 10 days excluding delivery time to and from the Contractor.

I. Resubmittals: Contractor shall resubmit within 5 working days after receiving submittal.

J. Allow 5 working days for processing each re submittal.

K. Identify variations from Contract Documents and Product or system limitations that may be detrimental to successful performance of the completed Work.

L. Provide space for Engineer and Consultants review stamps.

M. When revised for resubmission, identify all changes made since previous submission.

N. Distribute reviewed submittals as appropriate. Instruct parties to promptly report any inability to comply with requirements.

O. Submittals not requested will not be recognized or processed.

3.11 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not bear Contractor's approval stamp and will return them without action.

B. General: Except for submittals for the record and similar purposes, where action and return on submittals is required or requested, the Architect/Engineer will review each submittal, mark with appropriate "Action".

C. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or modifications required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action taken, as follows:

D. Final Unrestricted Release: Where the submittals are marked as follows, the work covered by the submittal may proceed provided it complies with the requirements of the contract documents; acceptance of the work will depend upon that compliance.

1. Marking: "No Exceptions Taken"

E. Final-But-Restricted Release: When the submittals are marked as follows, the work covered by the submittal may proceed provided it complies with both the Architect's/Engineer's notations or corrections on the submittal and with the requirements of the contract documents; acceptance of the work will depend on that compliance.

1. Markings: "Make Correction Noted"

F. Returned for Re-submittal: When the submittal is marked as follows, do not proceed with the work covered by the submittal, including purchasing fabrication, delivery or other activity. Revise the submittal or prepare a new submittal in accordance with the Architect's/Engineer's notations stating the reasons for returning the submittal; resubmit the submittal without delay. Repeat if necessary to obtain a different action marking. Do not permit submittals with the following marking to be used at the project site, or elsewhere where work is in progress.

1. Marking: "Revise and Resubmit"

G. Marking: "Rejected".

H. Other Action: Where the submittal is returned, marked with the Architect/Engineer's explanation, for special processing or other Contractor activity, or is primarily for information or record purposes, the submittal will not be marked.

SUBMITTAL COVERSHEET

Yonkers Public Schools
HVAC Upgrades
Saunders High School

ARCHITECT:
Engineer
45 Knollwood Rd.
Elmsford, NY10523

OWNER:
Yonkers Public Schools
One Larkin Center
Yonkers, NY 10701

CONTRACTOR: _____ CONTRACT: _____
ADDRESS: _____
TELEPHONE: _____FAX: _____EMAIL: _____
Facility Name: Saunders High School
Type of Submittal: Re-submittal: [ ] No [ ] Yes
[ ] Shop Drawings [ ] Product Data [ ] Schedule [ ] Sample
[ ] Test Report [ ] Certificate [ ] Color Sample [ ] Warranty
SUBMITTAL DESCRIPTION: _____
PRODUCT NAME: _____
MANUFACTURER: _____
SUBCONTRACTOR/_____
SUPPLIER: _____
SPEC. SECTION NO.: _____ DRAWING NO(S): _____
PARAGRAPH: _____ RM. OR DETAIL NO(S): _____

CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW STAMP

Contractor Review Statement: These documents have been checked for accuracy and coordinated with job conditions and Contract requirements by this office and have been found to comply with the provisions of the Contract documents.

Remarks:

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

NAME: _____ DATE: _____

END OF SECTION

CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Preliminary schedule.

B. Construction progress schedule, bar chart type.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 01 1000 - Summary of Contracts: Work sequence.

B. Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements

1.4 REFERENCES

A. AGC (CPSM) - Construction Planning and Scheduling Manual; 2004.

1.5 RESPONSIBILITY

A. The Contractor shall be responsible for preparing and updating the contract progress schedule. General Construction Contractor shall coordinate their work with work of the other prime contracts.

B. The Contractor shall develop a full schedule, in sufficient detail and clarity of form and technique so that the contractor can plan and control his work properly and the Owner's Representative and Architect can readily monitor and follow the progress for all portions of the work. The Contractor shall complete the detailed schedule within 10 days after contract award

1. Identify all long lead items and dates required on site.
2. In the event of conflict Owner's Representative and Architect shall resolve a provide direction which is in the best interest on the District.

C. The activities identified in the schedule shall be analyzed in detail to determine activity time durations in units of whole working days. All duration's shall be the result of definitive manpower and resource planning by the Contractor.

D. The activity data shall include activity codes to facilitate selection, sorting and preparation of summary reports and graphics. Activity codes shall be developed for:

1. Area: Subdivision of the building(s) and site(s) into logical modules or blocks and levels. Pods A, B, C and D.
2. Responsibility: Contractor or subcontractor responsible for the work.
3. Specifications: 16 Division CSI format.
4. System: Division of the work into building systems for summary purposes.
5. Milestone: Work associated with completion of interim completion dates or milestones
6. Pay Item: Work identified with a pay item on the Schedule of Values.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Within ten (10) days after date of Agreement, submit preliminary schedule .

B. If preliminary schedule requires revision after review, submit revised schedule within 5 days.

C. Within 5 days after review of preliminary schedule, submit draft of proposed complete schedule for review.

D. Within 10 days after joint review, submit complete schedule.

E. Submit updated schedule with each Application for Payment.

F. Submit under transmittal letter form specified in Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements.

G. The contractor(s) are hereby notified that payment requisitions will not be processed by the Architect and Owner's Representative nor paid by the Owner until all schedules are reviewed and approved by each prime contractor and the Architect or Owner's Representative.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Scheduler: Contractor 's personnel or specialist Consultant specializing in constructionscheduling with one years minimum experience in scheduling construction work of a complexity comparable to this Project, and having use of computer facilities capable of delivering a detailed graphic printout within 48 hours of request.

B. Contractor's Administrative Personnel: 3 years minimum experience in using and monitoring Bar Chart schedules on comparable projects.

1.8 SCHEDULE FORMAT

A. Listings: In chronological order according to the start date for each building and each activity. Identify each activity with the applicable specification section number.

B. Submit schedule in electronic PDF format.

C. Scale and Spacing: To allow for notations and revisions.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PRELIMINARY SCHEDULE

A. Prepare preliminary schedule in the form of a horizontal bar chart.

B. Based on the preliminary development of the progress schedule and on feedback from Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner's Representative or whatever updating may have occurred during the project start-up, the Contractor shall, for the entire work of the contract, prepare the (Master Schedule), secure critical time commitments for performing major elements of all the work.

3.2 GENERAL CONTENT.

A. The contractor shall prepare a schedule for their work.

B. Milestones: Include milestones in schedule, including, but not limited to, Notice of Award, Submittals, Verification of existing conditions, Removals, Delivery of Major Equiment, such as HVAC Units, Fans, Motors, Installation, Substaintial Completion, Completion of Punch List, Final Completion, and Closeout and long lead items such as storefront, doors and windows.

C. Show complete sequence of construction by activity, by room with dates for beginning and completion of each element of construction.

D. Identify each item by specification section number.

E. Show accumulated percentage of completion of each item, and total percentage of Work completed, as of the first day of each month.

F. Provide legend for symbols and abbreviations used.

3.3 BAR CHARTS

A. Include a separate bar for each major portion of Work or operation.

B. Identify the first work day of each week.

3.4 REVIEW AND EVALUATION OF SCHEDULE

A. Participate in joint review and evaluation of schedule with Owner's Representative at each submittal.

B. Evaluate project status to determine work behind schedule and work ahead of schedule.

C. After review, revise as necessary as result of review, and resubmit within 5 days.
   1. When project work is behind schedule indicate revisions required to put the project on schedule.
   2. Payments will not approved until satisfactory evidence is presented to put the project on schedule.

3.5 UPDATING SCHEDULE

A. Maintain schedules to record actual start and finish dates of completed activities.

B. Indicate progress of each activity to date of revision, with projected completion date of each activity.

C. Update diagrams to graphically depict current status of Work.

D. Identify activities modified since previous submittal, major changes in Work, and other identifiable changes.

E. Indicate changes required to maintain Date of Substantial Completion.

F. Submit reports required to support recommended changes.

3.6 DISTRIBUTION OF SCHEDULE

A. Distribute copies of updated schedules to Contractor's site files, subcontractors, major suppliers, Fuller and D'Angelo, P.C., and Owner's Representative and other concerned parties.

B. Instruct recipients to promptly report, in writing, problems anticipated by projections shown in schedules.

END OF SECTION

REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY of Reference Standards

A. The Owner shall file and obtain the Building Permit.

B. Regulatory requirements applicable to this project are the following:

C. 29 CFR 1910 - Occupational Safety and Health Standards; current edition.

D. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code; 2015.

E. New York State Uniform Fire and Building Codes known as the “Building Codes of the State of New York” and consist of the following:

1. Building Code of New York State
2. State Education Department Planning Standards, including Commissioner's Regulation Part 155.5, 155.7
3. Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State
4. Fire Code of New York State
5. Fuel Gas Code of New York State
6. Mechanical Code of New York State
7. Plumbing Code of New York State
8. Utility Company Regulations and Requirements.
9. Occupancy Classification:Education E
10. State Education Department: Planning Standards is applicable to the work. Any conflicts between the Building Codes of New York and the State Education Department Planning Standards, the most restrictive shall apply. Copies of the Planning standards are available at the SED web site.

F. Electrical Certification: The Electrical sub-contractor shall obtain UL Certification or Inspection from a Certified Electrical Organization for certification of electrical installations.

G. The Contractor shall furnish and pay for all other permits, fees and other installation costs required for the various installations by governing authorities and utility companies; prepare and file drawings and diagrams required; arrange for inspections of any and all parts of the work required by the authorities and furnish all certificates necessary to the Architect, Owner, and Consultant as evidence that the work installed under this Section of the Specifications conforms with all applicable requirements of the State Codes and National Board of Fire Underwriters

H. Any items of work specified herein and shown on the drawings which conflict with aforementioned rules, regulations and requirements, shall be referred to the Architect and Owner for decision, which decision shall be final and binding.

I. The work shall not be deemed to have reached a state of completion until the certificates have been delivered

J. EPA - Environmental Protection Agency

K. UL - Underwriters Laboratories

L. OSHA Part 1926 Safety and Health Regulations for Construction.

M. Federal Regulation for Asbestos Abatement

1. Title 30 CFR Part 61, Subpart G; The Transport and Disposal of Asbestos Waste
2. The Transport and Disposal of Asbestos Waste]
3. Title 40 CFR, Part 763 Asbestos Containing Materials in Schools; Final Rule and Notice

4. Title 49 CFR Parts 106, 107, and 171-179.The Transportation Safety Act of 1974 and the Hazardous Material Transportation Act..
5. Public Law 101-637 ASHARA

N. New York State Official Compilation of Codes, Rules and Regulations
1. Title 12 Part 56
2. Title 10 Part 73
3. Title 6 Parts 360-364
4. Labor Law - Article 30 and Sections 900-912
5. All applicable Additions, Addenda, Variances and Regulatory Interpretation Memoranda

1.3 MANDATORY OSHA CONSTRUCTION SAFETY AND HEALTH TRAINING

A. Pursuant to NYS Labor Law §220-h - All laborers, workers and mechanics working on the site are required to be certified as having successfully completed an OSHA construction safety and health course of at least 10 hours prior to performing any work on the project.

B. All contractors and their subcontractor's project superintendent, employees, directly or indirectly employed by the contractor to work on the project must at all times, whenever on the school property, wear an ID badge, safety vest, hard hat, etc. and all other required personal protective equipment as required by OSHA

1.4 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements.

B. Section 01 4219 - Reference Standards

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION

TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Temporary electric power and light.

B. Temporary sanitary facilities.

C. Temporary Controls: Barriers, enclosures, and fencing.

D. Vehicular access and parking.

E. Waste removal facilities and services.

F. Construction aids and miscellaneous services and facilities.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements for submittals.

B. Section 01 7000 - Execution progress cleaning.

C. Section 01 3553 - Security and Site Safety Procedures.

1.4 REFERENCES

A. Electrical Service: Comply with NEMA, NECA and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.

B. Refer to guidelines for Bid Conditions for “Temporary Job Utilities and Services” as prepared jointly by AGC and ASC for recommendations.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulations: The contractor shall comply with industry standards and with applicable laws and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction including, but not limited to, the following:
   1. Building code requirements.
   2. Health and safety regulations.
   3. Utility company regulations.
   4. Police, fire department and rescue squad rules.
   5. Environmental protection regulations

B. Standards: The contractor shall comply with NFPA 241 "Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alterations, and Demolition Operations," ANSI-A10 Series standards for "Safety Requirements for Construction and Demolition," and NECA Electrical Design Library "Temporary Electrical Facilities."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. General: The contractor shall provide each temporary service and facility ready for use at each location, when first needed to avoid delays in performance of work. Maintain, expand as required, and modify as needed throughout the progress of the work. Do not remove until services or facilities are no longer needed, or are replaced by the authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

B. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Regardless of previously assigned responsibilities for temporary services and facilities, the Installer of each permanent service or facility shall assume responsibility for its operation, maintenance and protection during use as a construction service or facility prior to the Owner's acceptance and operation of the facility.

C. Conditions of Use: Operate temporary services and facilities in a safe and efficient manner. Do not overload, and do not permit temporary services and facilities to interfere with the progress of work, or occupancy of existing facility by owner. Do not allow unsanitary conditions, public nuisances or hazardous conditions to develop or persist on the site.

D. Temporary Construction and Support Facilities: Maintain temporary facilities in a manner to prevent discomfort to users. Take necessary fire prevention measures. Maintain temporary facilities in a sanitary manner so as to avoid health problems.

E. Security and Protection: Maintain site security and protection facilities in a safe, lawful, publicly acceptable manner. Take measures necessary to prevent site erosion.

1.7 TEMPORARY UTILITIES

A. Yonkers Public Schools will provide the following:
   1. Electrical power and metering, consisting of connection to existing facilities.
   2. Water supply, consisting of connection to existing facilities.

B. Use trigger-operated nozzles, with back flow devices, for water hoses, to avoid waste of water.

1.8 DIVISION OF RESPONSIBILITIES

A. The contractor is responsible for the following:
   1. Installation, operation, maintenance, and removal of each temporary facility usually considered as its own normal construction activity, as well as the costs and use charges associated with each facility.
   2. Plug-in electric power cords and extension cords.
   3. Supplementary plug-in task lighting, and special lighting necessary exclusively for its own activities.
   4. Special power requirements for installation of its own work such as welding.
   5. Its own field office complete with necessary furniture, utilities, and telephone service.
   6. Its own storage and fabrication sheds.
   7. All hoisting and scaffolding for its own work.
   8. Collection and disposal, off site, of its own waste material.
   9. Collection of general waste and debris and disposing into containers provided by the Contractor.
   10. Secure lockup of its own tools, materials and equipment.
   11. Construction aids and miscellaneous services and facilities necessary exclusively for its own construction activities.

B. The Contractor is responsible and pays all costs for the following:
   1. Temporary toilets, including disposable supplies.
   2. Temporary wash facilities, including disposable supplies.
   3. Containerized bottled-water drinking-water units.
   4. Temporary daily janitorial services.
   5. First Aid Station and Supplies.
   6. Containers for non-hazardous waste and debris.
   7. Disposal of wastes containers.
   8. Barricades, warning signs, and lights.
   9. Security enclosure and lockup.
   10. Temporary Protection for existing flooring, from altered areas to exits.
   11. Construction aids and miscellaneous services and facilities.
   12. Temporary dust control.

1.9 USE CHARGES

A. General: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities are not chargeable to the Owner or the Architect, Engineer or the Owner’s Representative. The Architect, Owner, and Construction Manager will not accept a contractor's cost or use charges for temporary services or facilities as a basis of claim for an adjustment in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
   1. Water Service Use Charges: Water from the Owner’s existing water system may be used without metering, and without payment for use charges.

2. Electric Power Service Use Charges: Electric power from the Owner's existing system may be used without payment of use charges. Contractor and Sub-Contractors shall exercise measures to conserve energy usage.

1.10 TELECOMMUNICATIONS SERVICES

A. The contractor shall provide and pay for its own telephone service. Provide mobile phone service for all field superintendents and foreman.

1.11 TEMPORARY SANITARY FACILITIES

A. Provide and maintain required facilities and enclosures. Provide at time of project mobilization.

B. Maintain daily in clean and sanitary condition.

C. Sanitary Facilities: Sanitary facilities include temporary toilets, wash facilities and drinking water fixtures. Comply with governing regulations including safety and health codes for the type, number, location, operation and maintenance of fixtures and facilities; provide not less than specified requirements. Install in locations which will best serve the project's needs.
   1. Responsibilities: The Contractor is responsible for temporary sanitary facilities and their maintenance, including supplies. .
   2. Install self-contained toilets to the extent permitted by governing regulations.
   3. Supply and maintain toilet tissue, paper towels, paper cups and other disposable materials as appropriate for each facility for full contract duration. Provide covered waste containers for used material.
   4. Provide separate toilet facilities for male and female construction personnel where required by law.

1.12 BARRIERS

A. Responsibility: General construction barriers required for the project shall be the responsibility of the Contractor

B. Barricades, Warning Signs and Lights: Comply with recognized standards and code requirements for erection of substantial, structurally adequate barricades where needed to prevent accidents and losses. Paint with appropriate colors, graphics and warning signs to inform personnel at the site and the public, of the hazard being protected against. Provide lighting where appropriate and needed for recognition of the facility, including flashing red lights where appropriate
   1. Sign Materials: For signs and directory boards, provide exterior type, Grade B-B High Density Concrete Form Overlay Plywood conforming to PS-1, of sizes and thickness indicated. Provide exterior grade acrylic-latex-base enamel for painting sign panels and applying graphics.

C. Provide barriers to prevent unauthorized entry to construction areas, to prevent access to areas that could be hazardous to workers or the public, to allow for owner's use of site and to protect existing facilities and adjacent properties from damage from construction operations and removals .

D. Protect non-owned vehicular traffic, stored materials, site, and structures from damage.

1.13 FENCING

A. Construction: Commercial grade chain link fence.

B. Provide 6 foot (1.8 m) high fence around any materials or equipment stored on-site.; equip with vehicular and pedestrian gates with locks.

C. Locate where indicated, or if not indicated, as agreed with owner. Provide enclosed portions of the site determined to be sufficient to accommodate construction operations. Install in a manner that will prevent people, dogs and other animals from easily entering the site, except through entrance gates.
   1. Material:
      a. Steel fencing: Galvanized Chain Link and galvanized gates (non-climbable size).
      b. Fabric: No. 9 GA galvanized, steel wire mesh, furnish one-piece fabric widths for fencing up to 12' in height indicated in the Contract Documents.
      c. Framing and Accessories: End, Corner and Pull posts: 2.375" OD steel pipe.

d. Line Posts: Space 10'-0" O.C. maximum. 1.90" steel pipe or 1.875" x 1.625 C-sections.
e. Fence Rails: Locate at top and bottom of fabric. Post brace assembly - manufacturer's standard.
f. Wire ties: For tying fabric to line posts use wire ties spaced 12" O.C.
g. Height: 6'

1.14 INTERIOR ENCLOSURES

A. Provide temporary dustproof partitions as indicated or required to separate work areas from Yonkers Public Schools-occupied areas, to prevent penetration of dust and moisture into Yonkers Public Schools-occupied areas, and to prevent damage to existing materials and equipment.

B. Construction: Framing and gypsum board sheet materials with closed joints and sealed edges at intersections with existing surfaces:

C. Paint surfaces exposed to view from Yonkers Public Schools-occupied areas.

D. Temporary Dustproof Partitions: The General Construction Contractor shall provide dustproof partitions to separate work area from occupied sections of building. Partitions shall be full height metal stud surfaced with minimum 1/2" Type X gypsum board with 2 layers of poly sheething, overlapped and edges caulked.
1. Where isolated work is being performed by a prime contractor the contractor performing the work shall be responsible for protecting the occupied areas from the work areas as directed by the Architect, including providing dust protection.
2. Vertical Openings: Close openings of 25 sq. ft. (2.3sq. M) or less with plywood or similar materials.
3. Horizontal Openings: Close openings in floor or roof decks and horizontal surfaces with load-bearing, wood-framed construction.
4. Install tarpaulins securely using fire-retardant-treated wood framing and other materials.
5. Where temporary wood or plywood enclosure exceeds 100sq. Ft. (9.2 sq. m) in area, use fire-retardant-treated material for framing and main sheathing.

E. Contractor shall remove and reinstall any devices impacted by temporary partition installation. At conclusion of project electrician will again remove and reinstall these devices onto the permanent locations

1.15 SITE SAFETY AND SECURITY PROCEDURES- See Section 01 3553

1.16 VEHICULAR ACCESS AND PARKING

A. Responsibilities: The Contractor is responsible for vehicular access and parking and all costs shall be included in their bid.

B. Comply with regulations relating to use of streets and sidewalks, access to emergency facilities, and access for emergency vehicles.

C. Coordinate access and haul routes with governing authorities and Yonkers Public Schools.

D. Provide and maintain access to fire hydrants, free of obstructions.

E. Existing parking areas may not be used for construction parking unless designated and approved by the Owner.

1.17 WASTE REMOVAL

A. See Section 01 7419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal, for additional requirements.

B. The Contractor shall provide containers, at grade, sufficient for the depositing of non-hazardous/non-toxic waste materials, and shall remove such waste materials from project site as required or directed by the Owner's representative.
1. Provide specific containers for separation and storage of materials for recycling, salvage, reuse, return, and trash disposal, for use by all contractors and installers.
2. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.

3. Contractors shall not utilize the Owner's bins or dumpsters.

C. The Contractor shall broom clean the work area at the end of each work day.
   1. If the contractor fails to clean areas at the end of each work day the Owner shall perform the cleaning and back charge the contractor accordingly.

D. Provide waste removal facilities and services as required to maintain the site in clean and orderly condition.

E. Provide containers with lids. Remove trash from site periodically.

F. Open free-fall chutes are not permitted. Terminate closed chutes into appropriate containers with lids.

G. The contractor shall be responsible for daily cleaning up of spillage and debris resulting from its operations and from those of its subcontractors; and shall be responsible for complete removal and disposition of hazardous and toxic waste materials.
   1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
   2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.

H. Burying or burning of waste materials on the site will not be permitted. Washing waste materials down sewers or into waterways will not be permitted.

I. Provide rodent proof containers located on each floor level to encourage depositing of garbage and similar wastes by construction personnel.

J. Site: The Contractor shall maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.

K. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. The Contractor shall clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.

L. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.

M. Exposed Surfaces: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

N. Work Areas: The Contractor shall clean areas daily where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
   1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
   2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.

O. The Contractor is responsible to provide dust protection for their construction-related activities.

P. If daily cleaning and dust protection is not provided the Contractor will be back charged for cleanup performed by employees of the Owner or a separate contractor retained by the Owner.

1.18 REMOVAL OF UTILITIES, FACILITIES, AND CONTROLS

A. Remove temporary utilities, equipment, facilities, materials, prior to Date of Substantial Completion inspection.

B. Clean and repair damage caused by installation or use of temporary work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION -

3.1 STORAGE FACILITIES

A. The Contractor and each subcontractor shall provide temporary storage facilities as required for his own use. Temporary structures shall be located at the fenced staging area, and shall be removed upon completion of the work or when directed.

B. Materials delivered to the site shall be safely stored and adequately protected against loss or damage. Particular care shall be taken to protect and cover materials that are liable to be damaged by the elements.

C. Due to limited on site storage space, the Contractor shall coordinate delivery of his materials with the Owner's Representative who will determine when large deliveries shall be made and shall be designate storage locations on site for delivered materials. All stored materials must be stored in locked, watertight trailers, paid for by applicable contractor.

3.2 FIRE PREVENTION AND CONTROL

A. Refer to Section 01 3553 - Site Safety and Security Procedures.

B. The Contractors shall comply with the safety provisions of the National Fire Protection Association's "National Fire Codes" pertaining to the work and, particularly, in connection with any cutting or welding performed as part of the work

3.3 DISCONTINUE, CHANGES AND REMOVAL

A. The Contractors shall:

1. Discontinue all temporary services required by the Contract when so directed by the Architect. and Owner's Representative.
2. The discontinuance of any such temporary service prior to the completion of the work shall not render the Owner liable for any additional cost entailed thereby and each Contractor shall thereafter furnish, at no additional cost to the Owner, any and all temporary service required by such Contractors work.
3. Remove and relocate such temporary facilities as directed by the Architect. and Owner's Representative without additional cost to the Owner, and shall restore the site and the work to a condition satisfactory to the Owner.

3.4 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION:

A. The Contractor shall provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction in ways and by methods that comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects. Avoid using tools and equipment that produce harmful noise. Restrict use of noise making tools and equipment to hours that will minimize complaints from persons or firms near Project site.

3.5 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. Limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses to minimize waste and abuse.

B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal. Protect from damage by freezing temperatures and similar elements.

1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
2. Protection: Prevent water-filled piping from freezing. Maintain markers for underground lines. Protect from damage during excavation operations.

END OF SECTION

PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

A. General product requirements.

B. Re-use of existing products.

C. Transportation, handling, storage and protection.

D. Product option requirements.

E. Substitution limitations and procedures.

F. Maintenance materials, extra materials

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements: Product quality monitoring.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Products: Items purchased for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.

B. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility, except that products consisting of recycled-content materials are allowed, unless explicitly stated otherwise. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.

C. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process, or where indicated as a product substitution, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.

D. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required or specified by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.

E. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: Where a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis of design," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of other named manufacturers. Other than Basis of Design products, all other manufacturer's are considered as substitutions and shall be submitted as such.

F. Manufacturer's Warranty: Preprinted written warranty published by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Refer to 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements.

B. Product Data Submittals: Submit manufacturer's standard published data. Mark each copy to identify applicable products, models, options, and other data. Supplement manufacturers' standard data to provide information specific to this Project.

C. Shop Drawing Submittals: Prepared specifically for this Project; indicate utility and electrical characteristics, utility connection requirements, and location of utility outlets for service for functional equipment and appliances.

D. Sample Submittals: Illustrate functional and aesthetic characteristics of the product, with integral parts and attachment devices. Coordinate sample submittals for interfacing work.

1. For selection from standard finishes, submit samples of the full range of the manufacturer's standard colors, textures, and patterns.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Health Product Declarations (HPD): Complete, published declaration with full disclosure of known hazards, prepared using HPDC (Tool); HPD's with "unknown" listed for any hazard will not be considered acceptable.

1.7 ASBESTOS

A. Asbestos: All products, materials, etc., used in conjunction with this Project shall be Asbestos-Free.
   1. Contractor shall provide a certified letter to the Owner stating that no asbestos containing material has been used in this project. Refer to Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 EXISTING PRODUCTS

A. Do not use materials and equipment removed from existing premises unless specifically required or permitted by the Contract Documents.

B. Existing materials and equipment indicated to be removed, but not to be re-used, relocated, reinstalled, delivered to the Yonkers Public Schools, or otherwise indicated as to remain the property of the Yonkers Public Schools, become the property of the Contractor(s) and shall be remove from site.

2.2 NEW PRODUCTS

A. Provide new products for all uses unless otherwise specifically required or permitted by the Contract Documents.

B. DO NOT USE products having any of the following characteristics:
   1. Made outside the United States, its territories, Canada, or Mexico.
   2. Made using or containing CFC's or HCFC's.
   3. Containing lead, cadmium, asbestos.

2.3 PRODUCT OPTIONS

A. Products Specified by Reference Standards or by Description Only: Use any product meeting those standards or description.

B. Products Specified by Naming One or More Manufacturers with a Provision for Substitutions: Submit a request for substitution for any manufacturer not named. Submit on form attached.

C. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Administrative Requirements". All products, other than "Basis of Design", shall be submitted as a substitution. Show compliance with requirements. Submit on form attached

2.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials, spare parts, tools, and software of types and in quantities specified in individual specification sections.
   1. Deliver to Project site; obtain receipt prior to final payment.Store where directed by the Owner.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

A. **Engineer will consider requests for substitutions only within** 7 **days after date** Letter of Award**.**

B. Substitutions will not be considered during the bidding phase.

C. Document each request with complete data substantiating compliance of proposed substitution with Contract Documents.

D. A request for substitution constitutes a representation that the submitter:
   1. Has investigated proposed product and determined that it meets or exceeds the quality level of the specified product.

2. Agrees to provide the same warranty for the substitution as for the specified product.
3. Agrees to coordinate installation and make changes to other Work that may be required for the Work to be complete with no additional cost to Yonkers Public Schools.
4. Waives claims for additional costs or time extension that may subsequently become apparent.

E. Substitutions will not be considered when they are indicated or implied on shop drawing or product data submittals, without separate written request, or when acceptance will require revision to the Contract Documents.

F. Substitution Submittal Procedure (after contract award):
1. Substitution Request Form: Use form provided in this Section.
2. Submit in electronic PDF format one copy of request for substitution for consideration. Limit each request to one proposed substitution.
3. Submit shop drawings, product data, and certified test results attesting to the proposed product equivalence. Burden of proof is on proposer.
4. Statement indicating why specified material or product cannot be provided.
5. Coordination information, including a list of changes or modifications needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors, that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
6. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
7. Samples, where applicable or requested.
8. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
9. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
10. Research/evaluation reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
11. Detailed comparison of Contractor's Construction Schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating lack of availability or delays in delivery.
12. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
13. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and is appropriate for applications indicated.
14. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
15. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 30 days of receipt of request, or 7 days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
    a. Use product specified if Architect cannot make a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.
16. Engineer will notify Contractor in writing of decision to accept or reject request.

3.2 TRANSPORTATION AND HANDLING

A. Package products for shipment in manner to prevent damage; for equipment, package to avoid loss of factory calibration.

B. If special precautions are required, attach instructions prominently and legibly on outside of packaging.

C. Coordinate schedule of product delivery to designated prepared areas in order to minimize site storage time and potential damage to stored materials.

D. Transport and handle products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

E. Transport materials in covered trucks to prevent contamination of product and littering of surrounding areas.

F. Promptly inspect shipments to ensure that products comply with requirements, quantities are correct, and products are undamaged.

G. Provide equipment and personnel to handle products by methods to prevent soiling, disfigurement, or damage, and to minimize handling.

H. Arrange for the return of packing materials, such as wood pallets, where economically feasible.

3.3 STORAGE AND PROTECTION

A. Designate receiving/storage areas for incoming products so that they are delivered according to installation schedule and placed convenient to work area in order to minimize waste due to excessive materials handling and misapplication.

B. Store and protect products in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.

C. Store with seals and labels intact and legible.

D. Store sensitive products in weather tight, climate controlled, enclosures in an environment favorable to product.

E. For exterior storage of fabricated products, place on sloped supports above ground.

F. Protect products from damage or deterioration due to construction operations, weather, precipitation, humidity, temperature, sunlight and ultraviolet light, dirt, dust, and other contaminants.

G. Comply with manufacturer's warranty conditions, if any.

H. Cover products subject to deterioration with impervious sheet covering. Provide ventilation to prevent condensation and degradation of products.

I. Prevent contact with material that may cause corrosion, discoloration, or staining.

J. Provide equipment and personnel to store products by methods to prevent soiling, disfigurement, or damage.

K. Arrange storage of products to permit access for inspection. Periodically inspect to verify products are undamaged and are maintained in acceptable condition.

SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM

SUBSTITUTION REQUEST No. _____

(After the Bidding Phase)

Project: HVAC Upgrades

Substitution Request Number: _____

From: _____

Date: _____

A/E Project Number: 20370.00

Contract For: _____

Specification Title: _____Description: _-_____

Section:_____ Page:_____ Article/Paragraph: _____

Proposed Substitution:

Manufacturer: _____ Address: _____ Phone:_____
_____model no.: _____
Installer:_____ Address: _____ Phone: _____
History: _____New product _____2-5 years old _____ 5-10 yrs old _____ More than 10 years old
Differences between proposed substitution and specified product:
_____
Point-by-point comparative data attached - REQUIRED
Reason for not providing specified item: _____

Similar Installation:

Project: _____ Architect: _____
Address:_____ Owner: _____
Date Installed: _____

Proposed substitution affects other parts of Work: ____ No ____Yes; explain
_____

Savings to Owner for accepting substitution: _____ ($)

Proposed substitution changes Contract Time: ____ No ____ Yes Add _____Deduct _____days.

Supporting Data Attached: ____ Drawings ____ Product Data ____ Samples _____ Tests Reports

The Undersigned certifies:

Proposed substitution has been fully investigated and determined to be equal or superior in all respects to specified product.

Same warranty will be furnished for proposed substitution as for specified product.

Same maintenance service and source of replacement parts, as applicable, is available.

Proposed substitution will have no adverse effect on other trades and will not affect or delay progress schedule.

Cost data as stated above is complete. Claims for additional costs related to accepted substitution which may subsequently become apparent are to be waived.

Proposed substitution does not affect dimensions and functional clearances.

Payment will be made for changes to building design, including A/E design, detailing, and construction costs caused by the substitution.

Coordination, installation, and changes in the Work as necessary for accepted substitution will be complete in all respects.

Submitted by: _____

Signed by: _____

Firm: _____

Address: _____

Telephone: _____

Attachments:

A/E's REVIEW AND ACTION

____ Substitution approved - Make submittals in accordance with Specification Section 01330

____ Substitution approved as noted - Make submittals in accordance with Specification Section 01330.

____ Substitution rejected - Use specified materials.

____ Substitution Request received too late - Use specified materials.

:_____Date:_____

Additional Comments: __ Contractor __ Subcontractor __ Supplier __ Manufacturer __ A/E

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

END OF SECTION

EXECUTION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Examination, preparation, and general installation procedures.

B. Requirements for alterations work, including selective removals .

C. Removals and dust control.

D. Inspections prior to start of work.

E. Cutting and patching.

F. General installation of products.

G. Progress cleaning.

H. Protection of installed construction.

I. Correction of the Work.

J. Dust control

K. Cleaning and protection.

L. Final Cleaning.

M. Starting of systems and equipment.

N. Demonstration and instruction of Yonkers Public Schools personnel.

O. Closeout procedures, including Contractor Correction Punch List, except payment procedures.

P. General requirements for maintenance service.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements: Submittals procedures, Electronic document submittal service.

B. Section 01 4000 - Quality Requirements: Testing and inspection procedures.

C. Section 01 5000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls.

D. Section 10 00250 - 10 00250

E. Section 01 3553 - Security Procedures

F. Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals: Project record documents, operation and maintenance data, warranties and bonds.

G. Section 07 8400 - Firestopping.

H. Section 07 9005 - Joint Sealers

I. Individual Product Specification Sections:
   1. Advance notification to other sections of openings required in work of those sections.
   2. Limitations on cutting structural members.

1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. NFPA 241 - Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations; 2013.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.

C. Cutting and Patching: Submit written request in advance of cutting or alteration that affects:
   1. Structural integrity of any element of Project.
   2. Integrity of weather exposed or moisture resistant element.
   3. Efficiency, maintenance, or safety of any operational element.
   4. Visual qualities of sight exposed elements.
   5. Work of Yonkers Public Schools or separate Contractor.

1.6 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Refer to Section 00 4401 Qualifications of Bidders.

B. Refer to individual sections for additional requirements.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Use of explosives is not permitted.

B. Grade site to drain. Maintain excavations free of water. Provide, operate, and maintain pumping equipment.

C. Dust Control: Execute work by methods to minimize raising dust from construction operations. Provide positive means to prevent air-borne dust from dispersing into atmosphere and over adjacent property.
   1. Provide dust-proof barriers between construction areas and areas continuing to be occupied by Yonkers Public Schools.

D. Noise Control: Provide methods, means, and facilities to minimize noise produced by construction operations.
   1. At All Times: Excessively noisy tools and operations will not be tolerated inside the building at any time of day; excessively noisy includes jackhammers.
   2. Outdoors: Limit conduct of especially noisy exterior work to the hours of 8 am to 5 pm.
   3. Indoors: Limit conduct of especially noisy interior work to the hours of 6 pm to 7 am.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate scheduling, submittals, and work of the various sections of the Project Manual to ensure efficient and orderly sequence of installation of interdependent construction elements.

B. Coordinate completion and clean-up of work of separate sections.

C. After Yonkers Public Schools occupancy of premises, coordinate access to site for correction of defective work and work not in accordance with Contract Documents, to minimize disruption of Yonkers Public Schools's activities.

D. General: The General Construction Contractor includes general coordination of the entire work of the project, including preparation of general coordination drawings, diagrams and schedules and control of site utilization from the beginning of construction activity through project closeout and warranty periods.

E. Alterations: Where applicable, requirements of the contract documents apply to alteration work in the same manner as to new construction. Refer to drawings for specific requirements of alteration work. Primarily, alterations can be described as normal architectural, mechanical and electrical alterations. Contractors shall review phasing and scheduling of the work to understand that certain areas of work must be completed and occupied prior to start of other work. This is essential to the Owner in their ability to maintain the educational programs during construction.

1.9 CODES, PERMITS, FEES, ETC. Refer to Section 01 4100 Regalatory Requirements

A. The Yonkers Public Schools shall file and obtain the Building Permit.

B. The Contractor shall furnish and pay for all permits, fees and other installation costs required for the various installations by governing authorities and utility companies; prepare and file drawings and diagrams required; arrange for inspections of any and all parts of the work required by the authorities and

furnish all certificates necessary to the Architect and Owner as evidence that the work installed under this Section of the Specifications conforms with all applicable requirements of the Municipal and State Codes, National Board of Fire Underwriters, National Electric Code.

C. Any items of work specified herein and shown on the drawings which conflict with aforementioned rules, regulations and requirements, shall be referred to the Architect and Owner for decision, which decision shall be final and binding.

D. The work shall not be deemed to have reached a state of completion until the certificates have been delivered.

E. The building is to be constructed under the following Rules and Regulations of the New York State Uniform Fire and Building Codes known as the "Building Codes of the State of New York" and consist of the following:

1. Building Code of New York State
2. State Education Department Planning Standards, including Commissioner's Regulation Part 155.5, 155.7
3. Energy Conservation Construction Code of New York State
4. Fire Code of New York State
5. Fuel Gas Code of New York State
6. Mechanical Code of New York State
7. Plumbing Code of New York State

F. State Education Department: Planning Standards is applicable to the work. Any conflicts between the Building Codes of New York and the State Education Department Planning Standards, the most restrictive shall apply. Copies of the Planning standards are available at the SED web site.

1.10 MANDATORY OSHA CONSTRUCTION SAFETY AND HEALTH TRAINING

A. Pursuant to NYS Labor Law §220-h - On all public work projects all laborers, workers and mechanics working on the site are required to be certified as having successfully completed an OSHA construction safety and health course of at least 10 hours prior to performing any work on the project.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. New Materials: As specified in product sections; match existing products and work for patching and extending work.

B. Type and Quality of Existing Products: Determine by inspecting and testing products where necessary, referring to existing work as a standard.

C. Product Substitution: For any proposed change in materials, submit request for substitution described in Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements.

D. Barriers shall be constructed of sturdy lumber having a minimum size of 2 x 4.

1. Signs shall be made of sturdy plywood of 1/2" minimum thickness and shall be made to legible at a distance of 50 feet.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Prior to start of construction take photographs, video's or similar documentation as evidence of existing project conditions as follows:

1. Interior views: Each room and areas of outside work area which could be construded as damaged caused by the contractor.
2. Exterior views: Each area of work and areas of outside work area which could be construded as damage caused by the contractor.

B. Verify that existing site conditions and substrate surfaces are acceptable for subsequent work. Start of work means acceptance of existing conditions.

C. Examine and verify specific conditions described in individual specification sections.

D. Take field measurements before confirming product orders or beginning fabrication, to minimize waste due to over-ordering or misfabrication.

E. Prior to Cutting: Examine existing conditions prior to commencing work, including elements subject to damage or movement during cutting and patching. After uncovering existing work, assess conditions affecting performance of work. Beginning of cutting or patching means acceptance of existing conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrate surfaces prior to applying next material or substance.

B. Seal cracks or openings of substrate prior to applying next material or substance.

C. Apply manufacturer required or recommended substrate primer, sealer, or conditioner prior to applying any new material or substance in contact or bond.

3.3 REMOVAL AND DUST CONTROL

A. The following procedures shall be followed when removals will create dust:
   1. Exterior
      a. Work must be in compliance with OSHA Construction Standard (29 CFR 1926.62).
      b. Windows directly below, above and adjacent to the work area shall be closed.
      c. Provide tarps on the outside of the building to catch all dust, debris and paint chips when items are being removed and installed.
      d. Roof top exhaust fans and HVAC equipment to shut down and intakes covered.
   2. Interior:
      a. Floor surfaces shall be provided with a minimum of one layer of six mil plastic.
      b. All air vents in the room shall be closed, shut off and sealed.
      c. Access to all rooms undergoing removals shall be restricted to prevent unauthorized entry.
      d. All moveable objects will be moved away from the vicinity of the removals by the Contractor. The Contractor shall cover with a drop cloth.
      e. All corridors used by Contractors shall be mopped and left clean daily.
   3. Contractor shall provide labor for daily cleanup on the interior and the exterior of the building as required or directed by the Owner's Representative. Any visible debris shall be removed prior to occupancy the following day.
   4. All debris shall be disposed of properly in accordance with Federal, State and Local Regulations. Refer to Section 01 5000 - Temporary Facilities and Controls sections for containers required.
   5. Do not leave any openings unprotected at end of work day or during periods of excessive cold weather or precipitation.
   6. At completion of each work area HEPA vacuumed and wet wiped.

3.4 CHEMICAL FUMES AND OTHER CONTAMINATES

A. The Contractor shall be responsible for the control of chemical fumes, gases and other contaminates produced by welding, gasoline or diesel engines, roofing, paving, painting, etc., to ensure they do not enter occupied portions of the building or air intakes.

B. The Contractor shall be responsible to ensure that activities and materials which result in “off-gassing” of volatile organic compounds such as glues, paints, furniture, carpeting, wall covering, drapery, etc., are scheduled, cured or ventilated in accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations before a space can be occupied.

3.5 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. In addition to compliance with regulatory requirements, conduct construction operations in compliance with NFPA 241, including applicable recommendations in Appendix A.

B. Install products as specified in individual sections, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, and so as to avoid waste due to necessity for replacement.

C. Make vertical elements plumb and horizontal elements level, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Saw cut all concrete slabs and asphalt paving.

E. Install equipment and fittings plumb and level, neatly aligned with adjacent vertical and horizontal lines, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Make consistent texture on surfaces, with seamless transitions, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Make neat transitions between different surfaces, maintaining texture and appearance.

3.6 ALTERATIONS

A. Drawings showing existing construction and utilities are based on casual field observation and existing record documents only.
   1. Verify that construction and utility arrangements are as shown.
   2. Report discrepancies to Engineer before disturbing existing installation.
   3. Beginning of alterations work constitutes acceptance of existing conditions.

B. Keep areas in which alterations are being conducted separated from other areas that are still occupied.
   1. Provide, erect, and maintain temporary dustproof partitions of construction specified in Section 01 5000 in locations indicated on drawings.

C. Maintain weatherproof exterior building enclosure except for interruptions required for replacement or modifications; take care to prevent water and humidity damage.
   1. Where openings in exterior enclosure exist, provide construction to make exterior enclosure weatherproof.
   2. Insulate existing ducts or pipes that are exposed to outdoor ambient temperatures by alterations work.

D. Remove existing work as indicated and as required to accomplish new work.
   1. Remove items indicated on drawings.
   2. Where new surface finishes are to be applied to existing work, perform removals, patch, and prepare existing surfaces as required to receive new finish; remove existing finish if necessary for successful application of new finish.
   3. Where new surface finishes are not specified or indicated, patch holes and damaged surfaces to match adjacent finished surfaces as closely as possible.

E. Services (Including but not limited to HVAC, Plumbing, and Electrical): Remove, relocate, and extend existing systems to accommodate new construction.
   1. Maintain existing active systems that are to remain in operation; maintain access to equipment and operational components; if necessary, modify installation to allow access or provide access panel.
   2. Where existing systems or equipment are not active and Contract Documents require reactivation, put back into operational condition; repair supply, distribution, and equipment as required.
   3. Where existing active systems serve occupied facilities but are to be replaced with new services, maintain existing systems in service until new systems are complete and ready for service.
      a. Identify new equipment installed, but not in service, with appropriate signage or other forms of identification. indicating "Not in Service".
      b. Disable existing systems only to make switchovers and connections; minimize duration of outages.
      c. Provide temporary connections as required to maintain existing systems in service.
      d. Perform all switchovers, shutdowns, etc after hours, weekends, holidays or times when the building is not occupied. All switchover scheduling shall be approved by the Owner.
   4. Verify that abandoned services serve only abandoned facilities.
   5. Remove conduits, including those above accessible ceilings; remove back to source of supply where possible, otherwise cap stub and tag with identification; patch holes left by removal using materials specified for new construction.

F. Protect existing work to remain.
   1. Prevent movement of structure; provide shoring and bracing if necessary.
   2. Perform cutting to accomplish removals neatly and as specified for cutting new work.
   3. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during removal work.
   4. Patch as specified for patching new work.

G. Adapt existing work to fit new work: Make as neat and smooth transition as possible.

H. Patching: Where the existing surface is not indicated to be refinished, patch to match the surface finish that existed prior to cutting. Where the surface is indicated to be refinished, patch so that the substrate is ready for the new finish.

I. Refinish existing surfaces as indicated:
   1. Where rooms or spaces are indicated to be refinished, refinish all visible existing surfaces to remain to the specified condition for each material, with a neat transition to adjacent finishes.
   2. If mechanical or electrical work is exposed accidentally during the work, re-cover and refinish to match.

J. Clean existing systems and equipment.

K. Remove debris and abandoned items from alterations areas and dispose of off-site; do not burn or bury.

L. Do not begin new construction in alterations areas before removals are complete.

M. Comply with all other applicable requirements of this section.

3.7 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. Whenever possible, execute the work by methods that avoid cutting or patching.

B. See Alterations article above for additional requirements.

C. Perform whatever cutting and patching is necessary to:
   1. Complete the work.
   2. Fit products together to integrate with other work.
   3. Provide openings for penetration of electrical and other services.
   4. Match work that has been cut to adjacent work.
   5. Repair areas adjacent to cuts to required condition.
   6. Repair new work damaged by subsequent work.
   7. Remove samples of installed work for testing when requested.
   8. Remove and replace defective and non-conforming work.

D. Execute work by methods that avoid damage to other work and that will provide appropriate surfaces to receive patching and finishing. In existing work, minimize damage and restore to original condition.

E. Cut rigid materials using masonry saw or core drill. Pneumatic tools not allowed without prior approval.

F. Restore work with new products in accordance with requirements of Contract Documents.

G. Fit work air tight to pipes, sleeves, ducts, conduit, and other penetrations through surfaces.

H. At penetrations of fire rated walls, partitions, ceiling, or floor construction, completely seal voids with fire rated material in accordance with Section 07 8400, to full thickness of the penetrated element.

I. Patching:
   1. Finish patched surfaces to match finish that existed prior to patching. On continuous surfaces, refinish to nearest intersection or natural break. For an assembly, refinish entire unit.
   2. Match color, texture, and appearance.
   3. Repair patched surfaces that are damaged, lifted, discolored, or showing other imperfections due to patching work. If defects are due to condition of substrate, repair substrate prior to repairing finish.

J. Make neat transitions. Patch work to match adjacent work in texture and appearance. Where new work abuts or aligns with existing, perform a smooth and even transition.

3.8 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

A. All existing systems are required and shall remain operational during the performance of the work.

B. Notwithstanding anything contained in the Contract Documents to the contrary, the contractor shall not be permitted to disrupt operation of any building system or any of the services without Owner's prior written consent, which shall not be unreasonably withheld. Any request to perform such work shall be in writing, received by Owner and Architect no less than 5 working days prior to the commencement of the request for disruption, and shall detail:

1. The exact nature and duration of such interruption;
2. The area of the Building affected, and;
3. Any impact upon the Construction Schedule caused by such proposed temporary disruption. All Work shall be performed during the hours and on the days set forth in the Specifications.

3.9 WATCHMAN

A. The Owner will not provide watchman. The Contractor will be held responsible for loss or injury to persons or property or work where his work is involved and shall provide such watchman and take such precautionary measures as he may deem necessary to protect his own interests.

3.10 SECURITY SYSTEM Refer to 01 3553 - Security Procedures

A. The existing building contains a security alarm system maintained and operated by the Owner. Access into the existing building shall not be permitted unless the owner is notified and arrangements made to deactivate the system.

3.11 VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS

A. All openings, measurements, door frames, existing conditions and other similar items or conditions shall be field measured prior to submission of any shop drawings or manufacturers literature for approval.

1. Each Contractor shall investigate each space into and through which equipment must be moved. Equipment shall be shipped from manufacturer in sections, of size suitable for moving through restricted spaces. Where sectional fabrication and or delivery cannot be achieved, openings, enlargements etc shall be provided by each contractor whose equipment requires access, at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.12 PROGRESS CLEANING

A. Maintain areas free of waste materials, debris, and rubbish. Maintain site in a clean and orderly condition.

B. Remove debris and rubbish from pipe chases, plenums, attics, crawl spaces, and other closed or remote spaces, prior to enclosing the space.

C. Broom and vacuum clean interior areas prior to start of surface finishing, and continue cleaning to eliminate dust.

D. Collect and remove waste materials, debris, and trash/rubbish from site periodically and dispose off-site; do not burn or bury.

E. The Contractor is responsible for their own daily debris removal into containers provided by the Contractor. Working areas are to be broom swept on a daily basis by the Contractor.

F. The Contractor is responsible to provide dust protection for their construction-related activities.

G. If daily cleaning and dust protection is not provided the Contractor will be back charged for cleanup performed by employees of the Owner or a separate contractor retained by the Owner.

3.13 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED WORK

A. The Contractor shall be responsible for the protection of all his work and shall make good all damage to the Owners property, adjoining property, and/or to any work or material in place in the premises, or included in his contract, which is caused by his work or workmen. which may occur to his work prior to the date of the final acceptance.

1. From the commencement to the completion of the Project, the Contractor shall keep the parts of the work and the buildings free from accumulation of water no matter what the source or cause.

B. The Contractor shall be held responsible for and be required to make good at his own expense any and all damage done to the Owners property, adjoining property, and/or to any work or material in place in the premises, or included in his contract, which is caused by his work or workmen.

C. Protect installed work from damage by construction operations.

D. Provide special protection where specified in individual specification sections.

E. Provide temporary and removable protection for installed products. Control activity in immediate work area to prevent damage.

F. Provide protective coverings at walls, projections, jambs, sills, and soffits of openings.

G. Protect finished floors, stairs, and other surfaces from traffic, dirt, wear, damage, or movement of heavy objects, by protecting with durable sheet materials.

H. Protect work from spilled liquids. If work is exposed to spilled liquids, immediately remove protective coverings, dry out work, and replace protective coverings.

I. Prohibit traffic or storage upon waterproofed or roofed surfaces. If traffic or activity is necessary, obtain recommendations for protection from waterproofing or roofing material manufacturer.

J. Remove protective coverings when no longer needed; reuse or recycle plastic coverings if possible.

3.14 SYSTEM STARTUP

A. Coordinate schedule for start-up of various equipment and systems.

B. Verify that each piece of equipment or system has been checked for proper lubrication, drive rotation, belt tension, control sequence, and for conditions that may cause damage.

C. Verify tests, meter readings, and specified electrical characteristics agree with those required by the equipment or system manufacturer.

D. Verify that wiring and support components for equipment are complete and tested.

E. Execute start-up under supervision of applicable Contractor personnel and manufacturer's representative in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.

F. Submit a written report that equipment or system has been properly installed and is functioning correctly.

3.15 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTION

A. Demonstrate start-up, operation, control, adjustment, trouble-shooting, servicing, maintenance, and shutdown of each item of equipment at scheduled time, at equipment location.

B. For equipment or systems requiring seasonal operation, perform demonstration for other season within six months.

C. Provide a qualified person who is knowledgeable about the Project to perform demonstration and instruction of owner personnel.

3.16 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust operating products and equipment to ensure smooth and unhindered operation.

B. Refer to Individual Sections for Testing, adjusting, and balancing of systems: .

3.17 FINAL CLEANING

A. Final cleaning shall be the responsibility of the contractor and all costs for final cleaning shall be included in the Base Bid. Final cleaning responsibility shall be limited to all new additions and areas where renovations occur.

B. Execute final cleaning prior to final project assessment.

C. Use cleaning materials that are nonhazardous.

D. Clean interior and exterior glass, surfaces exposed to view; remove temporary labels, stains and foreign substances, polish transparent and glossy surfaces,

E. Remove all labels that are not permanent. Do not paint or otherwise cover fire test labels or nameplates on mechanical and electrical equipment.

F. Clean equipment and fixtures to a sanitary condition with cleaning materials appropriate to the surface and material being cleaned.

G. Replace filters of operating equipment.

H. Clean debris from roofs, gutters, downspouts, overflow drains, and area drains.

I. Clean site; sweep paved areas, rake clean landscaped surfaces.

J. Remove waste, surplus materials, trash/rubbish, and construction facilities from the site; dispose of in legal manner; do not burn or bury.

K. General: Provide final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.

L. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

M. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.

N. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.

O. Wax all resilient flooring.

P. Remove labels that are not permanent.

Q. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred, exposed finishes and surfaces evidence of repair or restoration. Replace finishes and surfaces that cannot be satisfactorily repaired or restored or that already show

R. Do not paint over "UL" and similar labels, including mechanical and electrical nameplates.

S. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.

T. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction.

U. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency. Replace burned-out bulbs, and those noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

V. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

3.18 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES Refer to Section 01 7800

END OF SECTION

CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Substantial Completion.

B. Final Completion.

C. Project Record Documents.

D. Warranties and bonds.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements: Submittals procedures, shop drawings, product data, and samples.

B. Individual Product Sections: Warranties required for specific products or Work.

1.4 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion:
   1. Advise Owner's Representative and Architect of pending insurance changeover requirements.
   2. Obtain and submit releases permitting Owner's Representaive and Architect unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
   3. Substantial Completion shall be when all work is completed, including all punch lists.

B. Prior to issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit, in writing, a request to the Owner's Representaive and Architect a request to perform site inspection for the purpose of preparing a "punch list".

C. Certificate of Substantial Completion will be issued **after completion of all punch list items** or Owner's Representative and Architect will notify Contractor of items, either punch list or additional items identified by Architect, **that must be completed or corrected before certificate** will be issued. After completion of "punch list" items submit the following:
   1. Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially completed the following:
   2. Manufacturer's Warranties (guarantees).
   3. Contractor's Warrantee (Five Years) and extended warrantees.
   4. Maintenance agreements, if any.
   5. Manifest for disposal of Hazardous material.
   6. Final cleaning.
   7. List of incomplete Work, recognized as exceptions to Architect's "punch list".
   8. Architect's punch list certifying all punch list items have been completed with each item signed off by the Owner's Representative and Contractor.
   9. Removal of temporary facilities and services.
   10. Removal of surplus materials, rubbish and similar elements.
   11. This application shall reflect Certificates of Partial Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
   12. As Built Drawings.
   13. Project Record Documents.

D. Request re-inspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

1. If necessary re-inspection will be repeated and the contractor shall pay for all additional inspections.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion

1.5 FINAL COMPLETION

A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting final inspection for determining date of Final Completion, complete the following:
   1. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection for acceptance. On receipt of request, Owner's Representative and Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will not process a final Certificate for Payment until after the inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
      a. Re-inspection: Request re-inspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

B. Following Final Inspection acceptance of work submit the following:
   1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 01 2000 - Price and Payment Procedures.
   2. Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion punch list items endorsed and dated Contractor and Owner's Representative certifying each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
   3. Update final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
   4. Release of liens from contractor and all entitles of the contractor.
   5. Consent of Surety to Final Payment, AIA Document G707
   6. Final Liquidated Damages settlement statement.
   7. Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens (AIA G706A).
   8. Contractors Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims (AIA G706).
   9. Contractor's Certification of Payment of Prevailing Wage Rates.
   10. Contractor's Certified Statement that no asbestos containing material was incorporated into the project.
   11. Asbestos manifest.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Contractor shall submit all documentation identified in this section within thirty (30) working days from the time the Contractor submits the list of items to be corrected, in addition to other rights of the Owner set forth elsewhere in the Contract Documents, to include but not limited to withholding of final payment. If the documentation has not been submitted within Thirty (30) day period, the Owner will obtain such through whatever means necessary. The Contractor shall solely be responsible for all expenses incurred by the Owner, provided the Owner has advised the Contractor of this action seven 7 days prior to the culmination date by written notice

B. Project Record Documents: Submit documents to Engineer with claim for final Application for Payment.

C. Warranties and Bonds:
   1. Make other submittals within 10 days after Date of Substantial Completion, prior to final Application for Payment.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. Maintain on site one set of the following record documents; record actual revisions to the Work:
   1. Drawings.
   2. Specifications.

3. Addenda.
4. Change Orders and other modifications to the Contract.
5. Reviewed shop drawings, product data, and samples.
6. Manufacturer's instruction for assembly, installation, and adjusting.

B. Ensure entries are complete and accurate, enabling future reference by Yonkers Public Schools.

C. Store record documents separate from documents used for construction.

D. Record information concurrent with construction progress.

E. Specifications: Legibly mark and record at each product section description of actual products installed, including the following:
1. Changes made by Addenda and modifications.

F. Record Drawings and Shop Drawings: Legibly mark each item to record actual construction including:
1. Field changes of dimension and detail.
2. Details not on original Contract drawings.

3.2 RECORD DRAWINGS

A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of blue- or black-line white prints of the Contract Drawings and approved Shop Drawings at the project site.

B. The Contractor is responsible for marking up Sections that contain its own Work and for submitting the complete set of record Specifications as specified.

C. Preparation: Mark Record Prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to prepare the marked-up Record Prints.

D. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
2. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
3. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
4. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.

E. Mark the Contract Drawings or Shop Drawings, whichever is most capable of showing actual physical conditions, completely and accurately. If Shop Drawings are marked, show cross-reference on the Contract Drawings.

F. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.

G. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

H. **Provide final record drawings on CD in PDF format.**

3.3 FORMAT

A. Identify and date each Record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location. Contractor shall certify and sign.

B. Record Prints: Organize Record Prints and newly prepared Record Drawings into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.

C. Identify Record Drawing as follows:
1. Project name.
   a. Date.
   b. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
   c. Name of Architect and Owner's Representative.
   d. Name of Contractor.

e. Contractor shall certify and sign each drawing

3.4 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA FOR MATERIALS AND FINISHES

A. For Each Product, Applied Material, and Finish:

B. Instructions for Care and Maintenance: Manufacturer's recommendations for cleaning agents and methods, precautions against detrimental cleaning agents and methods, and recommended schedule for cleaning and maintenance.

C. Where additional instructions are required, beyond the manufacturer's standard printed instructions, have instructions prepared by personnel experienced in the operation and maintenance of the specific products.

3.5 WARRANTIES AND BONDS

A. Obtain warranties and bonds, executed in duplicate by responsible Subcontractors, suppliers, and manufacturers, within 10 days after completion of the applicable item of work. Except for items put into use with Yonkers Public Schools's permission, leave date of beginning of time of warranty until Date of Substantial completion is determined.

B. Verify that documents are in proper form, contain full information, and are notarized.

C. Co-execute submittals when required.

D. Retain warranties and bonds until time specified for submittal.

CHECKLIST FOR PROJECT CLOSEOUT

AND PROCESSING OF FINAL PAYMENT

A. **PROJECT:** HVAC Upgrades.

BOARD OF EDUCATION BID NUMBER;

CLOSE-OUT SUBMITTALS: (As Applicable)

[ ] PREVAILING WAGE CERTIFICATION.

[ ] UL CERTIFICATION

[ ] ALL APPROVED SHOP DRAWINGS.

[ ] CERTIFICATES OF COMPLIANCE AND INSPECTION. (WHERE APPLICABLE MANUFACTURER'S REPORTS, ELECTRIC, ELEVATOR, ETC.)

[ ] NOTARIZED STATEMENT THAT ONLY NON-ASBESTOS MATERIALS WERE INSTALLED ON THIS PROJECT.

[ ] FULLY EXECUTED CERTIFICATE OF SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION: AIA G704.

[ ] CONTRACTOR'S WRITTEN FIVE-YEAR WARRANTY, MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY, AND EXTENDED WARRANTIES (IF ANY REQUIRED).

[ ] PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS: SECTION 01 7800.

[ ] AS-BUILT DRAWINGS.

EVIDENCE OF PAYMENT AND RELEASE OF LIEN

[ ] CONTRACTOR'S AFFIDAVIT OF PAYMENT OF DEBTS AND CLAIMS: AIA G706.

[ ] CONTRACTOR'S AFFIDAVIT OF RELEASE OF LIENS - AIA G706A PRIME CONTRACTORS AND SUBCONTRACTORS.

[ ] CONSENT OF SURETY TO FINAL PAYMENT AIA G707.

REFER TO SECTION 01 7800 PAR 1.4 AND 1.5 FOR ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS. FINAL PAYMENT WILL NOT BE PROCESSED UNTIL ALL ITEMS INDICATED ARE RECEIVED IN ACCORDANCE WITH SECTION 01 7800 - CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 02 82 00

ASBESTOS REMOVAL

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE OF WORK

A. This asbestos abatement Project will consist of the removal and disposal of asbestos containing flooring and mastic, as well the disconnect and abandoning of asbestos cement ducts associated with the mechanical HVAC system.

B. The work shall include but not be limited to the abatement work tabulated in the H-100 series drawings.

C. The Contractor shall be aware of all conditions of the Project and is responsible for verifying quantities and locations of all Work to be performed. Failure to do so shall not relieve the Contractor of its obligation to furnish all labor and materials necessary to perform the Work.

D. All Work shall be performed in strict accordance with the Project Documents and all governing codes, rules, and regulations. Where conflicts occur between the Project Documents and applicable codes, rules, and regulations, the more stringent shall apply.

E. Working hours shall be as required and approved by the Owner. Asbestos abatement activities including, but not limited to, work area preparation, gross removal activities, cleaning activities, waste removal, etc. may need to be performed during 'off-hours' (including nights and weekends). In addition, multiple mobilizations may be required to perform the work identified in this project. The Contractor shall coordinate and schedule all Work with the facility and Owner's representative.

1.02 SPECIAL JOB CONDITIONS

A. Any special job conditions, including variances obtained by the Owner, are described below.

1. The abatement contractor shall confirm the location and quantity of all asbestos removal and, prior to the start of any abatement activities, notify Yonkers Public Schools (YPS) of any inconsistencies with the Bid Documents, as well as any site conditions that were not captured by the Bid Documents that will impact the execution of the work.

2. The schedule for all work at the school must be coordinated with and approved in advance of mobilization by YPS.

3. Mechanical system components that the Contractor may need to access to perform the work of this contract, including oversized ducts, duct enclsoures, and plenum units, are considered confined spaces for purposes of planning and executing abatement work in this area. The Contractor shall submit a Confined Space Entry plan that must be approved by YPS and acknowledged by the local City of Yonkers fire rescue department.

4. The Contractor may perform partial demolition of mechcanical system components that are being taken out of service.

5. The abatement contractor shall perform asbestos abatement in a manner consistent with the project specifications as well as all applicable federal, state, and local regulations as modified by Site Specific Varainces.

6. The Contractor shall be aware of the presence of lead-based paint on all surfaces except those YPS has designated as non-lead-based paint, and apply the appropriate health and safety measures.

7. All work must be coordinated with YPS facility representatives prior to scheduling and mobilization of manpower and resources to the project site.

1.03 PERMITS AND COMPLIANCE

A. The Contractor shall assume full responsibility and liability for compliance with all applicable Federal, State, and local laws, rules, and regulations pertaining to Work practices, protection of Workers, authorized visitors to the site, persons, and property adjacent to the Work.

B. Perform asbestos related Work in accordance with New York State Industrial Code Rule 56 (herein referred to as Code Rule 56), 40 CFR 61, and 29 CFR 1926. Where more stringent requirements are specified, adhere to the more stringent requirements.

C. The Contractor must maintain current licenses, permits and certifications pursuant to New York State Department of Labor and Department of Environmental Conservation for all Work related to this Project, including the removal, handling, transport, and disposal of asbestos containing materials.

D. The Contractor must have and submit proof upon request that any persons employed by the Contractor to engage in or supervise Work on any asbestos Project have a valid NYS asbestos handling certificate pursuant to Code Rule 56.

E. The Contractor shall comply fully with any Variance secured from regulatory agencies by the Owner in the performance of the Work. Any Variance applications previously submitted are included as an appendix of this specification.

F. The Contractor shall be responsible for obtaining all Variances as may be required for the Project or as requested by the Owner. Approval of the Owner is required prior to submission of a Variance application to any regulatory agency. Failure to obtain Owner approval may result in Owner not permitting variance to be used on the project.

G. The Contractor shall be responsible for compliance with The New York State Uniform Fire Prevention and Building Code, or its successor during all Work at the site.

H. Failure to adhere to the Project Documents shall constitute a breach of the Contract and the Owner shall have the right to and may terminate the Contract provided, however, the failure of the Owner to so terminate shall not relieve the Contractor from future compliance.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Pre-Work Submittals: Within 7 days prior to the pre-construction conference, the Contractor shall submit 3 copies of the documents listed below for review and approval prior to the commencement of asbestos abatement activities:
   1. Contractor license issued by New York State Department of Labor.
   2. A list of Projects performed within the past two (2) years including the dollar value of all Projects. Provide Project references to include Owner, consultant, and air monitoring firm's name, contact persons, address, and phone number.
   3. Progress Schedule:
      a. Show the complete sequence of abatement activities and the sequencing of Work within each building or building section.
      b. Show the dates for the beginning and completion of each major element of Work including substantial completion dates for each Work Area, building, or phase.
   4. Project Notifications: As required by Federal and State regulatory agencies together with proof of transmittal (i.e. certified mail return receipt).
   5. Building Occupant Notification: As required by regulatory agencies.
   6. Abatement Work Plan: Provide plans that clearly indicate the following:
      a. All Work Areas/containments numbered sequentially.
      b. Locations and types of all decontamination enclosures.
      c. Entrances and exits to the Work Areas/containments'. Type of abatement activity/technique for each Work Area/containment.
      e. Number and location of negative air units and exhaust. Also provide calculations for determining number of negative air pressure units.
      f. Location of water and electrical connections to building services.
      g. Waste transport routes through the building to the waste storage container.
   7. Disposal Site/Landfill Permit from applicable regulatory agency.
   8. NYS Department of Environmental Conservation Waste Transporter Permit.

B. On-Site Submittals: Refer to Part 3.01.C & D for all submittals, documentation, and postings required to be maintained on-site during abatement activities.

C. Project Close-out Submittals: Within 30 days of the completion of each abatement phase, the Contractor shall submit one copy of the documents listed below to the YPS environmental consultant for review and approval prior to Contractor's final payment. Once the close-out submittal is approved, the Contractor shall provide three sets of the approved close-out documents (double-sided and bound) to YPS.
   1. All waste disposal manifests and disposal logs (Original waste manifests shall be sent to YPS.
   2. OSHA compliance air monitoring records conducted during the Work.
   3. Daily progress log, including the entry/exit log.
   4. Disposal Site/Landfill Permit from applicable regulatory agency.
   5. Project notifications, amended notifications, Variances.

1.05 PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE

A. Prior to start of preparatory Work under this Contract, the Contractor shall attend a pre-construction conference attended by Owner, Facility Personnel, and Environmental Consultant.

B. Agenda for this conference shall include but not necessarily be limited to:

1. Contractor's scope of Work, Work plan, and schedule to include number of workers and shifts.
2. Contractor's safety and health precautions including protective clothing and equipment and decontamination procedures.
3. Environmental Consultant's duties, functions, and authority.
4. Contractor's Work procedures including:
   a. Methods of job site preparation and removal methods.
   b. Respiratory protection.
   c. Disposal procedures.
   d. Cleanup procedures.
   e. Fire exits and emergency procedures.
5. Contractor’s required pre-work and on-site submittals, documentation, and postings.
6. Contractor's plan for twenty-four (24) hour Project security both for prevention of theft and for barring entry of unauthorized personnel into Work Areas.
7. Temporary utilities.
8. Handling of furniture and other moveable objects.
9. Storage of removed asbestos containing materials.
10. Waste disposal requirements and procedures, including use of the Owner supplied waste manifest.

C. In conjunction with the conference the Contractor shall accompany the Owner and Environmental Consultant on a pre-construction walk-through documenting existing condition of finishes and furnishings, reviewing overall Work plan, location of fire exits, fire protection equipment, water supply and temporary electric tie-in.

1.06 APPLICABLE STANDARDS AND REGULATIONS

A. The Contractor shall comply with the following codes and standards, except where more stringent requirements are shown or specified:

B. Federal Regulations:
1. 29 CFR 1910.1001, "Asbestos" (OSHA)
2. 29 CFR 1910.1200, "Hazard Communication" (OSHA)
3. 29 CFR 1910.134, "Respiratory Protection" (OSHA)
4. 29 CFR 1910.145, "Specification for Accident Prevention Signs and Tags" (OSHA)
5. 29 CFR 1926, "Construction Industry" (OSHA)
6. 29 CFR 1926.1101, "Asbestos, Tremolite, Anthophyllite, and Actinolite" (OSHA)
7. 29 CFR 1926.500 "Guardrails, Handrails and Covers" (OSHA)
8. 40 CFR 61, Subpart A, "General Provisions" (EPA)
9. 40 CFR 61, Subpart M, "National Emission Standard for Asbestos" (EPA)
10. 49 CFR 171-172, Transportation Standards (DOT)

C. New York State Regulations:
1. 12 NYCRR, Part 56, "Asbestos", Industrial Code Rule 56 (DOL)
2. 6 NYCRR, Parts 360, 364, Disposal and Transportation (DEC)
3. 10 NYCRR, Part 73, "Asbestos Safety Program Requirements" (DOH)
4. “New York State Uniform Fire Prevention and Building Code”

D. Standards and Guidance Documents:

1. American National Standard Institute (ANSI) Z88.2-80, Practices for Respiratory Protection
2. ANSI Z9.2-79, Fundamentals Governing the Design and Operation of Local Exhaust Systems
3. EPA 560/585-024, Guidance for Controlling Asbestos Containing Materials in Buildings (Purple Book)
4. EPA 530-SW-85-007, Asbestos Waste Management Guidance
5. ASTM Standard E1368 "Standard Practice for Visual Inspection of Asbestos Abatement Projects"

1.07 NOTICES

A. The Contractor shall provide notification of intent to commence asbestos abatement activities as indicated below.

1. At least ten (10) Working days prior to beginning abatement activities, send written notification to:

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
National Emissions Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (NESHAPS) Coordinator
26 Federal Plaza
New York, NY 10007

2. At least ten (10) days prior to beginning abatement activities send written notification to:

New York State Department of Labor
Division of Safety and Health, Asbestos Control Program.
State Office Campus
Building 12 - Room 161B
Albany, NY 12240

B. The Contractor is required to send notifications to regulatory agencies via electronic, mail, or package delivery service that will provide proof of delivery and receipt.

C. The Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining current project filings with regulatory agencies for the duration of the project.

D. The Contractor shall post and/or provide Building Occupant Notification at least 10 days prior to beginning abatement activities as required by Code Rule 56.

1.08 PROJECT MONITORING AND AIR SAMPLING

A. The Owner shall engage the services of an Environmental Consultant (the Consultant) who shall serve as the Owner's Representative in regard to the performance of the asbestos abatement Project and provide direction as required throughout the entire abatement Project period. The consultant and all subconsultants shall not have any contractual relationship with the Contractor for the duration of the asbestos project.

B. The Contractor is required to ensure cooperation of its personnel with the Consultant for the air sampling and Project monitoring functions described in this section. The Contractor shall comply with all direction given by the Consultant during the course of the Project.

C. The Consultant shall provide the following administrative services:

1. Review and approve or disapprove all submittals, shop drawings, schedules, and samples.
2. Assure that all notifications to governmental agencies by the Contractor are submitted in a timely manner and are correct in content.

D. The Consultant shall staff the Project with a trained and certified person(s) to act on the Owner's behalf at the job site. This individual shall be designated as the Abatement Project Monitor (APM).
   1. The APM shall be on-site at all times the Contractor is on-site. The Contractor shall not be permitted to conduct any Work unless the APM is on-site (except for inspection of barriers and negative air system during non-working days).
   2. The APM shall have the authority to direct the actions of the Contractor verbally and in writing to ensure compliance with the Project documents and all regulations. The APM shall have the authority to Stop Work when gross Work practice deficiencies or unsafe practices are observed, or when ambient fiber concentrations outside the removal area exceed .01 f/cc or background level.
      a. Such Stop Work order shall be effective immediately and remain in effect until corrective measures have been taken and the situation has been corrected.
      b. Standby time and air sample collection and analysis required to resolve the situation shall be at the Contractor's expense.
   3. The APM shall provide the following services:
      a. Inspection of the Contractor's Work, practices, and procedures, including temporary protection requirements, for compliance with all regulations and Project specifications.
      b. Provide abatement Project air sampling as required by applicable regulations (NYS, AHERA) and the Owner. Sampling will include, but not be limited to background, work area preparation, asbestos handling, final cleaning, and clearance air sampling.
      c. Verify daily that all Workers used in the performance of the Project are certified by the appropriate regulatory agency.
      d. Monitor the progress of the Contractor's Work, and report any deviations from the schedule to the Owner.
      e. Monitor, verify, and document all waste load-out operations including placement of generator and location labels on each waste container, as required by federal regulations.
      f. Verify that the Contractor is performing personal air monitoring daily, and that results are being returned and posted at the site as required.
      g. The APM shall maintain a log on site that documents all project related and Consultant and Contractor actions, activities, and occurrences.
      h. Verify landfill to be used for waste disposal with waste transporter(driver) and Contractor prior to waste trailer/dumpster leaving site. Confirm the waste transporter firm and landfill are listed on the regulatory notifications for the project and the waste transport vehicle license number is listed on the current NYS DEC Waste Transporter permit.
   4. The following minimum inspections shall be conducted by the APM, accompanied by the Contractor’s supervisor. Additional inspections shall be conducted as required by Project conditions and/or the Owner’s direction. Progression from one phase of Work to the next by the Contractor is only permitted with the written approval of the APM.

a. Pre-Construction Inspection: The purpose of this inspection is to verify the existing conditions of the Work Areas and to document these conditions.
b. Pre-Commencement Inspection: The purpose of this inspection is to verify the integrity of each containment system prior to disturbance of any asbestos containing material. This inspection shall take place only after the Work Area is fully prepped for removal.
c. Work Inspections: The purpose of this inspection is to monitor the Work practices and procedures employed on the Project and to monitor the continued integrity of the containment system. Inspections within the removal areas shall be conducted by the APM during all preparation, removal, and cleaning activities at least twice every Work shift. Additional inspections shall be conducted as warranted.
d. Pre-Encapsulation Inspection: The purpose of this inspection is to ensure the complete removal of Asbestos Containing Material (ACM), from all surfaces in the Work Area prior to encapsulation.
e. Visual Clearance Inspection: The purpose of this inspection is to verify that: all materials in the scope of work have been properly removed; no visible asbestos debris/residue remains; no pools of liquid or condensation remains; and all required cleanings are complete. This inspection shall be conducted before final air clearance testing.
f. Post-Clearance Inspection: The purpose of this inspection is to ensure the complete removal of ACM, including debris, from the Work Area after satisfactory final clearance sampling and removal of all isolation and critical barriers and equipment from the Work Area.
g. Punch List Inspection: The purpose of this inspection is to verify the Contractor's certification that all Work has been completed as contracted and the existing condition of the area prior to its release to the Owner.

E. The Consultant shall provide abatement Project air sampling and analysis as required by applicable regulations (New York State and/or AHERA). Sampling will include but is not limited to, background, work area preparation, asbestos handling, and final cleaning and clearance air sampling.
1. Unless otherwise required by applicable regulations, the Consultant shall have samples analyzed by Phase Contrast Microscopy (PCM). Results shall be available within 24 hours of completion of sampling.
2. Samples shall be collected as required by applicable regulations (New York State and/or AHERA) and these specifications. If Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM) clearance air sampling is utilized by the owner, the clearance criteria and sampling protocols must be in compliance with AHERA. If PCM air sample analysis results exceed the satisfactory clearance criteria, then TEM analysis of the entire set of clearance air samples may be used, provided that a standard NIOSH/ELAP accepted laboratory analysis method is utilized that shall report each air sample result in fibers per cubic centimeter.
3. If the air sampling during any phase of the abatement project reveals airborne fiber levels at or above .01 fibers/cc or the established background level, whichever is greater, outside the regulated Work Area, Work shall stop immediately and corrective measures required by Code Rule 56 shall be initiated. Notify all employers and occupants in adjacent areas. The Contractor shall bear the burden of any and all costs incurred by this delay.

4. The Environmental Consultant shall submit copies of all elevated air sampling results collected during abatement and all final air clearance results to the Commissioner of Labor, as required by regulation.

1.09 CONTRACTOR AIR SAMPLING

A. In addition to the requirements of OSHA 1926.1101, the Contractor shall be required to perform personal air monitoring every Work shift in each Work Area during which abatement activities occur in order to determine that appropriate respiratory protection is being worn and utilized.

B. The Contractor shall conduct air sampling that is representative of both the 8-hour time weighted average and 30-minute short-term exposures to indicate compliance with the permissible exposure and excursion limits.

C. The Contractor's laboratory analysis of air samples shall be conducted by an NYS DOH ELAP approved laboratory. The consultant shall not collect or analyze the Contractor's air samples.

D. Results of personnel air sample analyses shall be available, verbally, within twenty-four (24) hours of sampling and shall be posted upon receipt. Written laboratory reports shall be delivered and posted at the Work site within five (5) days. Failure to comply with these requirements may result in all work being stopped until compliance is achieved.

1.10 PROJECT SUPERVISOR

A. The Contractor shall designate a full-time Project Supervisor who shall meet the following qualifications:
   1. The Project Supervisor shall hold New York State certification as an Asbestos Supervisor.
   2. The Project Supervisor shall meet the requirements of a "Competent Person" as defined by OSHA 1926.1101 and shall have a minimum of one year experience as a supervisor.
   3. The Project Supervisor must be able to speak, read, and write English fluently, as well as communicate in the primary language of the Workers.

B. If the Project Supervisor is not on-site at any time whatsoever, all Work shall be stopped. The Project Supervisor shall remain on-site until the Project is complete. The Contractor may not remove the Project Supervisor from the Project without the written consent of the Owner and the Environmental Consultant; however the Project Supervisor shall be removed from the Project if so requested by the Owner.

C. The Project Supervisor shall maintain the bound Daily Project Log and the entry/exit logs as required by New York State Department of Labor and section 2.03 of the specifications and the Waste Disposal Log (Appendix B) required by section 4.03 of the specifications.

D. The Project Supervisor shall be responsible for the performance of the Work and shall represent the Contractor in all respects at the Project site. The Supervisor shall be the primary point of contact for the Asbestos Project Monitor.

1.11 MEDICAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Before exposure to airborne asbestos fibers, provide Workers with a comprehensive medical examination as required by 29 CFR 1910.1001, and 29 CFR 1926.1101.

1. This examination is not required if adequate records show the employee has been examined as required by 29 CFR 1910.1001, and 29 CFR 1926.1101 within the past year.
2. The same medical examination shall be given on an annual basis to employees engaged in an occupation involving potential disturbance of asbestos fibers.

1.12 TRAINING

A. As required by applicable regulations, prior to assignment to asbestos Work instruct each employee with regard to the hazards of asbestos, safety and health precautions, and the use and requirements of protective clothing and equipment.

B. Establish a respirator program as required by ANSI Z88.2 and 29 CFR 1910.134, and 29 CFR 1926.1101. Provide respirator training and fit testing.

1.13 RESPIRATORY PROTECTION

A. Select respirators from those approved by the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH).

B. Respirators shall be individually fit-tested to personnel under the direction of an Industrial Hygienist on a yearly basis. Fit-tested respirators shall be permanently marked to identify the individual fitted, and use shall be limited to that individual.

C. Where fiber levels permit, and in compliance with regulatory requirements, Powered Air Purifying Respirators (PAPR) are the minimum allowable respiratory protection permitted to be utilized during gross removal operations of OSHA Class I or OSHA Class II friable ACM.

D. No respirators shall be issued to personnel without such personnel participating in a respirator training program.

E. High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) respirator filters shall be approved by NIOSH and shall conform to the OSHA requirements in 29 CFR 1910.134 and 29 CFR 1926.1101.

F. A storage area for respirators shall be provided by the Contractor in the clean room side of the personnel decontamination enclosure where they will be kept in a clean environment.

G. The Contractor shall provide and make available a sufficient quantity of respirator filters so that filter changes can be made as necessary during the work day.

H. Filters used with negative pressure air purifying respirators shall not be used any longer than one eight (8) hour work day. Any loose respirator filters found within the regulated area, must be disposed of as asbestos waste.

I. Any authorized visitor, Worker, or supervisor found in the Work Area not wearing the required respiratory protection shall be removed from the Project site and not be permitted to return.

J. The Contractor shall have at least two (2) Powered Air Purifying Respirators stored on site designated for authorized visitors use. Appropriate respirator filters for authorized visitors shall be made available by the Contractor.

1.14 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Deliver all materials to the job site in original packages with containers bearing manufacturer's name and label.

B. Store all materials at the job site in a suitable and designated area.
   1. Store materials subject to deterioration or damage away from wet or damp surfaces and under cover.
   2. Protect materials from unintended contamination and theft.
   3. Storage areas shall be kept clean and organized.

C. Remove damaged or deteriorated materials from the job site. Materials contaminated with asbestos shall be disposed of as asbestos debris as herein specified. This includes unused Contractor supplies located in the regulated work area.

1.15 TEMPORARY UTILITIES

A. Shut down and lock out all electrical power to the asbestos Work Areas, including lighting circuits. Any electrical power passing through the Work Areas that can't be shut down due to health and safety reasons, shall be protected as per the requirements of Industrial Code Rule 56.

B. Provide temporary 120-240 volt, single phase, three wire, 100 amp electric service with Ground Fault Circuit Interrupters (GFCI) for all electric requirements within the asbestos Work Area.
   1. Where available, obtain from Owner's existing system. Otherwise provide power from other sources (i.e. generator).
   2. Provide temporary wiring and "weatherproof" receptacles in sufficient quantity and location to serve all HEPA equipment and tools.
   3. Provide wiring and receptacles as required by the Environmental Consultant for project monitoring and air sampling equipment (pumps, fans, leaf blowers, etc.).
   4. All power to the Work Area shall be brought in from outside the area through GFCI's at the source.

C. Provide temporary lighting with "weatherproof" fixtures for all Work Areas including decontamination chambers.
   1. The entire Work Area shall be kept illuminated at all times.
   2. Provide lighting as required by the Environmental Consultant for the purposes of performing required inspections.

D. All temporary devices and wiring used in the Work Area shall be capable of decontamination procedures including HEPA vacuuming and wet-wiping.

E. Utilize domestic water service, if available, from Owner's existing system. Provide hot water heaters with sufficient capacity to meet Project demands.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PROTECTIVE CLOTHING

A. Provide personnel utilized during the Project with disposable protective whole body clothing, head coverings, gloves and foot coverings. Provide disposable plastic or rubber gloves to

protect hands. Cloth gloves may be worn inside the plastic or rubber for comfort, but shall not be used alone. Make sleeves secure at the wrists and make foot coverings secure at the ankles by the use of tape, or provide disposable coverings with elastic wrists or tops.

B. Provide sufficient quantities of protective clothing to assure a minimum of four (4) complete disposable outfits per day for each individual performing abatement Work.

C. Eye protection and hard hats shall be provided and made available for all personnel entering any Work Area.

D. Authorized visitors shall be provided with suitable protective clothing, headgear, eye protection, and footwear whenever they enter the Work Area.

2.02 SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Provide warning signs and barrier tapes at all approaches to asbestos Work Areas. Locate signs at such distance that personnel may read the sign and take the necessary protective steps required before entering the area.

1. Provide danger signs in vertical format conforming to 29 CFR 1926.1101, minimum 20" x 14" displaying the following legend.

DANGER
ASBESTOS CANCER AND LUNG DISEASE
HAZARD
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY
RESPIRATORS AND PROTECTIVE CLOTHING
ARE REQUIRED IN THIS AREA

2. Provide 3" wide yellow barrier tape printed with black lettered, "DANGER ASBESTOS REMOVAL". Locate barrier tape across all corridors, entrances and access routes to asbestos Work Area. Install tape 3' to 4' AFF.

B. Provide asbestos danger labels affixed to all asbestos materials, scrap, waste, debris and other products contaminated with asbestos.

1. Provide asbestos danger labels of sufficient size to be clearly legible, displaying the following legend:

DANGER
CONTAINS ASBESTOS FIBERS
AVOID CREATING DUST
CANCER AND LUNG DISEASE HAZARD

2. Provide the following asbestos labels, of sufficient size to be clearly legible, for display on waste containers (bags or drums) which will be used to transport asbestos contaminated material in accordance with United States Department of Transportation 49 CFR Parts 171 and 172: (Note: Include “RQ” for friable asbestos waste only.)

RQ, NA2212, (WASTE) ASBESTOS, 9, PGIII

3. Generator identification information shall be affixed to each waste container or any packaging used to containerize asbestos waste indicating the following printed in indelible ink:

Generator Name

Facility Name
Facility Address
Date

2.03 DAILY PROJECT LOG & WORK AREA ENTRY/EXIT LOG

A. Provide a bound Daily Project Log. The log shall contain on title page the Project name; name, address and phone number of Owner; name, address and phone number of Environmental Consultant; name, address and phone number of Abatement Contractor; emergency numbers including, but not limited to local Fire/Rescue department and all other New York State Department of Labor requirements.

B. All entries into the log shall be made in non-washable, permanent ink and such pen shall be strung to or otherwise attached to the log to prevent removal from the log-in area. Under no circumstances shall pencil entries be permitted.

C. All persons entering and exiting the Work Area shall sign the entry/exit log and include name, certification number, and time.

D. The Project Supervisor shall document all Work performed daily and note all inspections required by Code Rule 56, i.e. testing and inspection of barriers and enclosures.

2.04 SCAFFOLDING AND LADDERS

A. Provide all scaffolding and/or staging as necessary to accomplish the Work of this Contract. Scaffolding may be of suspension type or standing type such as metal tube and coupler, tubular welded frame, pole or outrigger type or cantilever type. The type, erection and use of all scaffolding and ladders shall comply with all applicable OSHA construction industry standards.

B. Provide scaffolding and ladders as required by the Environmental Consultant for the purposes of performing required inspections.

2.05 SURFACTANT (AMENDED WATER)

A. Wet all asbestos-containing materials prior to removal with surfactant mixed and applied in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

2.06 ENCAPSULANT

A. Encapsulant shall be tinted or pigmented so that application when dry is readily discernible.

B. The encapsulant solvent or vehicle shall not contain a volatile hydrocarbon.

2.07 WASTE DISPOSAL BAGS, DRUMS, AND CONTAINERS

A. Provide 6 mil polyethylene disposal bags printed with asbestos caution labels. Bags shall also be imprinted with U.S. Department of Transportation required markings.

B. Provide 30 or 55 gallon capacity fiber, plastic, or metal drums capable of being sealed air and water tight if asbestos waste has the potential to damage or puncture disposal bags. Affix asbestos caution labels on lids and at one-third points around drum circumference to assure ready identification.

C. Containers and bags must be labeled accordance with 40 CFR Part 61 NESHAPS and Code Rule 56. When the bags/containers are moved to the holding area, lockable trailer, or lockable hardtop dumpster from the waste decontamination system washroom, each bag/container must also be appropriately labeled with the date moved in waterproof markings.

D. Labeled ACM waste containers or bags shall not be used for non-ACM waste or trash. Any material placed in labeled containers or bags, whether turned inside out or not shall be handled and disposed of as ACM waste.

2.08 HEPA VACUUM EQUIPMENT

A. All vacuuming performed under this contract shall be performed with High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) filter equipped industrial vacuums conforming to ANSI Z9.2.

B. **2.09 POWER TOOLS**

A. Any power tools used to drill, cut into, or otherwise disturb asbestos material shall be manufacturer equipped with HEPA filtered local exhaust ventilation.

2.10 FIRE RETARDANT PLASTIC SHEETING

A. All polyethylene (plastic) sheeting used on the Project (including but not limited to sheeting used for critical and isolation barriers, fixed objects, walls, floors, ceilings, waste container) shall be at least 6 mil fire retardant sheeting.

B. Decontamination enclosure systems shall utilize at least 6 mil opaque fire retardant plastic sheeting. At least 2 layers of 6 mil reinforced fire retardant plastic sheeting shall be used for the flooring.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Should visible emissions or water leaks be observed outside the Work Area, immediately stop Work and institute emergency procedures per Code Rule 56. Should there be elevated fiber levels outside the Work Area, immediately stop Work, institute emergency procedures per Code Rule 56, and notify all employers and occupants in adjacent areas. All costs incurred in decontaminating such non-Work Areas and the contents thereof shall be borne by the Contractor, at no additional cost to the Owner.

B. Valid NYS DOL Asbestos Handler certification cards shall be on site prior to admittance of any Contractor's employees to the asbestos Work Area.

C. The following submittals, documentation, and postings shall be maintained on-site by the Contractor during abatement activities at a location approved by the Abatement Project Monitor:

1. Valid Contractor handling license issued by New York State Department of Labor.
2. NYS DOL Asbestos Handler certification cards for each person employed in the removal, handling, or disturbance of asbestos.
3. Daily OSHA personal air monitoring results.
4. NYS Department of Health ELAP certification for the laboratory that will be analyzing the OSHA personnel air samples.
5. NYS Department of Environmental Conservation Waste Transporter Permit.

6. Project documents (specifications and drawings.)
7. Notifications, Variances, Approved Work Plan. Ensure that the most up-to-date notifications and Variances are on-site.
8. Applicable regulations.
9. Material Safety Data Sheets of supplies/chemicals used on the Project.
10. Disposal Site/Landfill Permit from applicable regulatory agency.
11. List of emergency telephone numbers.
12. Magnahelic manometer semi-annual calibration certification.
13. Waste Disposal Log.
14. Daily Project Log.
15. Entry/Exit Logs.

D. The following documentation shall be maintained on-site by the Abatement Project Monitor during abatement activities:
1. Valid Contractor handling license issued by New York State Department of Labor.
2. Air Sample Log.
3. Air sample results.
4. Project Monitor Daily Log
5. Asbestos Survey Report.
6. A copy of ASTM Standard E1368 "Standard Practice for Visual Inspection of Asbestos Abatement Projects."
7. Calibration chart for rotometer(s) used on-site.

E. The Work Area must be vacated by building occupants prior to decontamination enclosure construction and Work Area preparation.

F. All demolition necessary to access asbestos containing materials for removal must be conducted within negative pressure enclosures by licensed asbestos handlers. Demolition debris may be disposed of as construction and demolition debris provided the Abatement Project Monitor determines that it is not contaminated with asbestos and there has been no disturbance of ACM within the enclosure. If the demolition debris is determined to be contaminated or ACM has been disturbed, it must be disposed of as asbestos waste.

3.02 PERSONNEL DECONTAMINATION ENCLOSURE

A. Provide personnel decontamination enclosure contiguous to the Work Area or as per Variance. The decontamination enclosure shall be attached to the Work Area and not located within it unless isolation barriers are installed. If the decontamination chamber is accessible to the public it shall be fully framed, sheathed, and lockable to prevent unauthorized entry.

B. Access to the Work Area will be from the clean room through an air-lock to the shower and through an air lock to the equipment room. Each airlock shall be a minimum of three feet from door to door. Additional air locks shall be provided as required by Code Rule 56 for remote decontamination enclosures.

C. The decontamination enclosure ceiling and walls shall be covered with one layer of opaque 6 mil fire retardant plastic sheeting. Two layers of reinforced fire retardant plastic sheeting shall be used to cover the floor.

D. The entrance to the clean room shall have a lockable door with adequate small openings for Work Area make-up air. Provide suitable lockers for storage of Worker's street clothes. Storage for respirators along with replacement filters and disposable towels shall also be provided.

E. Provide a temporary shower with individual hot and cold water supplies and faucets. Provide a sufficient supply of soap and shampoo. There shall be one shower for every six Workers. The shower room shall be constructed in such a way so that travel through the shower chamber shall be through the shower. The shower shall not be able to be bypassed.

F. Shower water shall be drained, collected and filtered through a system with at least a 5.0 micron particle size collection capability containing a series of several filters with progressively smaller pore sizes to avoid rapid clogging of the system. The filtered waste water shall then be discharged in accordance with applicable codes and the contaminated filters disposed of as asbestos waste.

G. The equipment room shall be used for the storage of tools and equipment. A walk-off pan filled with water shall be located in the Work Area outside the equipment room for Workers to clean foot coverings when leaving the Work Area. A labeled 6 mil plastic ACM waste bag for collection of contaminated clothing shall be located in this room.

H. The personal decontamination enclosure shall be cleaned and disinfected minimally at the end of each Work shift and as otherwise directed by the Asbestos Project Monitor.

3.03 WASTE DECONTAMINATION ENCLOSURE

A. Provide a waste decontamination enclosure contiguous to the Work area. The decontamination enclosure shall be attached to the Work Area and not located within it unless isolation barriers are installed. If the decontamination chamber is accessible to the public it shall be fully framed, sheathed, and lockable to prevent unauthorized entry.

B. The waste decontamination enclosure system shall consist of a holding area, air lock and washroom. The airlock shall be a minimum of three feet from door to door. The entrance to the holding area shall have a lockable door.

C. The decontamination enclosure ceiling and walls shall be covered with one layer of opaque 6 mil fire retardant plastic sheeting on walls and ceiling. Two layers of reinforced fire retardant plastic sheeting shall be used to cover the floor.

D. Where there is only one egress from the Work Area, the holding area of the waste decontamination enclosure system may branch off from the personnel decontamination enclosure equipment room, which then serves as the waste wash room.

E. The waste wash room water shall be drained, collected, and filtered through a system with at least a 5.0 micron particle size collection capability containing a series of several filters with progressively smaller pore sizes to avoid rapid clogging of the system. The filtered waste water shall then be discharged in accordance with applicable codes and the contaminated filters disposed of as asbestos waste.

F. In small asbestos Projects where only one egress from the Work Area exists, the shower room may be used as a waste washroom. In this instance, the clean room shall not be used for waste storage, but shall be used for waste transfer to carts, which shall immediately be removed from this enclosure.

3.04 WORK AREA ENTRY AND EXIT PROCEDURES

A. Access to and from the asbestos Work Area is permitted only through the personnel decontamination enclosure unless otherwise stipulated in a Site Specific Variance.

B. Workers shall sign the entry/exit log upon every entry and exit.

C. The following procedures shall be followed when entering the Work Area:
   1. Before entering the Work Area, Workers shall proceed to the clean room, remove all street clothes, and don protective clothing, equipment, and respirators.
   2. Workers shall proceed from the clean room through the shower room and the equipment room and into the Work Area.

D. The following procedures shall be followed when exiting the Work Area:
   1. Before leaving the Work Area, gross asbestos contamination will be removed by brushing, wet cleaning and/or HEPA vacuuming, followed by use of the walk-off pan.
   2. In the equipment room, Workers shall remove disposable clothing, but not respirators, and shall place clothing in plastic disposal bags for disposal as contaminated debris prior to entering the shower room. Reusable equipment shall be removed and stored in the equipment room (e,g, work boots).
   3. Workers shall shower thoroughly while wearing respirators, then wash respirator with soap and water prior to removal.
   4. Upon exiting the shower, Workers shall enter the clean room and don new disposable clothing if the Work shift is to continue or street clothes to exit area. Under no circumstances shall Workers enter public non-Work Areas in disposable protective clothing.

E. If remote decontamination enclosures are permitted by Code Rule 56 or a Site Specific Variance, workers shall wear two disposable suits for all phases of Work. Workers exiting the work area shall HEPA vacuum the outer suit, enter the airlock, remove the outer suit and then place it back into the Work Area. A clean second suit shall be donned before exiting the airlock and proceeding to the decontamination enclosure or another work area via the designated pathway required by Code Rule 56.

3.05 WORK AREA PREPARATION

A. Asbestos danger signs shall be posted at all approaches to the asbestos Work Area. Post all emergency exits as emergency exits only on the Work Area side, post with asbestos caution signs on the non-Work Area side. Provide all non-Work Area stairs and corridors accessible to the asbestos Work Area with warning tapes at the base of stairs and beginning of corridors. Warning tapes shall be in addition to caution signs.

B. Shut down and lock out the building heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems. Electrical systems and circuits shall also be shut down unless permitted to remain active per

Code Rule 56 and appropriately protected and labeled. Existing lighting sources shall not be utilized. Provide temporary electric power and lighting as specified herein.

C. All non-ACM surfaces and objects within the Work Area shall be pre-cleaned using HEPA vacuuming and/or wet-wiping methods. Dry sweeping and any other methods that raise dust shall be prohibited. ACM shall not be disturbed during pre-cleaning.

D. Movable objects within the Work Area shall be HEPA vacuumed and/or wet-wiped and removed from the Work Area.

E. All non-movable equipment in the Work Area shall be completely covered with 2 layers of fire retardant plastic sheeting, at least 6 mil in thickness, and secured in place with duct tape and/or spray adhesive. Active Fire Protection System components in the Work Area shall not be covered with fire retardant plastic sheeting or any other obstruction.

F. Provide enclosure of the asbestos Work Area necessary to isolate it from unsealed areas of the building in accordance with the approved asbestos Work plan and as specified herein.

G. Provide critical barriers by sealing off all openings including but not limited to operable windows and skylights, doorways, diffusers, grills, electrical outlets and boxes, doors, floor drains, and any other penetrations to surfaces in the Work Area enclosure, using 2 layers of at least 6 mil fire retardant plastic sheeting.

H. Provide isolation barriers by installing temporary framing and sheathing at openings larger than 32 square feet forming the limits of the asbestos Work Area. Sheathing thickness must be a minimum of 3/8 inch and all sheathing shall be caulked and the Work Area side sealed with two layers of 6 mil fire retardant plastic sheeting. Isolation barriers in stairwells and at work area egress locations shall not be covered with sheathing, only two layers of 6 mil fire retardant plastic sheeting.

I. Isolation barriers shall be installed at all elevator openings in the Work Area. .Elevators running through the regulated abatement work area shall be shut down or isolated as per Code Rule 56. Elevator controls shall be modified so that elevators bypass the Work Area

J. Provide two independent layers of 6 mil fire retardant plastic sheeting over all floor, wall, and ceiling surfaces. Isolation barriers shall also be covered with two independent layers (for a total of four layers). Sheeting shall be secured with duct tape. All joints in fire retardant plastic sheeting shall overlap 12" minimum. Carpeting left in place shall be covered with 3/8 inch plywood sheathing prior to plasticizing.

K. Unless otherwise specified for removal, the Contractor shall either protect all fiberglass insulation on piping, ductwork, tanks, etc. in the Work Area using two layers of six mil fire retardant plastic sheeting or remove the insulation as asbestos containing waste. If the Contractor elects to remove the fiberglass insulation as asbestos-contaminated, he/she shall be responsible for reinsulation if reinsulation of removed insulations is part of the Contract or Project.

L. Frame out emergency exits from Work Area. Provide double layer 6 mil fire retardant plastic sheeting and tape seal opening. Post as emergency exits only and tape utility knife to the Work

Area side of each exit. Within the Work Area, mark the locations and directions of emergency exits throughout the Work Area using exit signs and/or duct tape.

M. Remove all items attached to or in contact with ACM only after the Work Area enclosure is in place. HEPA vacuum and wet wipe with amended water all items prior to their removal from the Work Area and before the start of asbestos removal operations.

N. Suspended ceiling tiles shall only be removed after Work Area preparation is complete. If possible, non-contaminated ceiling tiles shall be HEPA vacuumed and removed from the Work Area before asbestos removals begin. Contaminated ceiling tiles shall be disposed of as asbestos waste.

3.06 NEGATIVE AIR PRESSURE FILTRATION SYSTEM

A. Provide a portable asbestos filtration system that develops a minimum pressure differential of negative 0.02 in. of water column within all full enclosure areas relative to adjacent unsealed areas and that provides a minimum of 4 air changes per hour in the Work Area during abatement and 6 air changes for non-friable flooring and/or mastic removal.

B. Such filtration systems must be made operational after critical and isolation barriers are installed but before wall, floor, and ceilings are plasticized and shall be operated 24 hours per day during the entire Project until the final cleanup is completed and satisfactory results of the final air samples are received from the laboratory.

C. The system shall include a series of pre-filters and filters to provide High Efficiency Particulate Air (HEPA) filtration of particles down to 0.3 microns at 100% efficiency and below 0.3 microns at 99.9% efficiency. Provide sufficient replacement filters to replace pre-filters every 2 hours, secondary pre-filters every 24 hours, and primary HEPA filters every 600 hours (25 continuous days) of operation. HEPA filter sides shall be marked with installation date during all new HEPA filter installations on project.

D. A minimum of one additional filtration unit of at least the same capacity as the primary unit(s) shall be installed and fully functional to be used during primary unit (s) filter changing and in case of primary failure.

E. At no time will the unit exhaust indoors, within 15 feet of a receptor, including but not limited to windows and doors, or adversely affect the air intake of the building. Exhaust ducting shall not exceed 25’ in length, except as allowed by Industrial Code Rule 56. Provide construction fencing at ground level exhaust termination locations per Code Rule 56.

F. Upon electric power failure or shut-down of any filtration unit, all abatement activities shall stop immediately and only resume after power is restored and all filtration units are fully operating. For shut-downs longer than one hour, all openings into the Work Area, including the decontamination enclosures, shall be sealed.

G. For all OSHA Class I removal Work Areas, the Contractor shall provide a manometer to verify negative air pressure. Manometers shall be read twice daily and recorded within the Daily Project Log.

H. There shall be at least a 4 hour settling period after the Work Area is fully prepared and the negative filtration units have been started to ensure integrity of the barriers.

I. Once installed and operational, the Contractor's Supervisor shall conduct daily inspections of the Work Area to insure the airtight integrity of the enclosure and operation of the negative air system. Findings shall be recorded within the Daily Project Log. Inspections shall also be conducted on days when no abatement activities are in progress per Code Rule 56 (i.e. weekends).

3.07 REMOVAL OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIALS

A. Asbestos-containing materials shall be removed in accordance with the Contract Documents and the approved Asbestos Work Plan. Only one type of ACM shall be abated at a time within a Work Area. Where there are multiple types of ACM requiring abatement, Code Rule 56 procedures for sequential abatement shall be followed.

B. Sufficiently wet asbestos materials with a low pressure, airless fine spray of surfactant to ensure full penetration prior to material removal. Re-wet material that does not display evidence of saturation.

C. One Worker shall continuously apply amended water while ACM is being removed.

D. Perform cutting, drilling, abrading, or any penetration or disturbance of asbestos containing material in a manner to minimize the dispersal of asbestos fibers into the air. Use equipment and methods specifically designed to limit generation of airborne asbestos particles. All power operated tools used shall be provided with manufacturer HEPA equipped filtered local exhaust ventilation, as required by regulation.

E. Upon removal of ACM from the substrate, the newly exposed surfaces shall be HEPA vacuumed and/or wet cleaned. Surfaces must be thoroughly cleaned using necessary methods and any required solvents to completely remove any adhesive, mastic, etc.

F. All removed material shall be placed into 6 mil plastic disposal bags or other suitable container upon detachment from the substrate. Cleanup of accumulations of loose debris or waste shall be performed whenever there is enough accumulation to fill a single bag or container and minimally at the end of each work shift.

G. Large components shall be wrapped in two layers of 6 mil fire retardant plastic sheeting. Sharp components likely to tear disposal bags shall be placed in fiber drums or boxes and then wrapped with sheeting.

H. Power or pressure washers are not permitted for asbestos removal or clean-up procedures unless approved in a Site Specific Variance and allowed by owner.

I. All open ends of pipe and duct insulation not scheduled for removal shall be encapsulated using lag cloth.

J. All construction and demolition debris determined by the Environmental Consultant to be contaminated with asbestos shall be handled and disposed of as asbestos waste.

K. The use of metal shovels, metal dust pans, etc. are not permitted inside the work area.

3.08 EQUIPMENT AND WASTE CONTAINER DECONTAMINATION AND REMOVAL PROCEDURES

A. External surfaces of contaminated containers and equipment shall be cleaned by wet cleaning and/or HEPA vacuuming in the Work Area before moving such items into the waste decontamination enclosure system airlock by persons assigned to this duty. The persons in the Work Area shall not enter the airlock. No gross removal operations are permitted when waste transfer is in progress.

B. The containers and equipment shall be removed from the airlock by persons stationed in the washroom during waste removal operations. The external surfaces of containers and equipment shall be cleaned a second time by wet cleaning.

C. The cleaned containers of asbestos material and equipment are to be dried of any excessive pooled or beaded liquid, placed in uncontaminated 6 mil plastic bags or sheeting, as the item's physical characteristics demand, and sealed airtight.

D. The clean recontainerized items shall be moved into the airlock that leads to the holding area. Workers in the washroom shall not enter this airlock.

E. Containers and equipment shall be moved from the airlock and into the holding area by persons dressed in clean personal protective equipment, who have entered from the holding area.

F. The cleaned containers of asbestos material and equipment shall be placed in water tight carts with doors or tops that shall be closed and secured. These carts shall be held in the holding until transfer to the waste container. The carts shall be wet cleaned and/or HEPA vacuumed at least once each day.

G. The exit from the decontamination enclosure system shall be secured to prevent unauthorized entry.

H. Where the waste removal enclosure is part of the personnel decontamination enclosure, waste removal shall not occur during shift changes or when otherwise occupied. Precautions shall be taken to prevent short circuiting and cycling of air outward through the shower and clean room.

3.09 WORK AREA DECONTAMINATION, CLEANING, AND CLEARANCE PROCEDURES

A. Following completion of gross abatement and after all accumulations of asbestos waste materials have been containerized, the following decontamination procedures shall be followed unless modified by a Site Specific Variance.

B. First Cleaning:
   1. All bagged asbestos waste and unnecessary equipment shall be decontaminated and removed from the Work Area.
   2. All surfaces in the Work Area shall be wet cleaned, except active fire protection system components that may be damaged by water. A wet-purpose shop vacuum may be used

to pick up excess liquid, and may either be decontaminated prior to removal from the Work Area or disposed of as asbestos waste.

3. The Abatement Project Monitor (APM) shall conduct a visual inspection of the Work Area for cleanliness and completion of abatement.
4. The Contractor shall then apply a thin coat of encapsulant to all surfaces in the Work Area that were not the subject of removal. In no event shall encapsulant be applied to any surface that was the subject of removal prior to obtaining satisfactory air monitoring results. Encapsulants shall be pigmented or tinted to provide an indication for completeness of coverage. The APM shall determine adequacy of coverage.
5. After the encapsulant has been applied and the required waiting/settling / drying time has elapsed, the first layer of fire retardant plastic sheeting shall then be removed and bagged as asbestos waste.

C. Second Cleaning
1. All surfaces in the Work Area shall be HEPA vacuumed and then wet cleaned. Wet cleaning of active fire protection system components is not necessary if damage may occur.
2. The APM shall conduct a second visual inspection of the Work Area for cleanliness.
3. After the required waiting/settling/drying time has elapsed, the second layer of fire retardant plastic sheeting shall be removed and bagged as asbestos waste.

D. Third Cleaning
1. All surfaces in the Work Area shall be HEPA vacuumed and then wet cleaned. Wet cleaning of active fire protection system components is not necessary if damage may occur.
2. After the required waiting/settling/drying time has elapsed, the APM shall conduct a third visual inspection of the Work Area for completeness of abatement and cleanliness. The APM shall document the results of the visual inspection in the Project Monitor Log and Contractor's Daily Project Log.
3. After satisfactory APM visual inspection, aggressive final clearance air sampling shall then be conducted by the Environmental Consultant provided no visible asbestos debris/residue; pools of liquid, or condensation remains. NOTE: TEM samples should be used vs. PCM if demolition or other dust-generating evolutions are taking place in adjacent areas, as evident from excessive loading.
4. Upon receipt of satisfactory final clearance air sampling results, the negative air pressure equipment can then be shut down, and the isolation and critical barriers removed and bagged as asbestos waste. Following this and satisfactory inspections by the project supervisor and the APM for cleanliness, the decontamination enclosures shall be removed.

E. As a result of any visual inspection by the APM or should air sampling results indicate high fiber levels, the Contractor will re-clean the affected areas at no additional expense to the Owner.

3.10 TENT ENCLOSURES

A. Tent enclosures may only be used where specifically permitted by Code Rule 56 or a Site Specific Variance issued by the NYS Department of Labor.

B. The Contractor shall restrict access to the immediate area where tent removal procedures are taking place using barrier tape and/or construction barriers. Caution signs shall be posted.

C. Remote personnel decontamination enclosures shall be constructed. Configuration shall be as required by Project size and a washroom with attached airlock shall be constructed contiguous to the tent enclosure for small and large size tent enclosure work areas. For tent enclosures with gross abatement of friable materials, a contiguous decontamination system shall be constructed, maintained and utilized, except for minor size tent enclosure work areas where an adjacent decontamination room or area is permitted by Code Rule 56.

D. The Work Area shall be precleaned. All objects and equipment that will remain in the restricted area during abatement shall be sealed with two layers of six mil polyethylene and tape.

E. The tent shall be a single use barrier constructed with a rigid frame and at least two layers of six mil polyethylene unless one layer of six mil polyethylene is otherwise permitted by Code Rule 56. Tents with twenty (20) square feet or less of floor space or no gross removal of friable ACM shall be constructed of one (1) layer of six mil polyethylene and shall include walls, ceilings and a floor (except portions of walls, floors and ceilings that are the removal surface) with double folded seams. All seams shall be sealed airtight using duct tape and/or spray adhesive.

F. The tent shall be constructed with at least one airlock for worker/waste egress.

G. A manometer shall be used for all OSHA Class I abatement.

H. Negative air shall be maintained at four (4) air changes per hour for non-friable and glovebag abatement tent enclosure work areas. Eight (8) air changes shall be maintained for friable gross removal tent enclosure work areas. In a Minor size abatement tent enclosure work area a HEPA vacuum may be used to maintain the required air changes.

I. OSHA compliance air monitoring is required per section 1.09.

J. ACM removal shall follow procedures defined in section 3.07.

K. Waste material shall be placed in properly labeled 6 mil plastic bags or other appropriate containers. The outside of the bags or containers shall be wet wiped and/or HEPA vacuumed in the washroom and shall then be placed in a second bag/container before being transferred to the waste storage container. All transportation of waste bags and containers outside the Work Area shall be in watertight carts. These carts shall be held in the holding area until transfer to the waste container. The carts shall be wet cleaned and/or HEPA vacuumed at least once each day.

L. Following completion of gross abatement and after all accumulations of asbestos waste materials have been containerized, the following decontamination procedures shall be followed.
   1. All bagged asbestos waste and unnecessary equipment shall be decontaminated and removed from the Work Area.

2. All surfaces in the Work Area shall be wet cleaned. A wet-purpose shop vacuum may be used to pick up excess liquid, and shall be decontaminated prior to removal from the Work Area.
3. The Contractor shall then apply a thin coat of encapsulant to all non-removal surfaces covered with plastic in the Work Area. In no event shall encapsulant be applied to any surface that was the subject of removal prior to obtaining satisfactory air monitoring results. Encapsulants shall be pigmented or tinted to provide an indication for completeness of coverage. The APM shall determine adequacy of coverage.
3. After the waiting/settling/drying time requirements have elapsed, the Asbestos Project Monitor shall conduct a visual inspection of the Work Area for cleanliness and completion of abatement. The APM shall document the results of the visual inspection in the Project Monitor Log and Contractor's Daily Project Log.
4. After satisfactory APM visual inspection, aggressive final clearance air sampling shall then be conducted by the Environmental Consultant.
5. Upon receipt of satisfactory final clearance air sampling results, the tent shall be collapsed into itself, placed in suitable disposal bags, and tranferred through the washroom to the waste decontamination enclosure. Isolation and critical barriers shall then be removed and bagged as asbestos waste followed by satisfactory visual inspections by the project supervisor and the APM for cleanliness.

3.11 GLOVEBAG REMOVAL

A. Glovebag removals may only be used as specifically permitted by Code Rule 56 or a Site Specific Variance issued by the NYS Department of Labor. Glovebags may only be used on pipe or duct insulation.

B. In addition to conformance with applicable regulations and variances, glovebag removals are only permitted to be conducted within tent enclosures complying with these specifications.

C. The Contractor shall restrict access to the immediate area where tent/glovebag removal procedures are taking place using barrier tape and/or construction barriers. Caution signs shall be posted.

D. Remote personnel decontamination enclosures shall be constructed. Configuration shall be as required by Project size and a washroom with attached airlock shall be constructed contiguous to the tent enclosure.

E. Glovebag removals shall utilize commercially available glovebags of at least six mil thickness. Use shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the following minimum requirements:
   1. The sides of the glovebag shall be cut to fit the size pipe being removed. Tools shall be inserted into the attached tool pocket.
   2. The glovebag shall be placed around the pipe and the open edges shall be folded and sealed with staples and duct tape. The glovebag shall also be sealed at the pipe to form a tight seal.
   3. Openings shall be made in the glovebag for the wetting tube and HEPA vacuum hose. The opening shall be sealed to form a tight seal.
   4. All glovebags shall be smoke tested by the Asbestos Project Monitor under negative pressure using the HEPA vacuum before removal operations commence. Glovebags that do not pass the smoke test shall be resealed and then retested.

5. After first wetting the materials to be removed, removal may commence. ACM shall be continuously wetted. After removal of the ACM, the piping shall be scrubbed or brushed so that no visible ACM remains. Open ends of pipe insulation shall be encapsulated.
6. After the piping is cleaned, the inside of the glovebag shall be washed down and the wetting tube removed. Using the HEPA vacuum, the glovebag shall be collapsed and then twisted and sealed with tape with the ACM at the bottom of the bag.
7. A disposal bag shall be placed around the glovebag that is then detached from the pipe. The disposal bag is then sealed and transferred through the washroom to the waste storage container.

F. After glovebag removals are complete, tent decontamination procedures shall be followed.

3.12 REMOVALS OF EXTERIOR NON-FRIABLE ACM

A. Except as modified by this section, removal of exterior non-friable ACM (i.e. roof flashings, built-up roofing, siding, caulking, glazing compound, transite, tars, sealers, coatings, and other NOB ACM) shall conform to all provisions of this specification.

B. Unless Site Specific Variances have been otherwise obtained, removals shall be conducted in accordance with the provisions of Code Rule 56.

C. The Work Area shall be the area from which ACM materials are being removed and shall extend 25 feet from the perimeter of the removal area.

D. Non-certified Workers are not allowed in the Work Area until the Work Area is cleared by the Asbestos Project Monitor (APM).

E. Remote personnel decontamination enclosures shall be constructed at a location in accordance with the approved Work Plan. Unless located outside the Work Area, decontamination enclosures are not permitted to be constructed on the roof. Decontamination enclosures shall be constructed as close to the regulated abatement work area as physically possible, but no greater than 50 feet from the building. It shall be cordoned off at a distance of 25 feet to separate it from public areas.

F. All openings (including but not limited to operable windows, doors, hatches, vents, ducts, and grilles) one story above, one story below, and within 25 feet of the work area shall be sealed with two layers of six mil polyethylene. Alternately, a polyethylene drape may be used instead of sealing windows individually where permitted by Code Rule 56.

G. The removal of the ACM may require the use of scrapers, solvents, mastic removal chemicals, or other methods/procedures to ensure complete removal.

H. The Contractor is required to provide temporary protection of the building (i.e. roof, window openings, construction joints, etc.) at the end of each Work shift so as to maintain the building in a watertight condition.

I. Dumpsters used for waste storage shall be lined with two layers of six mil polyethylene and shall have a hard top. Where open-top dumpsters are permitted by ICR 56 or a Site Specific

Variance, the top shall be closed with polyethylene flaps that are sealed at the end of each work shift.

J. Personal protective equipment, including respirators, shall be utilized and worn during all removal operations until the Work Area is cleared by the APM.

K. The Owner may, at his discretion, choose to conduct air sampling. If air samples collected during abatement indicate any airborne asbestos fiber concentration(s) at or above 0.01 f/cc, Work shall be stopped immediately and Work methods shall be altered to reduce the airborne asbestos fiber concentration(s).

L. Following completion of gross abatement and after all accumulations of asbestos waste materials have been containerized, the following decontamination procedures shall be followed:
   1. All surfaces in the Work Area shall be HEPA vacuumed and then wet cleaned.
   2. The APM shall conduct a visual inspection of the Work Area for cleanliness and completeness of abatement. The APM shall document the results of the visual inspection in the Project Monitor Log and Contractor's Daily Project Log.
   3. Upon satisfactory visual inspection results, the isolation and critical barriers shall be removed and bagged as asbestos waste. Following this, the decontamination enclosures shall be removed.

3.13 NON-FRIABLE FLOORING AND/OR MASTIC REMOVALS

A. The following procedures may only be used for the removal of non-friable flooring and/or mastic materials using manual and chemical methods. These procedures shall not apply to beadblaster use or other abrasive abatement methods.

B. The Contractor shall restrict access to the immediate Work Area where non-friable ACM removal procedures are taking place using barrier tape and/or construction barriers. Caution signs shall be posted.

C. Remote personnel decontamination enclosures may be utilized and shall be constructed at a location in accordance with the approved Work Plan. A washroom with attached airlock shall be constructed contiguous to each Work area enclosure.

D. The Work Area shall be prepared per section 3.05, except that ceilings, walls, and floors need not be fully plasticized However, a four-foot high single layer of 6-mil fire retardant plastic sheeting shall be installed as a splashguard at all walls adjoining mastic removal portions of the work area, to prevent damage to the existing walls.

E. Negative air shall be maintained at six (6) air changes per hour.

F. OSHA compliance air monitoring is required per section 1.09.

G. ACM removal shall follow procedures defined in section 3.07.

H. Waste material shall be placed in properly labeled 6 mil plastic bags or other appropriate containers. The outside of the bags or containers shall be wet wiped and/or HEPA vacuumed in the washroom and double-bagged before being passed into the airlock. The bags or

containers shall then be transported to the waste storage container. All transportation of waste bags and containers outside the Work Area shall be in watertight carts.

I. Following completion of gross abatement and after all accumulations of asbestos waste materials have been containerized, the following decontamination procedures shall be followed.
   1. All bagged asbestos waste and unnecessary equipment shall be decontaminated and removed from the Work Area.
   2. All plastic sheeting splashguards shall be removed and containerized, followed by all surfaces in the Work Area being wet cleaned. A wet-purpose shop vacuum may be used to pick up excess liquid, and shall be decontaminated prior to removal from the Work Area.
   3. The Contractor shall then apply a thin coat of encapsulant to all non-removal surfaces in the Work Area. In no event shall encapsulant be applied to any surface that was the subject of removal prior to obtaining satisfactory air monitoring results. Encapsulants shall be pigmented or tinted to provide an indication for completeness of coverage. The APM shall determine adequacy of coverage.
   4. After the waiting/settliong/drying time requirements have elapsed, the Asbestos Project Monitor (APM) shall conduct a visual inspection of the Work Area for cleanliness and completion of abatement. The APM shall document the results of the visual inspection in the Project Monitor Log and Contractor's Daily Project Log.
   5. After satisfactory APM visual inspection, aggressive final clearance air sampling shall then be conducted by the Environmental Consultant.
   6. Upon receipt of satisfactory final clearance air sampling results, the isolation and critical barriers shall be removed and bagged as asbestos waste. Following this and satisfactory inspections by the project supervisor and the APM for cleanliness the decontamination enclosures shall be removed.

3.14 RESTORATION OF UTILITIES, FIRESTOPPING, AND FINISHES

A. After final clearance, remove locks and restore electrical and HVAC systems. All temporary power shall be disconnected, power lockouts removed and power restored. All temporary plumbing shall be removed.

B. Finishes damaged by asbestos abatement activities including, but not limited to, plaster/paint damage due to duct tape, staples, and spray adhesives, and floor tile lifted due to wet or humid conditions, shall be restored prior to final payment.
   1. Finishes unable to be restored shall be replaced under this Contract at the Contractor's expense.
   2. All foam and expandable foam products and materials used to seal Work Area openings shall be completely removed upon completion of abatement activities.

C. All penetrations (including, but not limited to, pipes, ducts, etc.) through fire rated construction shall be firestopped using materials and systems tested in accordance with ASTM E814 on Projects where reinsulation is part of the required work.

PART 4 DISPOSAL OF ASBESTOS WASTE

4.01 TRANSPORTATION AND DISPOSAL SITE

A. The Contractor's Hauler and Disposal Site shall be approved by the Owner. All waste generated during the asbestos project shall be disposed of as RACM asbestos waste.

B. The Contractor shall give twenty-four (24) hour notification prior to removing any waste from the site. Waste shall be removed from the site only during normal working hours unless otherwise specified. No waste may be taken from the site unless the Contractor and Environmental Consultant are present and the Environmental Consultant authorizes the release of the waste as described herein.

C. All waste generated as part of the asbestos project shall be removed from the site within ten (10) calendar days after successful completion of all asbestos abatement work.

D. Upon arrival at the Project Site, the Hauler must possess and present to the Environmental Consultant a valid New York State Department of Environmental Conservation Part 364 Asbestos Hauler's Permit. The Environmental Consultant may verify the authenticity of the hauler's permit with the proper authority.

E. The Hauler, with the Contractor and the Environmental Consultant, shall inspect all material in the transport container prior to taking possession and signing the Asbestos Waste Manifests.

4.02 WASTE STORAGE CONTAINERS

A. All waste containers shall be fully enclosed and lockable (i.e. enclosed dumpster, trailer, etc.). No open containers will be permitted on-site (i.e. open dumpster with canvas cover, etc.) unless specifically permitted by applicable regulation or a Site Specific Variance. When asbestos contaminated waste must be kept on the work site overnight or longer, it shall be double bagged and stored in accordance with Federal, State, and local laws.

B. The Environmental Consultant shall verify that the waste storage container and/or truck tags (license plates) match that listed on the New York State Department of Environmental Conservation Part 364 permit. Any container not listed on the permit shall be removed from the site immediately.

C. The container shall be plasticized and sealed with two (2) layers of 6 mil polyethylene. Once on site, it shall be kept locked at all times, except during load out. The waste container shall not be used for storage of equipment or contractor supplies.

D. While on-site, the container shall be labeled with EPA Danger signage:

DANGER
CONTAINS ASBESTOS FIBERS
AVOID CREATING DUST
CANCER AND LUNG DISEASE HAZARD

E. The New York State Department of Environmental Conservation Asbestos Hauler's Permit number shall be stenciled on both sides and back of the container.

F. The container is not permitted to be loaded unless it is properly plasticized, has the appropriate danger signage affixed, and has the permit number appropriately stenciled on the container.

G. Waste generated off-site is not permitted to be brought onto the Project site and loaded into the waste container.

H. All asbestos waste removed from the project site shall be transported directly to the disposal site without any addtional waste being added to the container during transport.

4.03 OWNER'S AND HAULER'S ASBESTOS WASTE MANIFESTS

A. The Hauler's Manifest shall be completed by the Contractor and verified by the Environmental Consultant that all the information and amounts are accurate and the proper signatures are in place.

B. The Manifests shall have the appropriate signatures of the Environmental Consultant, the Contractor, and the Hauler representatives prior to any waste being removed from the site.

C. Copies of the completed Hauler's Manifest shall be retained by the Environmental Consultant and the Contractor and shall remain on site for inspection.

D. Upon arrival at the Disposal Site, the Hauler's Manifest shall be signed by the Disposal Facility operator to certify receipt of ACM covered by the manifest.

E. The Contractor shall forward copies of the Hauler's Manifest to the Environmental Consultant within 14 days of the waste container being removed from the site. Failure to do so may result in payment being withheld from the Contractor.

F. All waste disposal manifests and disposal logs shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Owner with the final close-out documentation.

SECTION 031000 - CONCRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. Provide forms wherever necessary to confine concrete and shape it to required dimensions.

B. Not Used

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Concrete Reinforcing .....Section 032000

B. Cast-in-Place Concrete.....Section 033000

1.03 REFERENCES

References and industry standards listed in this Section are applicable to the Work. Unless more restrictive criteria or differing requirements are explicitly stated in the Specifications, or mandated by governing codes or regulations, the recommendations, suggestions, and requirements described in the referenced standards shall be deemed mandatory and applicable to the Work.

A. American Concrete Institute (ACI) standards, latest editions.

1. ACI 301 Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings.

2. ACI 347 Guide to Formwork for Concrete.

1.04 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. The design and engineering of the formwork, as well as its construction, is the responsibility of the Contractor.

B. Design formwork in accordance with ACI 347 and the NYS Building Code.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data

Submit manufacturers' information for the following:

1. Not Used

2. Ties, each type and where to be used

3. Form-release agent. Form-release agent to be submitted for review only.

B. Not Used

C. Shop Drawings

1. Prepare and submit formwork shop drawings and calculations prepared and sealed by a Professional Engineer licensed in the State of New York for review when required by the NYS Building Code.

D. Quality Control Submittals

1. Contractor Qualifications

Provide proof of Formwork Installer qualifications specified under "Quality Assurance".

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications

1. Company specializing in performing the Work of this Section shall have three years minimum experience.

2. Person responsible for inspection of formwork shall be a qualified person as defined in the NYS Building Code.

B. Regulatory Requirements

1. Building Code

Work of this Section shall conform to all requirements of the NYS Building Code. Where more severe requirements than those contained in the Building Code are given in this Section and ACI 347, the requirements of this Section and ACI 347 shall govern.

2. Industrial Code Rule #23 of the Department of Labor, paragraphs 23.10.1 to 23-10.5 inclusive.

3. ACI 347.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protection

1. Protect formwork materials before, during and after installation.

2. Protect installed work and materials of other trades.

B. Replacement

1. Repair or replace damaged formwork as approved by the Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS – NOT USED

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Rough Formwork

Shall be Commercial Douglas Fir, DFPA: 5/8" thick minimum or modular metal units.

B. Not Used

C. Not Used

D. Not Used

E. Release Agent

VOC compliant material such as those of the Cresset Chemical Company for coating forms.

F. Form Ties

1. Form ties for exposed concrete shall be adjustable.

2. Form ties for exposed concrete and concrete to receive membranes shall be a break-off type and leave no metal closer than $1^{1}/_{2}$" to the surface.

3. Form ties for concrete stated in 2 above shall be free of devices which leave holes or depressions larger than 7/8" back of exposed surface.

4. Wire ties not permitted.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION OF FORMWORK SURFACES

A. Clean all surfaces of forms and embedded items of any accumulated mortar or grout from previous concreting and other foreign material before concrete is placed in them. Repair or replace any formwork as required.

B. Before placing either reinforcing steel or concrete, cover the surfaces of the rough formwork with an approved form release agent that will effectively prevent absorption of moisture,

prevent bond with the concrete, and which will not stain the concrete surfaces. Material shall be carefully applied at the amount recommended by the release agent manufacturer to obtain the desired finish. Do not apply oil or release agents on formwork for concrete to receive coatings such as membrane waterproofing, plaster, or additional concrete (such as at construction joints). Follow manufacturer's recommendations for alternatives.

3.02 CONSTRUCTION AND DETAILS

A. Adequately support and substantially brace formwork to hold lines and shape.

B. Formwork shall be tight jointed to prevent leakage of mortar from the concrete.

C. Place chamfer strips in the corners of forms to produce beveled edges (chamfers) on permanently exposed surfaces (such as exposed columns). Do not provide beveled edge for interior corners of such surfaces and where members are flush with partitions or walls, unless required by Drawings or specified elsewhere.

D. Set slab-forms with camber of 1/4" per 10 feet of span to maintain tolerances. For two way slabs the lesser span dimension shall govern.

E. Provide positive means of adjustment (wedges or jacks) for shores and struts to take up all settlement during concrete placing operations. Fasten wedges used for final adjustment of forms prior to concrete placement in position after final check. Securely brace forms against lateral deflection.

F. Provide mud sills where shores rest on compressible materials.

G. Provide temporary openings to permit cleaning and inspection. Provide ample time for proper inspection before placement of concrete.

H. Provide "Rough Form Finish" for surfaces not exposed to view. Use plywood or metal forms coated with a release agent.

I. Not Used

J. Form holes for pipes, pipe sleeves, electric outlets, electric conduits, etc. as required. Construct woodforms for wall forms to facilitate loosening, if necessary, to counteract swelling of forms.

K. Provide runways for moving equipment with struts or legs, which shall be supported directly on the formwork or structural member without resting on the reinforcing steel.

L. Provide for rebates, reglets, grooves keys, pockets, ground nailers, projections and other built-in work prior to placement of concrete. Install reglets as per manufacturer's instructions.

M. Install dovetail slots, concrete inserts, and other metal fabrications. Secure to inside forms and space as specified in Section 05500 or as shown on Drawings.

N. At construction joints, contact surface of the form sheathing for flush surfaces exposed to view shall overlap the hardened concrete in the previous placement by not more than 1". The forms shall be held against the hardened concrete to prevent offsets or loss of mortar at the construction joint and to maintain a true surface.

O. Form accessories to be partially or wholly embedded in the concrete, such as ties and hangers, shall be of a commercially manufactured type. Use of non-fabricated wire is not permitted. Construct form ties so that the ends or end fasteners can be removed without causing appreciable spalling at the faces of the concrete. After the ends or end fasteners of the form ties have been removed, terminate the embedded portion of the ties not less than 2 diameters or twice the minimum dimension of the tie from the formed faces of concrete to be permanently exposed to view, except that in no case shall this distance be less than 3/4". When the formed face of the concrete is not to be permanently exposed to view, form ties may be cut off flush with the formed surfaces.

P. Carefully check all forms before placement of concrete. Give special care to suspended first floor slabs resting on compressible material to prevent settlement.

Q. Notify the Engineer of Record if openings are required but not shown on the Drawings, who will issue instructions accordingly.

3.03 REMOVAL OF FORMS AND SHORING

A. Remove forms in such a manner as to assure the complete safety of the structure as required by the NYS Building Code. In no case remove forms or shoring supporting the weight of concrete in beams, slabs or structural members until the members have reached the minimum compressive strength specified on the Drawings or as permitted by the Engineer of Record.

B. Formwork for columns, walls, sides of beams, and other parts not supporting the weight of the concrete may be removed as soon as the concrete has hardened sufficiently to resist damage from removal operations and as required by C below. For normal temperature conditions, this shall be a minimum of 12 hours. For cold weather conditions, this shall be increased to 24 hours. Concrete shall remain protected at all times.

C. When repair of surface defects or finishing is required at an early age, remove forms as soon as the concrete has hardened sufficiently to resist damage from removal operations.

D. Remove top forms on sloping surfaces of concrete as soon as the concrete has attained sufficient stiffness to prevent sagging. Perform any needed repairs or treatment required on such sloping surfaces at once and follow it with the specified curing.

E. Loosen wood forms for wall openings as soon as this can be accomplished without damage to the concrete.

F. Proper safe shoring, number of shores, adequacy, size and location of these shores and forms shall be in accordance with acceptable good construction practice and it is the sole responsibility of the Contractor to provide safe conditions at all times during stripping.

G. Reshoring is subject to the approval of the Special Inspector. While reshoring is underway, do not permit live load on new construction. Members shall never be left unsupported until concrete has attained required strength to be left unsupported as verified by the Special Inspector and if approved by the Engineer of Record.

H. Floors supporting shores under wet concrete shall be reshored or shall have their original shore left in place. The reshores shall have at least one-half the load capacity of the shores above and shall be distributed in approximately the same pattern as above. Tighten reshores to carry the required loads without overstressing the construction. Leave reshores in place until the freshly placed concrete has reached 75% of its 28-day strength, unless otherwise specified.

I. When reshoring of beam and girder construction is required, do not remove forms from more than one girder at a time and reshore the girder before any other supports are removed. After the supporting girders are reshored, remove the forms from one beam with its adjacent slab (half slab on each side) and reshore the beam and slab before any other supports are removed.

J. When reshoring of flat slab construction is required, leave the shores for the area within the intersection of the middle strip of each panel in place at all times until the concrete has attained sufficient strength to support the loading to which it will be subjected. After the other shores in each panel have been removed (within the bay), place reshores on the column lines at the midpoints between columns, before the next panel is stripped.

K. Stripping and reshoring shall conform to the requirements of the NYS Building Code. Perform control tests as required for the removal of forms and shoring without simultaneous reshoring. Proper number, adequacy, size, and location of reshores shall be in accordance with acceptable good construction practice and it is the sole responsibility of the Contractor to provide safe conditions at all times during stripping and reshoring operations.

3.04 TOLERANCES

A. Construct formwork so that concrete surfaces will conform to the tolerance limits listed in ACI 117.

B. Establish and maintain in an undisturbed condition and until final completion and acceptance of the project sufficient control points and bench marks to be used for reference purposes to check tolerances.

C. Regardless of the tolerances listed, do not extend any portion of the concrete work beyond the lot or street line.

D. Not Used

3.05 INSPECTION

A. Under the requirements of the NYS Building Code, formwork, including shores, reshores, braces, and other supports shall be inspected by a qualified person engaged by the Contractor. The qualified person shall make inspections prior to placement of steel to verify correct sizes of members formed and subsequently periodically after placement and during placement of concrete to detect incipient problems. Maintain a record of all inspections.

B. Under the requirements of the Building Code, the Owner will assign a Special Inspector to inspect formwork for size of members and to verify in-situ concrete strengths prior to removal of formwork and shores from beams and slabs.

C. During and after concrete placement, check elevations, camber, and vertical alignment of formwork systems using tell-tale devices.

D. Keep a record of all inspections, the name of the persons making them, and the name of the foreman in charge of formwork at the site. Submit to the Owner's representative on the site a copy of the inspection records prior to each concrete placement.

END OF SECTION 031000

SECTION 032000 - CONCRETE REINFORCING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. Provide and install all reinforcement and associated items required for cast-in-place.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Concrete Forming and Accessories.....Section 031000

B. Cast-in-Place Concrete.....Section 033000

1.03 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS

A. The Contractor shall implement practices and procedures to meet the Project's sustainable requirements. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals as specified in this Section, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions or other changes to the work shall not be proposed by the Contractor or their sub-contractors if such changes compromise the stated Sustainable Design Performance Criteria.

B. Sustainability requirements included in the Section are as follows:

1. Documentation on material costs.

1.04 REFERENCES

References and industry standards listed in this Section are applicable to the Work. Unless more restrictive criteria or differing requirements are explicitly stated in the Specifications, or mandated by governing codes or regulations, the recommendations, suggestions, and requirements described in the referenced standards shall be deemed mandatory and applicable to the Work.

A. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM) standards, latest editions.

A82 Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement.

A184 Standard Specification for Fabricated Deformed Steel Bar Mats for Concrete Reinforcement.

A185 Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain, for Concrete.

A496 Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Deformed, for Concrete Reinforcement.

A497 Standard Specification for Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement, Deformed, for Concrete.

A615 Standard Specifications for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.

A706 Standard Specifications for Low-Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete reinforcement

A775 Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel Bars.

A884 Standard Specifications for Epoxy-coated Wires and Welded Wire Reinforcement.

B. American Concrete Institute (ACI) standards, latest editions.

ACI 301 "Specification for Structural Concrete for Buildings."

ACI 315 "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforce-ment."

ACI 318-02 "Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete (With modifications per NYS Building Code).

C. "Placing Reinforcing Bars - CRSI-WCRSI Recommended Practices", latest edition. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute.

D. "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel" D1.4 - American Welding Society (AWS).

E. "Near-White Blast Cleaning" SSPC-SP10 - Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC).

1.05 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. In lieu of placing reinforcement bars, the contractor has the option of using welded wire reinforcement (WWR).

1. WWR must be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the engineer of record that they are of equivalent strength to the reinforcing bars that are being substituted.

2. As per ACI 318, yield strength greater than 60,000 psi may be used (for WWR) provided the yield strength is measured at a strain of 0.0035 in./in. in accordance with ACI code requirements.

B. Not Used

C. Provide epoxy-coated reinforcement for all concrete work exposed to the elements, such as exterior framed slabs, exposed faces of site/retaining walls/curbs, parapet walls, etc.

1.06 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data

Submit manufacturers' information for the following:

1. Steel welded wire fabric

2. Steel welded wire reinforcement.

3. Supports

4. Mechanical connectors

B. Shop Drawings

1. Immediately after award of Contract, prepare shop drawings showing all fabrication dimensions and locations for placing of the reinforcing steel and accessories. Shop Drawings are to be prepared by a rebar detailer.

2. Follow detailing recommendations of ACI 315.

3. Submit drawings gradually and not all at the same time so that sufficient time is allowed for checking and approval. Improperly prepared and incomplete shop drawings will be disapproved without review.

4. Shop drawings will be checked for size of material and spacing by the Engineer of Record, which shall not render the Engineer responsible for any errors in construction dimensions, quantities, bends, etc. that have been made in preparation of the shop drawings. The Contractor shall assume full responsibility for the correctness of quantities, dimensions and fit.

5. Do not order or deliver reinforcement to job site prior to approval of drawings.

6. Indicate location of epoxy-coated bars on the drawings.

C. Quality Control Submittals

1. Certificates

a. Submit certificate stating that reinforcement meets or exceeds the specified requirements.

b. Submit certification that properly identifies the number of each batch of epoxy coating material used on the project, material, quantity represented, date of manufacture, name and address of manufacturer and a statement

that the supplied epoxy-coated reinforcing bars meet the requirements of this specification and the requirements of ASTM A775 including Annex A1.

c. If WWR is used, provide certificate from the manufacturer that WWR meets or exceeds the requirements specified in ACI 318 and provide calculations that it is of equivalent strength to the reinforcing bars that are being substituted.

2. Contractor Qualifications

Provide proof of Installer qualifications specified under "Quality Assurance".

D. Sustainable Submittals:

1. Submit Contractor's Sustainable Materials Form for reinforcement with complete materials cost information in accordance with Section S01352, Sustainability Requirements.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications

1. Rebar Installer: Company specializing in performing the Work of this Section shall have three years minimum experience on successful projects of similar size.

2. Not Used

B. Regulatory Requirements

1. Building Code

Work of this section shall conform to all requirements of the NYS Building Code. Deliveries will be rejected unless:

a. All reinforcing bars are identifiable as to point of origin, grade of steel and size.

b. All bundles or rolls of cold drawn steel wire reinforcement are securely tagged to identify the manufacturer, the grade of steel and the size.

Where more severe requirements than those contained in the Building Code are given in this Section and ACI 318, the requirements of this Section and ACI 318 shall govern.

2. Industry Standards

Details of Concrete reinforcement not covered herein shall be in accordance with "Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete" (ACI 318) and "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement" (ACI 315), latest editions and the Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute Manual on "Placing Reinforcing Bars" (CRSI).

1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store in location to prevent rusting, etc.

B. Protect reinforcement before, during, and after installation.

C. Insure proper identification after bundles are broken.

D. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars

1. Equipment for handling epoxy-coated bars shall have protected contact areas. Lift Bundles of coated bars at multiple pick-up points to minimize bar-to-bar abrasion from sags in the bundles.

2. Do not drop or drag coated bars or bundles of coated bars. Store coated bars on protective cribbing.

3. Fading of the color of the coating shall not be cause for rejection of epoxy-coated reinforcing bars. Coating damage due to handling, shipment, and placing need not be repaired in cases where the damaged areas is 0.1 in^2 or smaller. Repair damaged areas larger than 0.1 in^2 in accordance with Article 2.02. The maximum amount of damage, including repaired and unrepaired areas, shall not exceed 2% of the surface area of each bar. Bars with greater than 2% damaged areas will be rejected.

E. WWR is shipped in two forms; rolls or sheets. If the rolls or sheets must be lifted by crane at the job site, the contractor may request the manufacturer to install lifting eyes. At all times during off loading of materials, caution must be exercised and all safety regulations and practices must be observed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Non-coated Reinforcing Bars

1. All non-coated reinforcing bars, except those to be welded, shall be of deformed type of new billet steel conforming to current requirements of ASTM A615. No

rail or re-rolled steel will be permitted. Reinforcement to be welded shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A706.

2. Grade or yield strength of reinforcing bars are indicated on Drawings.

B. Welded Steel Wire Fabric (WWF)

1. Wire Fabric shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A185.

2. Required net area, placement details, and other requirements are indicated on Drawings.

3. Epoxy coating of Welded Wire Fabric shall be in accordance with ASTM A884.

C. Welded Wire Reinforcement (WWR)

1. Welded Wire Reinforcement shall conform to ASTM A497 and shall be made of wire conforming to ASTM A496.

2. Epoxy coating of Welded Wire Reinforcement shall be in accordance with ASTM A884.

D. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars

1. All steel reinforcing bars to be coated shall be of deformed type of new steel conforming to current requirements of ASTM A615. Bars shall be free of contaminants such as oil, grease or paint. No rail or re-rolled steel will be permitted. Reinforcement to be welded shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A706.

2. Grade or yield strength of reinforcing bars are indicated on Drawings.

3. Bars shall be epoxy-coated in accordance with ASTM A775.

4. The coating material shall be of organic composition meeting the requirements listed in ASTM A775 Annex A1 entitled "Requirements for Organic Coating." Resistance to chemicals, applied voltage, chloride permeability, flexibility, bond strength, abrasion resistance, impact, and hardness shall be tested in accordance with Annex A1.

E. Supports for Reinforcement

1. Non-coated Reinforcement

a. Supports for reinforcement supported by formwork or deck shall consist of metal bolsters and chairs of adequate strength, size, and number. Provide

CRSI Class C supports (plastic tipped) for formed concrete surfaces and Class A (bright basic) for metal deck.

b. Supports for reinforcement of slabs supported by ground shall consist of above supports with sand plates or horizontal runners. Support for reinforcement of footings/ pilecaps shall consist of the above supports or precast concrete block, 4" square, having a compressive strength equal to that of the concrete being placed.

2. Epoxy-coated Reinforcement

a. Epoxy-coated reinforcing bars supported from formwork shall rest on coated wire bar supports, or on bar supports made of dielectric material or other acceptable materials. Wire bar supports shall be coated with dielectric material for a minimum distance of 2" from the point of contact with the epoxy-coated reinforcing bars.

b. Reinforcing bars used as support bars shall be epoxy-coated. In walls having epoxy-coated reinforcing bars, spreader bars, where specified on the Drawings or shop drawings, shall be epoxy-coated. Proprietary combination bar clips and spreaders used in walls with epoxy-coated reinforcing bars shall be made of corrosion-resistant material.

F. Tie Wire

Tie wire for fastening epoxy-coated reinforcing bars shall be nylon-epoxy, plastic-coated, or other material acceptable to the Owner.

2.02 FABRICATION

A. General

Fabricate reinforcing bars in accordance with fabricating allowances given in ACI 315.

B. Epoxy-Coated Bars

1. Surface Preparation

Clean the surface of the steel reinforcing bars to be coated by abrasive blast cleaning to near-white metal in accordance with SSPC-SP10.

2. Application of Coating (In Shop)

a. Apply the coating to the cleaned surface as soon as possible after cleaning and before oxidation of the surface discernible to the unaided eye occurs.

However, in no case delay application of the coating more than 8 hours after cleaning.

b. The coating shall be applied by the Electrostatic Spray Method and fully cured in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer of the coating material.

c. Coat ends of bars in accordance with the manufacturer's standards.

3. Thickness of Coating Material

a. The film thickness of the coating after curing shall be 5 to 12 mils inclusive. Take a minimum of 15 measurements approximately evenly spaced along each side of the test bar. At least 90% of these measurements shall be within the specified limits.

b. Test the thickness of the film coating in accordance with ASTM G12.

4. Coating Repair: Repair coating damage due to fabrication or handling in cases where damaged area is 0.1 in^2 or greater. Repair all damaged areas larger than 0.1 in^2 with patching material. The maximum amount of damage shall not exceed 2% of the surface area of each bar. Patch in accordance with the patching material manufacturer's recommendations. Repair ends of bars cut in the field with the patching material.

5. Bending of Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Bend all epoxy-coated reinforcement cold unless otherwise approved by the Owner. When epoxy coated reinforcement bars are field or shop bent, repair coating damage in accordance with paragraph B.4 above. Rollers of bending apparatus shall have neoprene collars.

2.03 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. The Owner shall have the right to inspect the material at all times while work on the Contract is being performed. Epoxy-coated reinforcing bars that do not meet the requirements of this Specification will be rejected. Replace all rejected bars at no cost to the Owner.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PLACEMENT

A. General

1. Place reinforcement in accordance with CRSI "Placing Reinforcement Bars" and the NYS Building Code.

2. Unless otherwise permitted, welding of crossing bars (tack welding) for assembly of reinforcement is prohibited.

3. Avoid cutting or puncturing vapor barrier during placement.

B. Supports

1. Support and fasten together all reinforcement to prevent displacement by construction loads or placing of concrete.

2. Provide supports specified in Article 2.01.

3. Provide Continuous High Chair Upper (CHCU) or Continuous Support (CS) for welded wire fabric in the metal deck and place every four feet (4') parallel to the supporting beams.

4. Lifting of bars, welded wire fabric, and welded wire reinforcement into position during placement of concrete is not permitted.

5. Where the concrete surface will be exposed to the weather in the finished structure, the portions of all accessories within 1/2" of the concrete surface shall be non-corrosive or protected against corrosion.

6. The following guidelines for WWR support spacing can be used for supported concrete slabs whether formed or placed on composite metal decks.

Wire Size	Wire Spacing	Support Spacing
W or D9 and larger	12” and greater	4-6 ft.
W or D5 to W or D8	12” and greater	3-4 ft.
W or D9 and larger	Less than 12”	3-4 ft.
W or D4 to W or D8	Less than 12”	2-3 ft.
Less than W or D4	Less than 12”	2-3 ft. or less.

C. Cover

Provide minimum protective cover given in the NYS Building Code if not indicated on Drawings.

D. Splices

1. All splices not shown on the Project Drawings shall be shown on the shop drawings and approved by the Engineer of Record.

2. Welded splices - Provide where indicated on Drawings. All welding shall conform to AWS D1.4. At these locations, only reinforcement conforming to ASTM A706 shall be used.

a. Provide suitable ventilation when welding epoxy-coated reinforcing bars.

b. After completion of welding on epoxy-coated reinforcing bars, repair coating damage in accordance with Article 2.02. All welds, and all steel splice members when used to splice bars, shall be coated with the same material used for repair of coating damage.

3. Mechanical Connectors

a. Provide where indicated on Drawings. Install in accordance with splice device manufacturer's recommendations.

b. After installing mechanical connectors on epoxy-coated reinforcing bars, coating damage shall be repaired in accordance with Article 2.02. All parts of mechanical connectors used on coated bars, including steel splice sleeves, bolts, and nuts shall be coated with the same material used for repair of coating damage.

E. Embedment Lengths

All embedment lengths not shown on the Project Drawings shall be shown on the shop drawings and approved by the Engineer of Record.

3.02 FIELD CUTTING

A. When epoxy-coated reinforcing bars are cut in the field, coat the ends of the bars with the same material used for repair of coating damage.

3.03 TOLERANCES

A. Place reinforcing bars in accordance with the tolerances given in the NYS Building Code.

B. Move bars as necessary to avoid interference with other reinforcement, conduits, or imbedded items. If bars are moved more than one bar diameter, or enough to exceed the above tolerances, the resulting arrangements are subject to approval by the Engineer of Record.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Under the requirements of the NYS Building Code, the Owner will assign a Special Inspector to inspect the size and placement of reinforcement. A record will be made of all inspection of reinforcement at the bending bench and in place.

B. Do not proceed with the completion of wall forms until all reinforcement has been approved and recorded by the Special Inspector.

C. Do not proceed with concreting until all reinforcing in place has been approved and recorded.

D. Promptly correct all reinforcement displaced during pouring of concrete.

E. Damaged reinforcement shall not be used.

3.05 CLEANING

A. Steel reinforcement shall be free of all rust, scale, oil, paint, grease, loose mill scale, and all other foreign matter that will prevent bonding of concrete and steel just prior to pouring of concrete.

END OF SECTION 032000

SECTION 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. Furnish material, equipment, labor, services required to provide for cast-in-place concrete. Work includes but is not limited to structural, sitework, slabs, concrete fire protection, equipment pads, and installation of miscellaneous inserts, waterstops, vapor barriers, toppings, expansion joints and other items listed herein. Allow ample time and facility for the Work of other Divisions to be installed.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Concrete Forming and Acceesories..... Section 031000

B. Concrete Reinforcing ..... Section 032000

1.03 SUSTAINABILITY REQUIREMENTS

A. The Contractor shall implement practices and procedures to meet the Project's sustainable requirements. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals as specified in this Section, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions or other changes to the work shall not be proposed by the Contractor or their sub-contractors if such changes compromise the stated Sustainable Design Performance Criteria.

B. Sustainability requirements included in the Section are as follows:

1. Meet established minimum recycled content for concrete.

2. Documentation of Recycled materials.

3. Documentation of Regional materials.

1.04 REFERENCES

References and industry standards listed in this Section are applicable to the Work. Unless more restrictive criteria or differing requirements are explicitly stated in the Specifications, or mandated by governing codes or regulations, the recommendations, suggestions, and requirements described in the referenced standards shall be deemed mandatory and applicable to the Work.

A. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM) standards, latest editions.

C31 Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field.

C33 Standard Specifications for Concrete Aggregates.

C39 Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.

C42 Standard Test Method for Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete.

C78 Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Concrete (Using Simple Beam with Three-point Loading)

C94 Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete.

C127 Standard Test Method for Density, Relative Density (Specific Gravity) and Absorption of Course Aggregate.

C131 Standard Test Method for Resistance to Degradation of Small-Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angles Machine.

C138 Standard Test Method for Density (Unit Weight), Yield, and Air Content (Gravimetric) of Concrete.

C143 Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic Cement Concrete.

C150 Standard Specification for Portland Cement.

C172 Standard Method of Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete.

C173 Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method.

C192 Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Laboratory.

C231 Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method.

C260 Standard Specifications for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete.

C309 Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete.

C330 Standard Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete.

C387 Standard Specification for Packaged, Dry, Combined Materials for Mortar and Concrete.

C494 Standard Specification for Chemical Admixture for Concrete.

C496 Standard Test Method for Splitting Tensile Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.

C567 Standard Test Method for Density of Structural Lightweight Concrete.

C685 Standard Specification for Concrete Made by Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing.

C882 Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Epoxy-Resin Systems used with Concrete by Slant Shear

C1315 Standard Specification for Liquid-Forming Compounds Having Special properties for Curing and Sealing Concrete

E96 Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials

E154 Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth Under Concrete Slabs

E329 Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in the Testing and/or Inspection of Materials used in Construction

E1155 Standard Test Method for Determining F_F Floor Flatness and F_L Floor Levelness Numbers

E1643 Standard Practice for Installation of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs

E1745 Standard Specification for Plastic Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs

B. American Concrete Institute (ACI) standards, latest editions.

ACI 117 Standard Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials

ACI 211.1 Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight, and Mass Concrete.

ACI 211.2 Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Structural Lightweight Concrete.

ACI 212.3R Chemical Admixtures for Concrete.

ACI 214 Evaluation of Results of Tests Used to Determine the Strength of Concrete.

ACI 301 Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings.

ACI 302.1R Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.

ACI 304R Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting and Placing Concrete.

ACI 305R Hot Weather Concreting.

ACI 306R Cold Weather Concreting.

ACI 308 Standard Practice for Curing Concrete.

ACI 309R Guide for Consolidation of Concrete.

ACI 311.4R Guide for Concrete Inspection.

ACI 318-02 Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete (With modifications per NYS Building Code).

C. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials

T318 Water Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete Using Microwave Oven Testing

1.05 DEFINITIONS

A. Exposed to view

Situated so that it can be seen from eye level from a public location. A public location is that which is accessible to persons not responsible for operation or maintenance of the building.

B. Lightweight concrete

Not Used

C. Normal weight concrete

Concrete for which density is not a controlling attribute, made with aggregates of the types covered by ASTM C33 and usually having unit weights in the range of 135 to 160 lb/ft^3.

1.06 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Performance Characteristics:

1. Interior slabs on grade: Normal weight concrete with a minimum compressive strength of 3500 psi, non-air entrained, and a maximum water to cement ratio of 0.45.

2. Foundations, foundation walls: Normal weight concrete with a minimum compressive strength of 3500 psi, air entrained, and a maximum water to cement ratio of 0.45.

B. Self-consolidating concrete (SCC), with a slump/flow of 20” to 30” and containing the high-range water reducing admixture and a viscosity modifying admixture, is required where noted on Drawings or as indicated herein.

1.07 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data

Submit manufacturers' information for the following:

1. Admixtures
2. Curing compounds
3. Hardener
4. Bonding Agent
5. Vapor barrier
6. Vapor retarder
7. Waterstop

B. Samples

Submit samples of the following items

1. Vapor Barrier
2. Vapor Retarder
3. Waterstop

C. Quality Control Submittals

1. Design Data: Submit design mixes for concrete, including list of admixtures to be used, to the Testing Agency, the Special Inspector, and the Engineer of Record.
2. Test Reports: Strength Test Report for preliminary trial mix (with all admixtures).

3. Certificates

   a. Before the start of concrete placement, Building Department form for concrete mix designs, signed and sealed by the licensed concrete laboratory and concrete producer.
   b. Admixture manufacturer's certificate stating that the chloride content of the admixture will not exceed 0.05% by weight.
   c. Concrete laboratory license number and certification of meeting ASTM E329 standards.
   d. Concrete producer's certificate stating the plant and trucks are NYSDOT approved.
   e. Concrete producer's Computer Batch Ticket in accordance with the NYS Building Code must be presented at site before concrete is placed for every load of concrete delivered.
   f. Special Inspection of Concrete Cylinders by the Authority's testing lab is required.

4. Manufactures' Instructions

   Waterstop manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of waterstop, including manner in which splices are to be made.

D. Not Used

E. Written descriptions of concrete pumping and placing methods, including:

1. Concrete pumping and placement methods and equipment
2. Concrete pumping placement pressures and deposition rates
3. Concrete consolidation practices
4. Form stripping sequences and times

1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications

1. Concrete Installer: Company specializing in performing the Work of this Section shall have three years minimum experience on successful projects of similar size.

2. Concrete Producer: Company specializing in the production of concrete shall be certified by the National Ready Mixed Concrete Association (NRMCA) and shall have certification by either a City of Yonkers Agency or the NYS Department of Transportation. The plant shall use NYSDOT approved trucks and drivers shall be certified by the NRMCA.

3. Concrete Laboratory: Concrete laboratory providing design mixes shall be City of Yonkers licensed and shall meet the requirements of ASTM E329.

B. Regulatory Requirements

1. Building Code: Work of this Section shall conform to all requirements of the NYS Building Code and all applicable regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction including safety, health, noise, and anti-pollution regulations. Where more severe requirements than those contained in the Building Code are given in this Section, the requirements of this Section shall govern.

2. Industry Standards: The ACI Standards listed under references apply to Work of this Section. Where more severe requirements then those contained in the Standards are given in this Section or the Building Code, requirements of this Section or the Building Code shall govern. The Contractor shall keep a copy of ACI SP-15 - "Field Reference Manual" at the site.

3. Recommendations or suggestions in the codes and references listed in this Article and under “References” shall be deemed to be mandatory unless they are in violation of the Building Code.

C. Certifications

1. Cast-in-Place Concrete shall conform to the material acceptance, certification, and inspection requirements of the NYS Building Code.

2. Cement and aggregate shall be acquired from the same source for all work. If a change in suppliers is required, a new mix submittal must be produced with the new material and submitted for approval.

D. Coordination

Coordinate this work with the work of other Divisions so that items to be installed are done so correctly and in proper sequence.

E. Not Used

F. Pre-Concrete Conference

At least 35 days prior to the start of the concrete construction schedule, conduct a meeting to review the proposed mix designs and to discuss the required methods and procedures to achieve the required concrete quality. The contractor shall send a pre-concrete conference agenda to all attendees 20 days prior to the scheduled date of the conference.

1.09 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect material from the elements and from other damage on the site.

B. Replace and pay for material and work damaged to the satisfaction of the Owner.

1.10 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Adequately protect concrete placed during rain, sleet, or snow, or when the mean daily temperature falls below 40°F or rises above 90°F as provided in Article 3.05.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Not Used

B. Slag Cement

1. St. Lawrence Cement Company,

2. LaFarge Cement Company

C. Admixtures

1. Euclid Chemical Company, Cleveland, OH 44110

2. Master Builders,

3. Sika Chemical Corporation,

4. Anti Hydro Company,

5. Chem Masters,

6. W.R. Grace & Co.,

D. Curing Compounds

1. Euclid Chemical Company, Cleveland, OH 44110

2. Master Builders,

E. Waterstops

1. BBZ USA-Greenstreak, St. Louis, MO 63122

2. Sika Corp, Lyndhurst NJ 07071

3. DeNeef Construction Chemicals, Waller, TX 77484

F. Vapor Barrier

1. Stego Industries, San Juan Capistrano, CA 92675

2. Reef Industries, Houston, TX 77075

3. W.R. Meadows, Hampshire, IL 60140-0338

4. Raven Industries Inc., Sioux Falls, SD 57104

G. Vapor Retarder

1. Stego Industries, San Juan Capistrano, CA 92675

2. Reef Industries, Houston, TX 77075

3. W.R. Meadows, Hampshire, IL 60140-0338

4. Raven Industries Inc., Sioux Falls, SD 57104

H. Bonding Agent

1. Sto Concrete Restoration Division, Atlanta GA

2. Sika Corp, Lyndhurst NJ

3. Euclid Chemical Company, Cleveland, OH 44110

I. Densifier/Sealer

1. Euclid Chemical Company, Cleveland, OH 44110

2. Curecrete Chemical Company, Inc., Springville, UT 84663

J. Fireproofing Accessories

Equipment Distribution Corporation, Ridgefield Park, N.J., 07660

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Cementitious Materials

1. Portland cement shall conform to ASTM C150 and shall be of the non air-entrained types:

a. Unless otherwise specified or approved by the Engineer of Record, cement shall be Type I or II.

b. Type II shall be used for exterior pavements.

c. Cement shall not contain ingredients that would result in more than two percent air being entrained in the concrete.

2. Slag cement shall conform to ASTM C989, Grade 100 or 120.

3. No other alternate cementitious materials may be utilized.

B. Admixtures

1. General

a. The use of admixtures shall comply with the requirements of the NYS Building Code.

b. The final soluble chloride content in concrete, percent by weight of cement, due to the addition of admixtures and other ingredients shall not exceed 0.05 at 28 days. All admixtures shall be non-corrosive.

c. The amount of cement required by the Building Code may be reduced by 40% as per the code with the use of slag cement that has been reviewed and approved by the Owner.

2. Air-entraining admixture: Shall conform to ASTM C260.

3. Water-reducing admixture: Shall conform to ASTM C494, Type A or D, and contain no more chloride ions than found in drinking water.

4. High range, water-reducing admixture (super- plasticizer): Shall conform to ASTM C494, Type F or G, and contain no more chloride ions than found in drinking water.

5. Water reducing, accelerating admixture: Shall conform to ASTM, Type C or E, and contain no more chloride ions than found in drinking water.

6. Water reducing, retarding admixture: Shall conform to ASTM C494, Type D, and contain no more chloride ions than found in drinking water.

C. Water

Shall be clean potable water free of injurious foreign matter conforming to the requirements of Section BC 1903.4 of the Building Code.

D. Aggregates

Fine and coarse aggregates shall be regarded as separate ingredients. Each size of coarse aggregate, as well as the combination of sizes when two or more are used, shall conform to the appropriate grading requirements of the applicable ASTM specifications. Maximum size of coarse aggregate shall conform to paragraph 3.3.2 of ACI 318.

1. Aggregates for normal weight concrete shall conform to ASTM C33 and be of Size No.57, No.67 and/or No.8.

2. Aggregates for lightweight concrete shall conform to ASTM C330 and be of sizes 3/4" to No.4, 1/2" to No.4, and/or 3/8" to No.8.

E. Curing Compounds

1. Non-strippable

a. Clear Curing and Sealing Compound (A.I.M. Regulations - VOC Compliant, 350 g/l): Liquid type membrane-forming curing compound, clear styrene acrylate type, complying with ASTM C1315, Type I, Class A, 25% solids content minimum. Moisture loss shall be not more than 0.40 Kg/m^2 when applied at 300 sq. ft./gal. Manufacturer's certification is required.

b. Curing Compounds shall be "Super Diamond Clear VOX" by The Euclid Chemical Company or "Masterkure 100W" by Master Builders.

2. Strippable

a. Clear Curing Compound: Liquid type membrane-forming curing compound, complying with ASTM C309.

b. Curing Compounds shall be "Kurez DR Vox, Kurez W Vox by The Euclid Chemical Company or "Masterkure N-Seal VOC" by Master Builders.

F. Bonding Agent

1. Epoxy/acrylic resin that will not form a vapor barrier with the concrete with the following properties:

a. Bond strength of 1800 psi in 2 hours when tested in accordance with ASTM C882.

b. Flexural strength of 2000 psi in 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C78 or 1200 psi when tested in accordance with ASTM C348.

c. Tensile strength of 600 psi in 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C496.

2. Bonding agent shall be "CR246 Sto Bonding and Anti-corrosion Agent" by Sto Concrete Restoration Division, Armatec 110 by Sika Corp, or DuralPrep AC by Euclid Chemical Company.

G. Densifier/Sealer

1. The densifier/sealer compound shall be a siliconate-based sealer that penetrates concrete surfaces, increases abrasion resistance and provides a "low-sheen" surface that is easy to clean. The compound shall contain a minimum solids content of 20%, of which 50% is siliconate.

2. Densifiier/Sealer shall be "Euco Diamond Hard" by The Euclid Chemical Co. or "Ashford Formula" by Curecrete Chemical Co.

H. Vapor Barrier

1. Vapor Barrier shall meet the following properties:

   a. Minimum 15-mil polyolefin geomembrane.

   b. Water Vapor Barrier – ASTM E1745, Class A

   c. Permeance Rating – ASTM E1745/E96 or E1249/E96: 0.018 perms or lower

   d. Puncture Resistance by ASTM E1745: Class A, minimum 2300 grams

   e. Tensile Strength by ASTM E1745: Class A, minimum 45 lbf/in

2. Accessories

   a. Polyethylene tape with pressure sensitive adhesive

   b. Pipe boot for piping and conduits, prefabricated or constructed from vapor barrier and tape

3. Shall be:

   a. Stego Wrap 15 mil Vapor Barrier by Stego Industries

   b. Griffolyn 15 mil Green by Reef Industries

   c. Perminator 15 mil by W.R. Meadows

   d. Vaporblock VB15 15 mil by Raven Industries

I. Vapor Retarder

1. Vapor retarder shall be polyolefin type material, 10-mil thick minimum, with a perm rating of less than 0.1 when tested in accordance with ASTM E1745/E96, and shall be resistant to decay when tested in accordance with ASTM E154 and meet ASTM E1745 Class A.

2. Shall be:

a. Griffolyn 10 mil Green by Reef Industries

b. Stego Wrap 10 mil Vapor Retarder by Stego Industries

c. Perminator 10 mil by W.R. Meadows

d. Vaporblock VB10 10 mil by Raven Industries

J. Waterstops

1. Concrete Joints

a. Water-swelling acrylate ester resin, hydrophilic rubber, or polyurethane type capable of expanding and contracting over multiple number of wet-dry cycles without reduction in its expansion ratio. If concrete surface is very uneven, provide paste type indicated in 2 below.

b. Shall be Duroseal Gasket Waterstop by BBZ USA-Greenstreak, Swellseal 8 by DeNeef, Adcor ES by W.R. Grace, or SikaSwell Profile by Sika Corp. Provide approximately 1" x 3/4" chemical resistant type. Attach to concrete and membranes with manufacturer's recommended adhesive or paste type waterproofing.

2. Steel, pipe and metal penetrations

a. Water-swelling acrylate ester or polyurethane paste type capable of expanding and contracting over multiple number of wet-dry cycles without reduction in it expansion ratio. Paste is a thixotropic grade material capable of being placed on uneven surfaces.

b. Shall be Duroseal Paste by BBZ USA, Swellseal Mastic by DeNeef, or SikaSwell S by Sika Corp. Provide chemical resistant type. Provide a minimum of 3/8" by 1/2" bead of material.

2.03 MIXES

A. General

Concrete for all parts of the Work shall be of the specified quality capable of being placed without excessive segregation and, when hardened, of developing all characteristics required by the Specifications and Drawings.

B. Strength

Strength requirements given in Part 1 of this Specification are based on 28-day compressive strength, unless high early strength is specified, in which case required strengths are based

on 7-day compressive strength. Mixes with slag will have a slower initial set time, which must be taken into account when finishing.

C. Method of Proportioning

1. Proportion, batch, and mix concrete in accordance with NYS Building Code requirements. The licensed concrete laboratory is responsible running the mix and signing the form for filing with the Building Department. Proportion concrete mix in accordance with NYS Building Code requirements.

2. Mix designs are specific to material used, concrete producer, and method of placement. Each mix design must be reviewed by the Engineer of Record and accepted prior to placement along with accompanying form signed by the lab and concrete producer.

3. The recycled content in the concrete mix shall be 40% of the cementitious content or a minimum of 6% of the dry weight.

D. Normal Weight Concrete

1. Unless otherwise specified, proportion and produce normal weight concrete to have a maximum slump of 4” or less. A tolerance of up to 1" above the indicated maximum shall be allowed for individual batches provided the average for all batches or the most recent 10 batches tested, whichever is fewer, does not exceed the maximum limit. The slump shall be determined by ASTM C143. Concrete containing High Range Water Reducer shall have a slump not exceeding 9”, unless other wise approved by the Engineer of Record. The concrete shall arrive at the job site at a slump of 2" to 3", be verified, and the HRWR admixture added to increase the slump to the approved level.

2. Where Normal weight concrete is indicated to be air-entrained, provide the following air content for the grading size of coarse aggregate as follows:

a. No.8.....$7^1/_2$%
b. No.57 or 67.....6%

Tolerance on air content as delivered shall be +1.5%.

2.04 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests

1. The Owner's Testing Laboratory will review and/or check test proposed materials for compliance with the Specifications prior to construction.

2. The Testing Laboratory will perform field tests as work progresses as listed in "Field Quality Control".

B. Inspection

1. Testing Laboratory

a. The Owner will engage a Licensed Concrete Testing Laboratory to inspect batching of the concrete, at the Owner's discretion, and perform all field tests. The Laboratory will perform the following services:

1) Review and/or check-test the Contractor's proposed materials for compliance with the Specifications.

2) Review and/or check-test the Contractor's proposed mix design.

3) Secure production samples of materials at plants or stock-piles during the course of the Work and test for compliance with the Specifications.

4) Perform tests during construction as required by the NYS Building Code. The Laboratory will obtain samples at the mixer and when directed by the Engineer at the point of placement by the following methods:

a) Secure composite samples in accordance with ASTM C172. Each sample shall be obtained from a different batch of concrete on a random basis, avoiding any selection of the test batch other than by a number selected at random before commencement of concrete placement.

b) Mold and cure specimens from each sample in accordance with ASTM C31 and perform strength tests.

b. The Owner may assign a qualified concrete technician to be stationed at the batch plant depending on the size of the project or evidence of poor concrete breaks. At least one qualified concrete technician will be stationed at the site to obtain the test specimens.

c. The Laboratory will be responsible to and under the supervision of the Special Inspector.

2. Special Inspector

a. The Owner will assign, under the requirements of the Building Code a Special Inspector who will supervise the testing of the materials and the inspection of concrete construction. The Special Inspector is responsible any required filing with the Building Department, as well as maintaining a log book of the concrete work.

b. The Special Inspector will check that all required tests are made and the results submitted and shall have the right to order the Contractor to make such changes of the mix of concrete as required to produce concrete of the necessary strength. The Special Inspector will also report to the Building Department Superintendent any deviation from the requirements of the Code, as indicated by records of inspection and reports of tests.

3. Notification

a. Notify the Owner in writing at least forty-eight hours in advance of each concrete placement. The Owner will notify the Testing Laboratory immediately to order out the necessary concrete technicians to cover the work.

b. Once the concrete technicians are ordered out and a cancellation follows, the Contractor will be charged Four Hundred Fifty Dollars for each technician so ordered to appear, unless a cancellation order is issued to the Laboratory by 3 PM the day before the concrete placement.

c. During the placement of the concrete, notify the Owner immediately of any delay at the concrete plant or at the job site. Where the Owner decides to provide a technician at the plant, do not mix concrete or add admixtures unless the Technician is present. Do not add admixtures to be added at the site unless the Technician is present.

4. Contractors Responsibility for Quality Control

a. The Contractor will receive a copy of all reports prepared by the Laboratory and/or Special Inspector. Copies of the daily concrete reports prepared by the Special Inspector will be available for reference.

b. The Contractor will therefore be afforded an opportunity to review all reports and mix data and submit to the Special Inspector any recommendations in changing the mixes provided they conform to the Code and Specifications. Any testing required because of changes in materials or proportions of the mix requested by the Contractor, as well as any extra testing of concrete or materials occasioned by the failure to meet Specification requirements shall be at the Contractor's expense. The Contractor, at any time, can arrange to have independent tests made at own expense by an approved laboratory and submit the reports and recommendations to the Special Inspector and Engineer of Record.

c. The tests and inspections, as provided in the Code, do not in any way relieve the Contractor of responsibility to construct the Work in accordance with the Drawings and Specifications and to use safe, standard methods of construction at all times, safeguarding the public, workmen, and structure. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for the physical control of the

materials and concrete mixes, and shall see that such mix designs, tests, and controls are in accordance with the Code and Specifications.

d. It shall be the Contractor's complete responsibility to adjust, alter, and/or correct any controls necessary in materials and/or concrete operation based upon tests and inspections made by the Owner's or the Contractor's independent tests. If, during the course of the concrete operations, a lower water content or more cement is needed per cubic yard above that used in the approved design mix, provide same at no additional cost to the Owner.

e. If the Contractor requests any deviation from the Specifications and Drawings, or makes or causes to be made any change of construction from Drawings and Specifications, and such request requires the time and investigation of the Engineer of Record, pay all costs incurred by the Owner relating to such time and investigation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Prior to placement of concrete, verify that the concrete cover over the reinforcement is that specified on Drawings.

B. Prior to placement of concrete, verify that edge of deck and slab are within the required tolerance form theoretical.

C. Verify that anchor bolts, reinforcement, and all other embedded items are provided and held securely, positioned accurately, and will not be a detriment to concrete placement.

D. Examine all adjoining work on which this Work is in anyway dependent for proper installation and workmanship. Report to the Owner any condition that prevents the performance of this Work.

3.02 PROTECTION

A. Protect concrete members on grade and the subgrade from freezing before and after installation. Provide blankets and other items necessary.

B. Protect adjacent finish materials and previously poured concrete against spatter during concrete placement.

C. Provide and maintain barricades and safeguards around openings, etc. to protect workmen from injury and to comply with all Building Code, OSHA, and other authorities having jurisdiction regulations.

3.03 PREPARATION

A. Remove ice, excess water, trash, and rubbish from forms.

B. Remove hardened concrete from inner surfaces of conveying equipment and all formwork, reinforcement, and dowels.

C. Prepare previously placed concrete to be in contact with new concrete in the manner described under "Construction Joints".

D. Prepare existing concrete to be in contact with new concrete by roughening and cleaning the surface and applying a bonding agent. Surface must be free of laitance. Concrete must be placed after agent cures and within 20 hours of applying bonding agent. If time elapses, apply a new application in accordance with the directions of the manufacturer.

E. In case a conflict arises between concrete as poured and other Work that requires cutting into concrete beams, columns, walls, or slabs, submit requests to the Engineer of Record, who will issue instructions accordingly. Cutting of concrete is otherwise prohibited.

F. Do not place concrete on frozen ground.

3.04 JOINTS AND EMBEDDED ITEMS

A. Construction Joints

1. Make joints not shown on Drawings at locations that will least impair the strength of the structure. Such location is subject to the approval of the Engineer of Record.

2. Continue reinforcement across joints. Provide longitudinal keys at least $1^1/_2$" deep in walls and provide other keys as required. Drawings indicate keys or roughened surface at interface of walls and footings.

3. Thoroughly clean concrete surface of oil, grease, and other contaminants and remove all laitance prior to placement of adjoining concrete. Roughen surface of the concrete in an approved manner that will expose the aggregate uniformly to a 1/4" amplitude and will not leave laitance, loosened particles of aggregate, or damaged concrete at the surface. Dampen surface immediately prior to placement.

4. Properly install all embedded items where required.

5. Construction joints shall be made in accordance with Section BC 1906.8 of the Building Code.

B. Expansion Joints

1. Do not extend reinforcement or other embedded metal items bonded to concrete continuously through expansion joint. Provide smooth dowels greased on one end at the joints with end cap or insert into pvc sleeve of length greater than the dowel length by .75” minimum.

2. Provide joint filler at the expansion joint of the sizes indicated on the Drawings or specified herein.

C. Waterstops

1. Provide waterstops at all joints and all penetrations of foundation wall and slabs (all interior slabs on grade) of type indicated in Part 2 of this Section. All surfaces onto which material is placed shall be clean and smooth. Do not let materials come in contact with water by covering waterstop, forms, or other means necessary. Provide minimum clearance from edge of concrete as per manufacturer's recommendations, typically 3".

2. Provide maximum practical lengths for each piece so that the number of end joints will be held to a minimum.

3. Make joints in such a manner that they develop effective watertightness fully equal to that of the continuous material. All joints to be lapped as per manufacturer's instructions.

4. Use manufacturer's adhesive or swelling paste type for applying gasket type to previously poured concrete and/or waterproofing membrane. Surface onto which waterstop is placed shall be smooth.

5. Provide swelling paste type at all pipe penetrations, conduits, drains, steel members, and other areas where items penetrate the concrete foundation system and at uneven concrete surfaces.

6. If water penetrates joints in which waterstops are placed at contract locations or at cracks and cold joints, the Contractor shall remediate the crack with injection material recommended by the Owner that will provide a 5-year labor and material guarantee against water seepage at no cost to the Owner.

D. Other embedded items

1. Place all fence sleeves and shoes, pipe sleeves, inserts, anchors, anchor bolts, and other embedded items required for the Work of other Divisions or for their support prior to concreting. Install Link-seal Watertight Sleeves by Thunderline Corp. through foundation walls and slabs and other locations where watertight construction is required and where indicated on Drawings as per manufacturer's instructions. Coordinate with other trades, all Drawings, and manufacturer for sizes, location, and quantity.

2. Provide ample notice and opportunity for items of other Division to be introduced and/or furnished for installation before concrete is placed. Coordinate the Work of the other Divisions so all items are placed in their proper location.

3. Set metal pipe sleeves, sockets, shoes, etc. into concrete to receive fence posts or any other items, all as indicated on details.

E. Placement of Embedded Items

Position expansion joint material, waterstops, and other embedded items accurately and support against displacement. Fill voids in sleeves, anchor slots, and inserts temporarily with readily removable material to prevent the entry of concrete into the voids.

3.05 MIXING AND PLACING CONCRETE

A. General

1. Notify Owner at least 48 hours in advance of each concrete placement. Do not place concrete without approval of the Special Inspector.

2. Do not allow rainwater to increase mixing water nor damage surface finish.

3. When placing concrete in cold weather (air temperature below 40°F), concrete shall contain either an accelerating admixture or use Type III cement.

B. Mixing

1. Batch, mix, and transport ready-mixed concrete in accordance with the appropriate sections of ASTM C94 and the NYS Building Code. Truck mixers and agitators shall meet the requirements of the Truck Mixers Manufacturer's Bureau or shall comply with Section 8.1.2 of ASTM C94 and shall be NYSDOT approved. All trucks shall have working revolution counters and site gages. Batch all other concretes in accordance with subsection 4.3.1 of ACI 301 only if permitted by the Engineer of Record and Special Inspector.

2. Batch ready-mixed concrete only in plants that are NRMCA certified and NYSDOT approved. Only plants that are NYSDOT approved with current certification meeting the requirements for certification of the NRMCA for automatic batching and automatic recording will be permitted. Concrete shall be batched by the use of automation.

3. Unless otherwise approved by the Engineer of Record, concrete shall be deposited within $1^1/_2$ hours or 300 revolutions of the mixing drum, whichever comes first, after introduction of water to the cement or cement to the aggregate. When the ambient temperature rises above 90°F, the time shall be decreased to 1 hour.

4. Not Used

5. Tempering and control of mixing water

   a. Mix concrete only in quantities for immediate use. Concrete that has started to set shall not be retempered, but shall be discarded. Water shall not be added at the site.

b. For concrete containing HRWR (Superplasticizer), if loss of slump occurs, HRWR may be redosed at the site as long as a "flash set" has not occurred. Redosage procedures must be discussed and approved by the Engineer and the admixture manufacturer at the Pre-Concrete Conference.

6. Weather Conditions

a. Cold weather (Air Temperatures below 40°F)

1) Concrete shall have either an accelerating admixture or use Type III cement.

2) The temperature of concrete delivered at the site shall conform to the temperature limitations given in Section 5 of ACI 301.

3) If water or aggregate is heated above 100°F, combine the water with the aggregate in the mixer before cement is added. Cement shall not be mixed with water or with mixtures of water and aggregate having a temperature greater than 100°F.

4) Detailed requirements are given in ACI 306R.

b. Hot Weather (Air Temperatures above 90°F)

1) Cool the ingredients before mixing, or substitute flake ice or well-crushed ice of a size that will melt completely during mixing for all or part of the mixing water if, due to high temperature, low slump, flash set, or cold joints are encountered.

2) Detailed requirements are given in ACI 305.

6. Admixtures - General

a. Add all admixtures prior to mixing unless otherwise specified or directed.

b. Air-entraining admixtures and other chemical admixtures shall be charged into the mixer as solutions and shall be measured by means of an approved mechanical dispensing device. The liquid shall be considered a part of the mixing water. Admixtures that cannot be added in solution may be weighed or may be measured by volume if so recommended by the manufacturer. The accuracy of measurement of any admixture shall be within +3 percent.

c. If two or more admixtures are used in the concrete, add them separately to avoid possible interaction that might interfere with the efficiency of either admixture or adversely affect the concrete. Do not charge admixtures into the mixer in such a manner that they will come in direct contact with the cement.

d. Use of accelerating admixtures or Type III cement shall not relax cold weather placement requirements.

e. Use of retarding admixtures in hot weather must be approved by the Special Inspector. Use of such admixtures will not relax hot weather placement requirements.

C. Placing

1. General: Place concrete in accordance with ACI 304R, ACI 318, and the NYS Building Code.

2. Conveying

a. Handle concrete from the mixer to place of final deposit as rapidly as practicable by methods that will prevent separation or loss of ingredients and in a manner that will assure that the required quality of concrete is obtained.

b. Conveying equipment shall be approved and shall be of a size and design such that detectable setting of concrete shall not occur before adjacent concrete is placed. Conveying equipment shall be cleaned at the end of each operation or workday. Conveying equipment and operations shall conform to the following additional requirements:

1) Truck mixers, agitators, and non-agitating units and their manner of operation shall conform to the applicable requirements of ASTM C94.

2) Belt conveyors shall be horizontal or at a slope which will not cause excessive segregation or loss of ingredients. Concrete shall be protected against undue drying or rise in temperature. An approved arrangement shall be used at the discharge end to prevent apparent segregation. Mortar shall not be allowed to adhere to the return length of the belt. Long runs shall be discharged into a hopper or through a baffle.

3) Chutes shall be metal or metal-lined and shall have a slope not exceeding 1 vertical to 2 horizontal and not less than 1 vertical to 3 horizontal. Chutes more than 20' long and chutes not meeting the slope requirements may be used provided they discharge into a hopper before distribution.

4) Pumping or pneumatic conveying equipment shall be of suitable kind with adequate pumping capacity. Pneumatic placement shall be controlled so that segregation is not apparent in the discharged concrete. The loss of slump in pumping or pneumatic conveying equipment shall not exceed 2". Pumping is permitted only if a pump mix is approved. Concrete shall not be conveyed through pipe made of aluminum or aluminum alloy.

3. Depositing: Detailed recommendations are given in ACI 304R.

a. General

1) Deposit concrete continuously, or in layers of such thickness that no concrete will be deposited on concrete that has hardened sufficiently to cause the formation of seams or planes of weakness within the section. If a section cannot be placed continuously, locate construction joints at points as provided for in the Drawings, shop drawings, or as approved.

2) Carry out placement at such a rate that the concrete that is being integrated with fresh concrete is still plastic. Do not deposit concrete that has partially hardened or has been contaminated by foreign material.

3) Place concrete in a manner that uniformly distributes the material over the metal deck in order to avoid overloading the deck joints.

4) Remove temporary spreaders in forms when the concrete placing has reached an elevation rendering their service unnecessary. They may remain embedded in the concrete only if made of metal or concrete and if prior approval has been obtained.

5) Placing of concrete in supported elements shall not be started until the concrete previously placed in columns and walls is no longer plastic.

b. Segregation: Deposit concrete as nearly as practicable in its final position to avoid segregation due to rehandling or flowing. Do not subject concrete to any procedure that will cause segregation. The maximum drop height shall be five feet. Provide drop tubes for placement in forms and other locations where drop height exceeds the indicated maximum.

c. Consolidation

1) Consolidation of concrete and the use and type of concrete shall be in accordance with ACI 309R.

2) Where a surface mortar is to be the basis of the finish, the coarse aggregate shall be worked back from the forms with a suitable tool so as to bring a full surface of mortar against the form, without the formation of excessive surface voids.

3) Consolidate all concrete by vibration so that the concrete is thoroughly worked around the reinforcement, around embedded items and into corners of forms, eliminating all air or stone pocket or weakness. Internal vibrators shall be the largest size and most powerful that can be used in the Work, as described in Table 5.1.5 of ACI 309R, with a minimum frequency of 7000 revolutions per minute and shall be operated by competent workmen. Overvibrating and use of vibrators to transport concrete within forms is not permitted. Insert and withdraw vibrators at many points, from 18" to 30" apart. At each insertion, the duration shall be sufficient to consolidate the concrete but not sufficient to cause segregation, generally from 5 to 15 sec duration, and shall reach the bottom of the pour. Keep a spare vibrator on the job site during all concrete placing operations.

4. Cold Weather Concrete Placement and Protection: Detailed requirements are given in ACI 306.

When the mean daily temperature of the atmosphere is less than 40°F during concreting, or within 72 hours there after (or the air temperature is not greater than 50°F for more than one-half of any 24-hr period for a period of 3 consecutive days), follow the procedures outlined in ACI 306R to protect the concrete. Provide a cold weather concreting plan as well as list of equipment and material (e.g. thermometers, blankets) to be used to the Special Inspector. Temperature of the plastic concrete shall be no lower than 55°F. Heat all forms, reinforcing steel, and surfaces to receive concrete above the freezing point and keep them completely free of frost, snow, and ice. Protection shall consist of insulating boards, blankets, or heated enclosures. Underside of slabs shall be heated during placement and protection period. Initial protection period shall be as indicated in tables 5.1 and 5.3 of ACI 306R. Maximum temperature drop of concrete surface after protection is removed shall follow table 5.5 of ACI 306R.

5. Hot Weather Placement and Protection: When the mean daily temperature of the atmosphere is over 90°F during concreting, follow the procedures outlined in ACI 305R to protect the concrete.

a. All concrete, at the time it is actually deposited in the forms, shall have a temperature not lower than 50°F but never above 90°F.

b. Cover reinforcement with water-soaked burlap to cool steel so its temperature will not exceed the ambient air temperature immediately before concrete placement.

c. Dry surfaces that are to receive concrete should be wet down before commencing placement of concrete and the temperature of such surfaces should not exceed the temperature of the concrete being placed.

6. All concrete washout water, if washed out on site, shall be collected in water-tight containers placed on the site for holding prior to legal disposal off site. Wash water is not permitted to be disposed of in storm, sanitary, or combined sewers.

3.06 FINISHING OF FORMED SURFACES AND REPAIR OF SURFACE DEFECTS

A. General

1. Remove forms as soon as practicable. Refer to Section 031000 and the NYS Building Code.

2. Repair surface defects, including tie holes and cracks, immediately after form removal. Patches shall be of quality to match the specified finish.

3. Remove oil, grease, compounds, and other contaminants from surfaces and areas to be repaired, those surfaces in contact with sprayed fireproofing, and those receiving coatings (ie. plaster, waterproofing, paint, and membranes of any kind).

4. Provide finishes specified below immediately after form removal.

5. Provide curing and protection.

B. Repair of Surface Defects

1. Remove all honeycombed and other defective concrete down to sound concrete. If chipping is necessary, the edges shall be perpendicular to the surface or slightly undercut. Undercut all cracks a minimum of 1" x 1". No featheredges will be permitted. Dampen the area to be patched and an area at least 6" wide surrounding it to prevent absorption of water from the patching mortar. A bonding grout shall be prepared using a mix of approximately 1 part cement to 1 part fine sand passing a No. 30 mesh sieve, mixed to the consistency of thick cream, and then well brushed into the surface.

2. The patching mortar shall be made of the same materials and of approximately the same proportions as used for the concrete, except that the coarse aggregate shall be omitted and the mortar shall consist of not more than 1 part cement to $2^1/_2$ parts sand by damp loose volume. Substitute white Portland cement for a part of the gray Portland cement on exposed concrete in order to produce a color matching the color of the surrounding concrete, as determined by a trial patch. If the material color cannot be matched properly, the Contractor shall use a specialty repair mortar of the Engineer of Record’s choice at the Engineer’s discretion. The quantity of mixing water shall be no more than necessary for handling and placing. Mix the patching mortar in advance and allowed to stand with frequent manipulation with a trowel,

without addition of water, until it has reached the stiffest consistency that will permit placing.

3. After surface water has evaporated from the area to be patched, brush the bond coat well into the surface. When the bond coat begins to lose the water sheen, apply the premixed patching mortar. The mortar shall be thoroughly consolidated into place and struck off so as to leave the patch slightly higher than the surrounding surface. To permit initial shrinkage, leave it undisturbed for at least 1 hr before final finishing. Keep the patched area damp for 7 days. Do not use metal tools for finishing a patch in a formed wall that will be exposed.

C. Tie Holes and Other Repairs

1. Remove ties, nails, and other form accessories below the concrete surface when the surface is exposed to view, the elements, or for surfaces to receive waterproofing or dampproofing. For surfaces not exposed to view or the above-mentioned conditions, remove metal to the surface. Refer to Section 03100.

2. Undercut surfaces of holes. After cleaning and thoroughly dampening the holes, fill them solid with the patching mortar. The mortar shall match the color of the existing concrete for concrete exposed to view as specified in paragraph B.2 above.

D. Formed Finishes

1. Rough Form Finish

a. Provide for concrete not exposed to view unless otherwise indicated under "Finishing" below.

b. Formwork material given in Section 031000.

c. Repair surface as indicated in B. and C. above.

d. Chip or rub off fins exceeding 1/4" in height.

2. Not Used

3. Not Used

E. Acceptance of Concrete Finishes

If finishes produced are not acceptable to the Authority, the Contractor shall be responsible for all costs incurred to produce an acceptable finish by whatever means determined by the Authority.

3.07 SLABS

A. Placement

1. Mixing and placing shall be carefully coordinated with finishing. Do not place concrete on the subgrade or forms more rapidly than it can be spread, straightedged, and darbied or bull floated. Provide leveling, floating, troweling, etc. at the correct time interval after poring to prevent dusting and a non-durable surface as specified in ACI 302.1R. These operations must be performed before bleeding water has an opportunity to collect on the surface.

2. To obtain good surfaces and avoid cold joints, the size of finishing crews shall be planned with due regard for the effects of concrete temperature and atmospheric conditions on the rate of hardening of the concrete.

3. Provide extra concrete as required to make up for any deflections in the metal deck and steel beams in order to provide a level surface using a laser. The beam, girder, and deck deflections may total up to $1^1/_2$".

B. Leveling and Finishing

1. General

a. Carefully provide slab depressions as required for the finishes indicated on the Drawings.

b. Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings or specified herein, make all slabs even and uniform in appearance and, where no slope is required, level. Utilize screed rails and other methods to achieve the required results.

1) Floor Levelness:

a) Slabs on grade and formed slabs shall be placed shall be placed level to an F_L=35.

b) Not Used

c) Slabs placed on stair pans and treads shall be placed level to an F_L=35

2) Floor Flatness

a) Slabs on grade and formed slabs shall be finished flat to an F_F=50 based on 3/16".

b) Not Used

c) Slabs of stair pans and treads shall be finished flat to an F_F=50 based on 1/8".

3) Floor flatness and levelness shall be measured in accordance with ASTM E1155 within 72 hours of placement.

c. Where floor drains or floor slopes are indicated, slope slabs uniformly to provide even fall for drainage.

d. Follow detailed recommendations for finishing given in ACI 301, Section 5, and ACI 302.1R.

e. Protect finishes from contamination from time of placing until time of acceptance, placement of topping, etc.

f. Remove defects of sufficient magnitude to show through floor coverings or that do not meet tolerances by grinding.

2. Finishes

a. Not Used

b. Exposed or painted slabs are to have a "hard trowel" finish (a second steel hand troweling). Apply densifier/sealer to slabs exposed or painted, except for those specified below to have no finish. Apply two coats in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions at the proper time.

c. Surfaces intended to receive roofing, water-proofing membranes: Level and wood float surface. Leave surface free from depressions, bulges, rough spots, and other defects.

d. Not Used

e. Not Used

f. Ramps, Driveways, Exterior Concrete Steps: Level and float surface. Follow with a broom finish perpendicular to direction of traffic.

C. Slabs on Grade

1. General

a. Not Used

b. Where pavements to remain are damaged or destroyed as a result of the Work, patch, repair, or replace as required. Color to match existing.

c. Subgrade and/or aggregate base/crushed stone base shall be free of frost before concrete placing begins.

d. Control Joints:

1) Primary Method: Soff-Cut System method, by Soff-Cut International, Corona, CA (800)776-3328. Finisher must have documented successful experience in the use of this method prior to this project. Install cuts within 2 hours after final finish at each saw cut location. Use 1/8 inch thick blade, cutting $1^{1}/_{4}$ inch into slab.

2) Optional Method (Where Soff-Cut System Method Equipment is Not Available): Properly time cutting with the set of the concrete. Saw-cut control joints within 12 hours after finishing. Start cutting as soon as the concrete has hardened sufficiently to prevent aggregates being dislodged by the saw. Complete cutting before shrinkage stresses become sufficient to produce cracking. Use 1/4" thick blade, cutting 1/4 slab depth.

2. Slabs where vapor barrier required

a. Provide vapor barrier for all interior slabs on grade except for pipe and duct and crawl spaces.

b. Install vapor barrier in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions and ASTM E1643. Just prior to concrete placement, check vapor barrier for punctures and repair as specified below.

1) Unroll vapor barrier with the longest dimension parallel to the direction of pour.

2) Lap barrier over footings and seal to foundation walls.

3) Overlap joints 6” and seal with pressure sensitive tape.

4) Seal all penetrations with pipe boots.

5) No penetration of the barrier is allowed except for reinforcing steel and permanent utilities.

6) Repair damaged areas by cutting patches of vapor barrier, overlapping damaged areas 6”, and taping all four sides with pressure sensitive tape.

c. Pour slab to required thickness after installation of reinforcement.

3. Slabs where vapor retarder required

a. Provide vapor retarder for all slabs on grade of pipe and duct and crawl spaces.

b. Place vapor retarder over compacted base, providing 6” minimum lap at ends. Install vapor retarder in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions. Repair damaged areas by cutting patches of vapor barrier, overlapping damaged areas 6”.

c. Pour slab to required thickness after installation of reinforcement.

4. Slabs where no vapor barrier required

a. Dampen subgrade or aggregate/crushed stone base immediately prior to placement of concrete.

b. Pour slab to required thickness after installation of reinforcement.

5. Expansion joints

a. Not Used

b. Provide continuous expansion joints at the following locations: Driveways and other concrete pavements abutting area walls, buildings, retaining or any other walls, check pieces, steps, curbs. Also provide at the perimeter of interior slabs on grade (except for framed slabs) and as indicated on contract drawings.

c. Expansion joint shall be 1/2" wide, full depth, and flush except where sealer is to be provided at exterior pavements, driveways, and where indicated on Drawings. In this case joint shall be full depth minus 1/4" to allow for the poured joint sealer.

3.08 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE WORK

A. Provide curbs, walls, retaining walls, ramps, and other miscellaneous concrete items.

B. Provide motor, blower, and other mechanical bases. Coordinate with the work of Division 15 and 16. Provide concrete bases as shown on Drawings.

3.09 NOT USED

3.10 PATCHING AND BONDING TO EXISTING CONCRETE

A. Provide bonding agent whenever new concrete is to be poured against existing concrete, whenever the time between concrete pours is longer than that allowed for proper bond, and wherever bonding agent is indicated on the Drawings to be applied.

B. Remove loose concrete from surface to be bonded with new concrete and clean. Remove rust from reinforcement and structural steel by power chipping and power driven brushes.

C. Apply bonding agent in accordance with manufacturer's specifications. Pour concrete as soon as bonding agent has cured and within 20 hours after application. If the 20-hour period has elapsed, then the bonding agent must be reapplied.

3.11 CURING AND PROTECTION

A. General

1. Begin curing concrete immediately after placement and finishing. Protect all freshly deposited concrete from premature drying and excessively hot or cold temperatures and maintain it with minimal moisture loss at a relatively constant temperature for the period of time necessary for the hydration of the cement and proper hardening of the concrete. Detailed procedures are given in ACI 308 and the NYS Building Code.

2. Cure floor surfaces in accordance with ACI 308.

3. Do not apply curing compounds to surfaces receiving waterproofing, adhesives, membranes or additional concrete unless approved by adhesive or material manufacturer or compound is removed in an approved manner. As an alternate, provide wet curing.

B. Procedure

1. Concrete surfaces not in contact with forms:

a. Ponding or continuous non-manual sprinkling.

b. Absorptive mat or fabric, sand, or other covering kept continuously wet.

c. Curing compounds conforming to ASTM C1315 or strippable curing compound conforming to ASTM C309.

2. Concrete surfaces in contact with forms:

a. Minimize moisture loss from forms exposed to heating by the sun by keeping forms wet until they are removed.

b. After form removal, cure with one of the methods listed in 1 above.

3. Continue curing until a total of 7 days has elapsed during which the temperature of the air in contact with concrete has remained above 50°F. Prevent rapid drying during and at the end of the curing period.

4. Remove all curing compounds with cleaners recommended by curing compound manufacturer.

C. Cold Weather Curing

Concrete must be protected from water loss. This shall be accomplished by the application as soon as possible without harm to the concrete surfaces of either (a) exhaust steam, or vapor-resistant paper or polyethylene film, or (b) curing compounds. In all other respects, curing shall conform to applicable provisions of this Section. Concrete temperature shall be maintained between 50°F and 70°F.

D. Hot Weather Curing

1. During the period June 1 to October 1 or when hot weather conditions require it, maintain continuous water curing for a minimum period of twenty-four hours. Provide for windbreaks, shading, and other necessary provisions.

2. After 24 hours, curing shall be by one of the methods specified under B above. In all other respects, curing shall conform to applicable provisions of this Specification. Upon termination of the specified moist curing, every effort should be made to reduce the rate of drying by avoiding air circulation.

E. Protection from mechanical injury: Protect concrete from mechanical disturbances during curing period as described under "Protection and Cleaning".

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests

Tests to be performed by the Owner's Testing Laboratory during construction are as follows:

1. Compliance of materials to Specifications tested from production samples.

2. Determination of the slump of the concrete for each sample taken and whenever consistency of the concrete appears to vary using ASTM C143. The Special Inspector will reject any concrete that does meet the slump requirements.

3. Determination of water content of freshly mixed normal weight concrete utilizing the procedure of AASHTO T318. Concrete that does not meet the maximum water to cement ratio or the proportions given in the approved design mix will be immediately rejected regardless of slump.

4. Strength tests on the specimens in accordance with ASTM C39:

a. The frequency of conducting strength tests of concrete shall be in accordance with Section BC 1905.6.2 of the 2014 NYC Building Code, with additional cylinders taken for an additional strength test and one cylinder for a 7-day break. Strength tests shall be performed for each 50 cubic yards, or portions thereof, of concrete placed in any one day's concreting. Specimens will be stored at the site in the insulated curing box provided by the Contractor. Each group of specimens is considered one strength test. One cylinder will be broken at 7 days for information. A strength test shall be performed at 28 days for acceptance. The remaining cylinders for the additional strength test will be tested only if the 28-day breaks are low or durability of the concrete is in question.

b. If one specimen in a test manifests evidence of improper sampling, molding, or testing, it shall be discarded and the average strength of the remaining cylinders shall be considered the test result. Should all specimens in a test show any of the above defects, the entire test shall be discarded.

5. Determination of air content and unit weight of normal weight concrete sample for each strength test in accordance with ASTM C173 or C231 and ASTM C138.

6. Determination of air content and unit weight of lightweight concrete sample for each strength test in accordance with ASTM C173 or C231 and ASTM C567.

7. Determination of temperature of concrete sample for each strength test.

B. Inspection

1. Refer to "Source Quality Control" for responsibility and procedure.

2. The Contractor shall cooperate in the making of all tests by the Laboratory Technician by:

a. Providing an insulated curing box of sufficient size and strength to contain all specimens made in any four consecutive working days. The Contractor shall furnish an outlet to provide the necessary temperature in the storage box, pending delivery to the Laboratory of the test cylinders.

b. Protecting the property of the Laboratory stored on site and keeping test specimens free from vibration and other disturbances.

c. Providing a microwave of the size specified in AASHTO T318 and a portable generator.

C. Evaluation and Acceptance of Concrete

1. Strength tests on structural concrete will be evaluated according to the requirements of the NYS Building Code.

2. When the average strength of the test cylinders, as defined in the Building Code falls consistently below the specified strength (f'c), the Owner shall have the right to order the Contractor to change the proportions or the water content of the concrete to secure the required strength for the remaining portion of the structure, all at the Contractor's expense. It is the Contractor's complete responsibility to modify the concrete mix design, material controls, and/or concrete operations where necessary to obtain the compressive strength required by the design and Specification.

3. When the average strength of test cylinders for any portion of the structure is less than that required by the design or Specification, or where there is other evidence that the quality of the concrete is below Specification requirements, the adequacy of the concrete will be checked according to the requirements of the NYS Building Code either by structural analysis or by core or load tests or by any combination of these procedures. The Engineer of Record will determine which procedures to use:

   a. Structural Analysis Computations, which will be performed by the Engineer of Record.

   b. Core Tests - Performed in accordance with ASTM C42.

   c. Load Tests (AC1318 Paragraph 20.3 or the Building Code).

4. Exterior concrete exposed to the elements with low strength test results or other evidence of poor durability will be rejected.

5. Low Strength Tests of Concrete or evidence of poor durability - Results

   a. Pay for additional costs of labor and materials required at the job for all damages resulting from load tests and the taking of cores. Remove and replace concrete work that is not of adequate strength or durability and cannot be made to work by remedial methods acceptable to the Owner at own cost. The Contractor shall be held responsible for all delays and damages to the work of other Divisions that occur as a result of non-conformance.

   b. Pay for all expenses borne by the Owner resulting from low strength test procedures or evidence of poor durability (such as high slump) specified above.

3.13 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

A. General

During the curing period, and thereafter as conditions may require, protect the concrete from damaging mechanical disturbances, particularly excessive load stresses, heavy shock, and excess vibration. Protect all finished concrete surfaces from damage caused by construction equipment, materials or methods, and by rain or running water. Self-supporting structures shall not be loaded in such a way as to overstress the concrete.

B. Floors

Floors that have received their final finish shall be closed to all traffic for at least 48 hours following the completion of troweling. Avoid damage to the floor and repair, clean, and prep floor for finishes.

3.14 ACCEPTANCE OF CONCRETE WORK

A. General

1. Completed concrete work that meets all applicable requirements will be accepted without qualification.

2. Completed concrete work which fails to meet one or more requirements but which has been repaired to bring it into compliance will be accepted without qualification.

3. Completed concrete work which fails to meet one or more requirements and which cannot be brought into compliance may be accepted or rejected as provided in these Specifications or in the Contract Documents. In this event, modifications may be required to assure that remaining work complies with the requirements.

4. Concrete work judged inadequate by structural analysis, core test, results of load test or deemed unacceptable due to appearance or durability concerns shall be repaired, reinforced with additional construction if so directed by the Engineer of Record, or be replaced if so directed by the Engineer at the Contractor's expense.

5. Pay all costs incurred by the Owner in providing additional testing and/or analysis required by this Section.

6. The Owner will pay all costs of additional testing and analysis made at its own request that is not required by this Section or that shows concrete is in compliance with the Contract Documents.

B. Dimensional Tolerances

1. Formed surfaces resulting in concrete outlines smaller than permitted by the tolerances of Section 03100 shall be considered potentially deficient in strength and subject to the provisions of paragraph D below.

2. Formed surfaces resulting in concrete outlines larger than permitted by the tolerances of Section 03100 may be rejected and the excess material subject to removal. If removal of the excess material is permitted, it shall be accomplished in such a manner as to maintain the strength of the section and to meet all other applicable requirements of function and appearance.

3. Concrete members cast in the wrong location may be rejected if the strength, appearance, or function of the structure is adversely affected or if misplaced items interfere with other construction.

4. Inaccurately formed concrete surfaces exceeding the limits on Section 03100 and which are exposed to view may be rejected and shall be repaired or removed and replaced if required.

5. Slab tolerance from theoretical elevation is 1/2" plus or minus in accordance with ACI 117. Finished slabs exceeding the tolerances, including specified levelness tolerances, may be repaired provided that the strength or appearance is not adversely affected. High spots may be removed with a terrazzo grinder, low spots filled with a structural repair mortars, or other remedial measures performed as permitted. Provide self-leveling cement based materials for large expanses of deficient areas. All materials shall be approved by the Engineer of record and installed by the Contractor at its cost.

6. For tolerances not specifically indicated in the Contract Document, follow requirements of ACI 117,

C. Appearance

1. Concrete exposed to view with defects that adversely affect the appearance of the specified finish may be repaired only by approved methods.

2. Concrete not exposed to view is not subject to rejection for defective appearance.

D. Strength of Structure

1. The strength of the structure in place will be considered potentially deficient if it fails to comply with any requirements that control the strength of the structure, including but not necessarily limited to the following conditions:

a. Low concrete strength as described under "Field Quality Control".

b. Reinforcing steel size, quantity, strength, position, or arrangement at variance with the requirements of Section 03200A or the Contract Documents.

c. Concrete that differs from the required dimensions or location in such a manner as to reduce the strength.

d. Curing less than that specified.

e. Inadequate protection of concrete from extremes of temperature during early stages of hardening and strength development.

f. Mechanical injury as defined under "Protection and Cleaning", construction fires, accidents, or premature removal of formwork likely to result in deficient strength.

2. Structural analysis and/or additional testing may be required when the strength of the structure is considered potentially deficient.

3. Core tests may be required when the strength of the concrete in place is considered potentially deficient.

4. If core tests are inconclusive or impractical to obtain or if structural analysis does not confirm the safety of the structure, load tests may be required and their results evaluated in accordance with Chapter 20 of ACI 318.

END OF SECTION 033000

MAINTENANCE OF MASONRY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Modifications and repair of existing brick masonry

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 04 2600 - Single-Wythe Unit Masonry.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ACI 530/530.1/ERTA - Building Code Requirements and Specification for Masonry Structures and Related Commentaries; 2013.

B. ASTM C270 - Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry; 2014a.

C. ASTM C216 - Standard Specification for Facing Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made From Clay or Shale); 2014.

D. ASTM C387/C387M - Standard Specification for Packaged, Dry, Combined Materials for Concrete and High Strength Mortar; 2011b.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Samples: Submit four samples of face brick units to illustrate matching color, texture and extremes of color range.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with provisions of ACI 530/530.1/ERTA, except where exceeded by requirements of Contract Documents.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver masonry neatly stacked and tied on pallets. Store clear of ground with adequate waterproof covering.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Cold and Hot Weather Requirements: Comply with requirements of ACI 530/530.1/ERTA or applicable building code, whichever is more stringent.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MORTAR MATERIALS

A. Packaged Dry Material for Mortar for Unit Masonry: Premixed Portland cement, hydrated lime, and sand; complying with ASTM C387/C387M and capable of producing mortar of the specified strength in accordance with ASTM C270 with the addition of water only.
   1. Type: Type N.
   2. Color: Match existing adjacent mortar.

2.2 MASONRY MATERIALS

A. Facing Brick: ASTM C216, Type FBS Rough, Grade SW.
   1. Color and texture: To match existing.
   2. Nominal size: To match existing.
   3. Special shapes: Molded units as required by conditions indicated, unless standard units can be sawn to produce equivalent effect.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that surfaces to be restored are ready for work of this section.

3.2 REBUILDING

A. Cut out indicated required masonry with care in a manner to prevent damage to any adjacent remaining materials.

B. Support structure as necessary in advance of cutting out units.

C. Cut away loose or unsound adjoining masonry as directed.

D. Build in new units following procedures for new work specified in other section(s).

E. Mortar Mix: Colored and proportioned to match existing work.

F. Install built in masonry work to match and align with existing, with joints and coursing true and level, faces plumb and in line. Build in all openings, accessories and fittings.

3.3 CLEANING NEW MASONRY

A. Verify mortar is fully set and cured.

B. Clean surfaces and remove large particles with wood scrapers, brass or nylon wire brushes.

C. Use acid solution mixed with water in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Apply acid solution and scrub brick masonry with stiff fiber brushes. Do not scrub the mortar joints.

D. Before solution dries, rinse and remove acid solution and dissolved mortar, using clean, pressurized water.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Immediately remove stains, efflorescence, or other excess resulting from the work of this section.

B. Remove excess mortar, smears, and droppings as work proceeds and upon completion.

C. Clean surrounding surfaces.

END OF SECTION

SINGLE-WYTHE UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Concrete masonry units.

B. Mortar and grout.

C. Reinforcement, anchorage, and accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 07 8400 - Firestopping: Firestopping at penetrations of masonry work.

B. Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing control and expansion joints.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2016.

B. ASTM A641/A641M - Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire; 2009a (Reapproved 2014).

C. ASTM A951/A951M - Standard Specification for Steel Wire for Masonry Joint Reinforcement; 2011.

D. ASTM A1064/A1064M - Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete; 2015.

E. ASTM C270 - Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry; 2014a.

F. ASTM C387/C387M - Standard Specification for Packaged, Dry, Combined Materials for Concrete and High Strength Mortar; 2011b.

G. ASTM C90 - Standard Specification for Loadbearing Concrete Masonry Units; 2014.

H. ASTM C129 - Standard Specification for Nonloadbearing Concrete Masonry Units; 2011.

I. ASTM C140/C140M - Standard Test Methods of Sampling and Testing Concrete Masonry Units and Related Units; 2014.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide data for decorative and pre-faced masonry units and fabricated wire reinforcement.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with provisions of ACI 530/530.1/ERTA, except where exceeded by requirements of Contract Documents.

B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified and with at least three years of documented experience.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, handle, and store masonry units by means of that will prevent mechanical damage and contamination by other materials.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Cold and Hot Weather Requirements: Comply with requirements of ACI 530/530.1/ERTA or applicable building code, whichever is more stringent.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

A. Concrete Block: Comply with referenced standards and as follows:

1. Size: Standard units with nominal face dimensions of 16 x 8 inches (400 x 200 mm) and nominal depths as indicated on drawings for specific locations.

2. Non-Loadbearing Units: ASTM C129.
   a. Hollow block, as indicated.
   b. Normal weight.

2.2 MORTAR MATERIALS

A. Packaged Dry Material for Mortar for Unit Masonry: Premixed Portland cement, hydrated lime, and sand; complying with ASTM C387/C387M and capable of producing mortar of the specified strength in accordance with ASTM C270 with the addition of water only.
   1. Type: Type N.
   2. Color: Standard gray.

2.3 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE

A. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 40 (40,000 psi) (280 MPa) yield strength, deformed billet bars; uncoated.

B. Joint Reinforcement: Use ladder type joint reinforcement where vertical reinforcement is involved and truss type elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Single Wythe Joint Reinforcement: ASTM A951/A951M.
   1. Type: Ladder.
   2. Material: ASTM A1064/A1064M steel wire, mill galvanized to ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3.
   3. Size: 0.1483 inch (3.8 mm) side rods with 0.1483 inch (3.8 mm) cross rods; width as required to provide not less than 5/8 inch (16 mm) of mortar coverage on each exposure.

D. Strap Anchors: Bent steel shapes configured as required for specific situations, 1-1/4 in (32 mm) width, 0.105 in (2.7 mm) thick, lengths as required to provide not more than 1 inch (25 mm) and not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) of mortar coverage from masonry face, corrugated for embedment in masonry joint, mill galvanized.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive masonry.

B. Verify that related items provided under other sections are properly sized and located.

C. Verify that built-in items are in proper location, and ready for roughing into masonry work.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Direct and coordinate placement of metal anchors supplied for installation under other sections.

B. Provide temporary bracing during installation of masonry work. Maintain in place until building structure provides permanent bracing.

3.3 COURSING

A. Establish lines, levels, and coursing indicated. Protect from displacement.

B. Maintain masonry courses to uniform dimension. Form vertical and horizontal joints of uniform thickness.

C. Concrete Masonry Units:
   1. Bond: Running or as required to match existing adjacent masonry.
   2. Coursing: One unit and one mortar joint to equal 8 inches (200 mm) or as required to match existing.
   3. Mortar Joints: Concave.

3.4 PLACING AND BONDING

A. Lay hollow masonry units with face shell bedding on head and bed joints.

B. Remove excess mortar as work progresses.

C. Interlock intersections and external corners.

D. Do not shift or tap masonry units after mortar has achieved initial set. Where adjustment must be made, remove mortar and replace.

E. Perform job site cutting of masonry units with proper tools to provide straight, clean, unchipped edges. Prevent broken masonry unit corners or edges.

3.5 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE

A. Install horizontal joint reinforcement 16 inches (400 mm) on center.

B. Lap joint reinforcement ends minimum 6 inches (150 mm).

C. Fasten anchors to structural framing and embed in masonry joints as masonry is laid. Space anchors at maximum of 24 inches (600 mm) horizontally and 16 inches (400 mm) vertically.

D. Install anchors to structural framing at not more than 16 inches (400 mm) on center.

3.6 LINTELS

A. Install loose steel lintels over openings.

B. Maintain minimum 6 inch (____ mm) bearing on each side of opening.

3.7 TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation From Unit to Adjacent Unit: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).

B. Maximum Variation from Plane of Wall: 1/4 inch in 10 ft (6 mm/3 m) and 1/2 inch in 20 ft (13 mm/6 m) or more.

C. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 1/4 inch (6 mm) per story non-cumulative; 1/2 inch (13 mm) in two stories or more.

D. Maximum Variation from Level Coursing: 1/8 inch in 3 ft (3 mm/m) and 1/4 inch in 10 ft (6 mm/3 m); 1/2 inch in 30 ft (13 mm/9 m).

3.8 CUTTING AND FITTING

A. Cut and fit for chases, pipes, conduit, and sleeves. Coordinate with other sections of work to provide correct size, shape, and location.

B. Obtain approval prior to cutting or fitting masonry work not indicated or where appearance or strength of masonry work may be impaired.

3.9 CLEANING

A. Remove excess mortar and mortar smears as work progresses.

B. Replace defective mortar. Match adjacent work.

C. Clean soiled surfaces with cleaning solution.

D. Use non-metallic tools in cleaning operations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. Furnish and erect all structural steel columns, beams, angles and base plates as shown on Drawings.

B. Not used

C. Provide shop painting and galvanizing as specified.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Fluid Applied Roofing.....Section 075600

1.03 REFERENCES

References and industry standards listed in this Section are applicable to the Work. Unless more restrictive criteria or differing requirements are explicitly stated in the Specifications, or mandated by governing codes or regulations, the recommendations, suggestions, and requirements described in the referenced standards shall be deemed mandatory and applicable to the Work.

A. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM) standards, latest editions.

B. "Specification for Structural Steel for Buildings" latest edition, including supplements. (AISC 360).

C. American Welding Society (AWS) standards for procedures and materials.

D. "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" (AISC 303)

E. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC) standards.

1.04 DEFINITIONS

A. Structural Steel

Structural Steel consists of the steel elements of the structural steel frame essential to support the design loads. These elements consist of material as shown on the structural steel plan and listed in Article 2.1 of the AISC "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges." Structural steel also includes structural lintels framing over masonry openings bearing on masonry.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data

Submit manufacturers' specifications for the following products:

1. Primer paint, galvanizing repair paint
2. Grout
3. Expansion/adhesive anchors
4. Zinc Metallizing

B. Shop Drawings

1. Failure to submit legible shop drawings will be cause for return without review.
2. Provide a set of shop drawings showing all connections, bolting, welding, and size of material. Shop drawing shall show intended method of reinforcing existing members and making connections to existing steel as developed by the detailer based on conditions and actual dimensions. Shop Drawings for MEP equipment dunnage and access platforms shall not be submitted until after approval of the submitted MEP units. Ensure shop drawings submitted for MEP equipment dunnage and access platforms are coordinated and based on unit approved, which may vary substantially from the Basis of Design. The Contractor shall take into account in their schedule the potential time impact in the sequencing of the steel drawings.
3. Do not order steel in advance of approval of shop drawings, except at own risk.
4. Shop drawings shall be prepared under supervision of and bear the seal of a Professional Engineer licensed in the State of New York. Connections not designed on the Drawings shall be done by the detailer’s licensed Engineer. Do not submit unchecked shop drawings. After final approval of all shop drawings, submit a final set sealed and signed by the Professional Engineer.
5. Shop drawings will be checked for size of material and strength of connection by the Engineer of Record, which shall not render the Engineer of Record responsible for any errors in construction dimensions, etc. that have been made in preparation of shop drawings. The Contractor shall assume full responsibility for the correctness of dimensions and fit.
6. Calculations including connection calculations shall be submitted.
7. After shop drawings are 100% complete and approved and all field changes have been made, submit a set of as-built drawings to the Owner.

C. Quality Control Submittals

1. Certificates and Affidavits

a. Furnish notarized Building Department affidavit from steel manufacturer (Form SS24) certifying materials conform to Specification requirements and material was erected as designed.

b. Furnish bolt manufacturer's test reports, covering physical and chemical tests, for each lot of high strength bolts submitted.

c. Furnish steel manufacturer's certificate certifying welders employed on the Work have met AWS qualifications within the previous twelve months, and for work performed in the field are NYC licensed welders as per §28-407.1 of the Administrative Code.

d. Furnish complete listing of ASTM's of materials listed in Part 2 of this Section and certification that materials supplied meet those listed.

e. For mechanical and adhesive anchors installed in concrete, submit ICC certification for use in cracked concrete.

2. Contractor Qualifications

Provide proof of Fabricator, Erector, and Zinc Metallizer qualifications specified under “Quality Assurance”.

a. Provide proof of Zinc Metallizer’s qualifications specified under “Quality Assurance”; certification of qualifications meeting Military Standard by one of the following:

1) A branch of the U.S. Dept. of Defense (DoD), or

2) A company certified by U.S. Dept. of Defense; submit DoD certification for this company.

3) The Society for Protective Coatings (SSPC).

D. Test Reports

Submit test reports for zinc metallizing and epoxy coating system as specified herein, paragraph titled “Galvanizing by the Zinc Metallizing Process”.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications

1. Fabricator: Company specializing in the fabrication of steel products to be used in this Contract shall have a minimum of five years experience. A qualified fabricator who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC – Certified Plant, Category Sbd.

2. Erector: Company specializing in performing the Work of this Section shall have a minimum of three years experience and have done at least three projects with similar quantity of material.

3. Zinc metallizer: The company or individual responsible for application of zinc metallizing shall be certified as qualified to perform this process by one of the following:

   a. Certification in accordance with Mil Std 2138 or Mil Std 1687 by a branch of the U.S. Dept. of Defense, or by a company that is certified by the Dept. of Defense in accordance with either one of these military standards.

   b. Thermal Spray Certification by The Society for Protective Coatings (SSPC).

   The firm providing the zinc metallizing shall also perform the painting of the members at the shop also to provide a single source responsibility.

B. Regulatory Requirements

1. Building Code: Work of this Section shall conform to all requirements of the NYS Building Code and all applicable regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction, including safety, health, noise, and anti-pollution regulations. Where more severe requirements than those contained in the Building Code are given in this Section, the requirements of this Section shall govern.

2. NA

3. Industry Standards: Standards specified in Article 1.03 apply to Work of this Section. Where more severe requirements then those contained in the Standards are given in this Section or the Building Code, requirements of this Section or the Building Code shall govern.

4. Recommendations or suggestions in the codes and references listed in this Article and under “References” shall be deemed to be mandatory unless they are in violation of the Building Code.

C. Certifications

1. Structural steel shall conform to the material acceptance, certification, and inspection requirements of NYS Building Code.

2. Qualify welding processes and welding operators in accordance with AWS "Standard Qualification Procedure".

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials to the site at such intervals as to insure uninterrupted progress of Work.

B. Deliver anchor bolts and other anchorage devices, which are to be embedded in cast-in-place concrete or masonry, in ample time so as not to delay Work.

C. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Store material of the ground and protect from the weather and contamination.

1.07 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

A. Take field measurements as required by Drawings. Where possible, take field measurements of existing conditions prior to fabrication. Verify that field measurements are the same as those shown on Drawings and shop drawings. Report all deviations to the Owner in writing.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Not Used

B. Paint

1. Tnemec Co.

2. Carboline

3. Sherwin Williams

4. ZRC

C. Expansion/Screw/Adhesive Anchors, Fasteners

1. Hilti, Inc.

2. ITW Ramset/Redhead, Inc.

3. Simpson Strong-Tie Anchor System, Columbus, OH

4. Powers Fasteners

D. Zinc Metallizing

1. Atlantic Coast Metallizing & Coatings Corp., Melville, NY

2. East Coast Metallizing & Coating Systems Inc., Westbury, NY

3. Island Wide Sandblasting Inc., Wyandanch, NY

4. Reneuxit LLC, West Chester, PA

2.02 MATERIAL

A. Structural Steel Shapes, Shims, Plates, and Bars

Structural steel shall conform to the provisions of ASTM A992, Grade 50; pipe steel to the provisions of ASTM A53, Type E or S, Grade B; and tube steel to the provisions of ASTM A500, Grade B, structural steel tubing; channels and angles to the provisions of ASTM A36; plate and bar to the provisions of ASTM A36 unless otherwise noted.

B. Not Used

C. Bolts

1. Anchor Bolts: Shall conform to the provisions of ASTM F1554, Grade 36, unless different grade is specified elsewhere. Size and detailing indicated on Drawings.

2. Unfinished Bolts: Shall conform to the provision of ASTM A307.

3. High-Strength Bolts: Shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A325 or F1852.

4. Expansion/Screw/Adhesive Anchors, Fasteners Provide types as indicated on Drawings. The anchor specified shall be considered the basis of design. As a minimum, all anchors exposed to weather or embedded in masonry are to be Type 316 stainless steel. Anchors installed in concrete shall be ICC certified for cracked concrete as per BC 1913 of the 2014 NYC Building Code

a. Wedge Expansion and Undercut Anchors/ expansion bolts shall have an ICC-ES Evaluation Service Report (ESR) issued in accordance with ACI 355.2 for use in cracked concrete, and including seismic applicability loading.

b. Adhesive anchors shall have an ICC-ES Evaluation Service report (ESR) issued in accordance with ICC-ES AC308 and for use in cracked concrete,

and seismic loading and pursuant to the Office of Technical Certification and Research (OTCR) Building Bulletin 2009-019.

c. Concrete Screw Anchors shall have an ICC-ES Evaluation Service report (ESR) issued in accordance with ICC-ES AC193 and for use in cracked concrete, and seismic loading and pursuant to the Office of Technical Certification and Research (OTCR) Building Bulletin 2009-021.

D. Hardware

1. Nuts for anchor bolts and unfinished bolts shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A563 heavy hex carbon steel nuts.

2. Nuts for high-strength bolts shall conform to the provisions of ASTM 194 or ASTM A563.

3. Washers shall conform to the provisions of ASTM F436 hardened carbon steel washers.

E. Filler Metal for Welding

1. Welding electrode shall conform to E70XX classification of AWS A5.1 for welding of new steel to new steel.

2. Welding electrode shall be compatible with existing steel where connections are made to steel of existing building. Electrode shall be E7018 unless determined otherwise. E7018 are low hydrogen electrodes that must be kept extremely dry.

F. Structural Steel Primer Paint

Provide type of primer indicated on steel under the following application conditions.

1. Interior application: Modified alkyd rust-inhibitive type containing no lead equal to Tnemec Co. No. 10-99 or Carboline Carbocoat 115-SG. Red oxide paint is not acceptable.

2. Primer for galvanized steel to be painted: Epoxy paint equal to Tnemec Co. Series FC27 Typoxy or Carboline Carboguard 888.

3. Steel embedded in exterior masonry wall and exterior application: High adhesion high-solids epoxy coating equal to Tnemec Co. Series 135 Chembuild or Carboline Carboguard 890. This paint shall also be used on the existing steel exposed by masonry removals and wherever else existing steel is to be painted.

G. Galvanizing by the Hot-dip Method

1. Galvanize structural shapes in accordance with ASTM A123.

2. Galvanize hardware in accordance with ASTM A153.

3. Galvanizing repair paint for regalvanizing welds and damaged areas shall conform to ASTM A780 and comply with Military Specification MIL-P-21035, such as ZRC Cold Galvanizing Compound.

H. Galvanizing by the Zinc Metallizing Process

1. Zinc/aluminum metallizing (referred to herein as zinc metallizing) is the process of thermally applying an 85/15 zinc-aluminum wire over the surface of steel. Zinc metallizing and finish coating system shall have the following performance characteristics and results of tests performed on representative samples (hot dip galvanizing is not acceptable):

   a. Adhesion: Test zinc metallizing with complete finish coating (epoxy coating system or powder coating system) in accordance with ASTM D4541, Test Method E. Pull-off strength throughout the system shall be not less than 750 psi before and after environmental cycling.

      Environmental cycling shall be 10 cycles of the following: 4 hrs at 100% humidity per ASTM D1735; 16 hours below 0°F; and 4 hours at 140°F.

   b. Corrosion resistance of zinc metallizing with epoxy coat system or powder coating: A rating of 10 after 1000 hours salt fog (prohesion method) when tested in accordance with ASTM D1654, Procedure A. Scribe shall be cut through all coatings to bare steel substrate. Expose specimens in accordance with ASTM G85.

2. Galvanizing repair paint for regalvanizing welds and damaged areas shall conform to ASTM A780 and comply with Military Specification MIL-P-21035, such as ZRC Cold Galvanizing Compound.

- I. Grout

1. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.03 SHOP ASSEMBLY - FABRICATION

A. General

1. Do not fabricate until shop drawings have been reviewed.

2. Fabricate and assemble steel in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate items and assemblies in accordance with AISC Specifications and the shop drawings. Properly mark members for field assembly.

B. Shop Connections

1. Weld or high-strength bolt shop connections as indicated on Drawings.

2. High-strength bolt connections are friction (slip-critical) connections. Install high-strength bolts in accordance with "Specification for Structural Joints using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts" (RCRBSJ). Utilize Class A connections. If steel surface of connection area is prepared to SSPC-SP5 surface preparation, Class B may be utilized pending inspection by the Owner's Special Inspection lab that surface meets the required preparation. Pay all costs to the Owner incurred for this inspection.

3. Welding: Comply with "Structural Welding Code" for procedures, appearance, and quality of welds and methods used in correcting welded work.

4. Holes for other Work

   a. Provide holes and openings required for securing other Work to steel framing and for passage of other Work through framing members. Coordinate with Drawings of other Work.

   b. Cut, drill, flame cut, or punch holes perpendicular to metal surfaces. Method of cutting must not produce a roughness of over 1000 microinches. Surfaces exceeding these limits must be repaired by machine grinding. Reinforce all openings with steel shapes as shown on shop drawings.

C. Not Used

2.04 SHOP PAINTING

A. General

Apply one shop coat of primer paint on structural steel except as follows:

1. Steelwork or portions of such to receive sprayed fireproofing. Steel that is exposed to the cavity and within the block back-up is to be painted, unless indicated to be galvanized.

2. Top flanges of structural steel members requiring stud shear connectors or supporting metal deck.

3. Contact surfaces of structural steel that are to be bolted or welded together and surfaces within 2" of field welds.

4. Steel members, hardware, and miscellaneous pieces to be galvanized and not specified or indicated to be painted.

B. Cleaning and Surface Preparation

1. Clean all steel first in accordance with SSPC-SP1.

2. Clean steel work not to be painted (except steel work to be galvanized) in accordance with SSPC-SP2.

3. Clean new steel work to be painted within the same day as it will be applied and in accordance with SSPC-SP3 for interior steel and SSPC-SP6 for exterior steel.

C. Shop Coat

1. Apply structural steel primer paint for interior application at a rate to provide dry film thickness of 2.0 to 3.5 mils. Apply primer paint for embedded in exterior masonry wall and exterior application at a rate to provide dry film thickness of 7.0 to 9.0 mils. Provide full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces. Apply to dry surfaces only, when surface temperatures are above dew-point, by brush, spray, or roller, thoroughly and evenly, in strict accord with manufacturer's instructions for every detail of handling.

2. Apply second coat of the approved primer, in a darker shade, to surfaces inaccessible to painting after assembly or erection.

3. Protect machined surfaces with an approved rust-inhibiting coating that is readily removable prior to erection.

2.05 GALVANIZING

A. General

Galvanize all steel exposed to the weather and other members designated on Drawings to receive it. Galvanize all lintels, attachment clips, and hardware.

B. Cleaning and Surface Preparation

1. Hardware (bolts, nuts, etc.): Clean and leave free of mill scale before galvanizing.

2. Clean all steel first in accordance with SSPC-SP1 if needed.

3. Steel members: Clean in accordance with SSPC-SP8 before hot-dip galvanizing.

4. Steel members: Clean in accordance with SSPC-SP10 before zinc metallizing. Surface shall have a 3-4 mil anchor pattern. Moisture cannot be present on steel and temperature cannot be less than 5^{o}F above the dew point. Thermal spray must be applied within 4 hours of blasting.

C. Shop Coat - Hot-dip Galvanizing – Provide for items not to have finish paint coat.

1. Galvanize hardware in accordance with ASTM A153.

2. Galvanize steel shapes in accordance with ASTM A123. Apply zinc coating as per Thickness Grade specified in ASTM A123.

D. Shop Coat – Zinc Metallizing – Provide for galvanized items to have finish paint - All items exposed to public view, including lintels, and other items shown on Drawings or specified herein

1. Thermally spray material at a rate of 4-5 mils DFT. Sprayed coating shall be free of lumps, blisters, and loosely adhering particles.

2. After material has cured, apply shop coats of paint. Refer to Section 099100 for second two coats of the epoxy paint system.

2.06 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing

1. General

a. Structural steel work is subject to all tests required by the Special Inspection requirements of the NYS Building Code.

b. Cooperate with the Testing Laboratory in making all required tests.

2. Tests: To be performed by the Owner's Testing Laboratory.

a. Shop bolted connections: Tested in accordance with AISC specifications.

b. Shop welding - The laboratory will perform the following functions:

1) Certify welders.

2) Visually inspect all welds, record type and locations of defects, and perform tests if necessary. Check all corrected work.

3) Perform non-destructive tests if necessary or as required by the Special Inspector.

B. Inspection

1. Testing Laboratory

a. The Owner will engage a Testing Laboratory or Special Inspection Agency to assist in the inspection of steel fabrication and conduct tests at the mill, shop, or foundry. The laboratory will assist in checking erection tolerances and provide shop and field testing required for all structural steel and metal deck work, including metal deck and studs.

b. The Testing Laboratory will be responsible to and under the supervision of a Special Inspector.

2. Special Inspector

The Owner will assign, under the requirements of the NYS Building Code, a Special Inspector to supervise the Work listed above under "Testing Laboratory".

3. Notification: Notify the Owner before beginning fabrication of the structural steel and supply laboratory with copies of agreements, approved drawings, approved prints of all shop details, etc., and all necessary information relating thereto. Do not ship material to job site until after inspection and approval by the Testing Laboratory.

4. Discretionary Inspections: No mill, shop, foundry, or field inspection, such as is above provided for, shall be held to prohibit or preclude inspection of such materials during delivery and erection at the building by such other persons as the Owner shall direct.

5. Reports: Shop and field reports, including shipments, will be submitted by the Testing Laboratory to the Owner as the work proceeds at the shop or job site. A final report will be submitted by the Testing Laboratory when work is completed at the shop, and again when work is completed in the field. The Special Inspector reserves right to reject material not in compliance with specified requirements at any time.

6. Corrections: Correct deficiencies in work which inspections and tests have indicated to not be in compliance with requirements. Pay for additional tests, at own expense, necessary to reconfirm any non-compliance of original work and as necessary to show compliance of corrected work.

7. Contractor's Responsibility: Inspection and acceptance or failure to inspect shall in no way relieve the Contractor or the mill and shops from their responsibility to

furnish satisfactory material strictly in accordance with Drawings and Specifications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and that erection may proceed. Notify the Owner in writing of conditions that adversely affect the Work. Do not proceed with erection until conditions have been corrected. Beginning of installation means the erector accepts existing conditions.

3.02 ERECTION

A. General

1. Erection shall conform to NYS Building Code and Section 1.25 of AISC 360.

2. All work shall be erected plumb, square, and true to lines and levels in strict accordance with the structural requirements of the building.

3. Provide all machinery, apparatus, and staging required for the erection of steel work in a thoroughly safe and efficient manner. Install, maintain and remove, without injury to other Work, such temporary bracing, scaffolding, etc. as may be necessary or required. Care shall be taken that no part of the structure is overloaded during construction.

4. Arrange for deliveries of material to facilitate the rapid and continuous progress of operation, but the site or streets adjacent to same shall not be used for the storage of material unless absolutely necessary and then only with special permission of the Owner and other authorities having jurisdiction.

5. Employ a Licensed Professional Engineer and Land Surveyor to ensure accurate erection of the steel.

6. Do not alter or cut structural members without written approval of the Engineer of Record. Flame cutting in field of members to correct fabrication errors is to be avoided and to be done only upon approval of the Engineer of Record based on the method proposed. Roughness cannot exceed 1000 microinches. Repair of surfaces shall be by mechanical grinding.

B. Temporary Shoring and Bracing

Provide temporary shoring and bracing members with connections of sufficient strength to bear erection loads and guy wires to maintain structure plumb and in true alignment until completion of erection. Remove temporary work when permanent members and bracing are in place and final connections are made. Fill erection bolt-holes on exposed to view members with plug welds and grind smooth.

C. Anchor Bolts

1. Furnish to the concrete masons anchor bolts and other connectors required for securing structural steel to cast-in-place concrete work, together with instructions, templates, etc. necessary for setting them. Anchor bolts are to be surveyed and any approved modifications made prior to placement of columns.

2. For expansion/adhesive anchors used as anchor bolts, drill holes of depth and size required by the manufacturer for the required loading. Have bolt manufacturer perform pullout test to verify capacity prior to final approval.

3. Tighten anchor bolts after support members have been positioned and plumbed. Cut off protruding edges of wedges or shims flush with edge of base or bearing plate prior to packing with grout. Tighten expansion bolts/anchors to torque required by manufacturer.

D. Base Plates

1. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of loose and bond-reducing materials.

2. Set loose and attached base plates and bearing plates for structural members on shims and other adjusting devices. Plates are to have grout holes, such as leveling plates, within specified tolerances. Elevations of shims and leveling plates shall be surveyed and adjusted to correct elevation prior to placement of column or beam. Plates are to have grout holes.

3. Grouting is to be done prior to placement of any concrete on the structure.

E. Field Assembly

1. Erect structural frames accurately to lines and elevations indicated. Align and adjust members forming a part of a complete frame or structure before permanently fastening.

2. Clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact before assembly.

3. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.

4. Level and plumb individual members of structure within specified AISC tolerances.

5. Establish required leveling and plumbing measurements on mean operating temperature of structure. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature at which structure will be when completed and in service.

6. Splice members only where indicated and accepted on shop drawings.

F. Connections

1. Field connections between new steel members will typically be bolted unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Connections made to existing steel shall be welded utilizing E7018 electrode. Follow preheat and interpass temperature requirements given in AWS.

   a. Provide high-strength bolts for bolted connections except where unfinished bolts are indicated on the Drawings. High-strength bolt connections are friction (slip-critical) connections. Install high-strength bolts in accordance with "Specification for Structural Joints using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts."

   b. Provide unfinished bolts where indicated on Drawings. Lock nuts by upsetting bolt end or by similar method when unfinished bolts are not encased in concrete. Tighten all bolts and nuts fully.

   c. For ASTM A307 bolts, hardened washer shall be installed under the turned element. For ASTM A325, F1852, A490 and F2280 bolts, hardened washer shall be installed under the head and nut. This washer is not required under the head for oversized or short-slotted holes for bolts conforming to F1852 bolts (from 1/2" to 1½” in diameter) and for bolts conforming to F2280 bolts when the bolt diameter is < 1”.

   d. Where connections are to be made to the vertical face of existing concrete, drill holes to the proper diameter and depth required for installation of expansion/ adhesive anchors and install the anchors as per manufacturer's instructions. Tighten to the torque values specified by the manufacturer. Attach plates flush with concrete surfaces after the surfaces have been cleaned. Have bolt manufacturer perform pullout test to verify capacity and quality of substrate prior to final approval.

2. Holes

   a. The size of bolt holes shall be in accordance with AISC "Specification for the Design, Fabrication and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings."

   b. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts. Burning or use of drift pins is not permitted.

G. Lintels

Erect all exterior steel lintels and relieving angles, connecting steel to members using new clip angles, or other structural member required to match the existing conditions.

H. Field Touch-Up

1. Painted Members: After erection, clean all damaged areas in shop coat, exposed surfaces of bolts, bolt heads, nuts and washers, abrasions, and all field welds and unpainted areas adjacent to field welds to the same standards as the shop coat and paint with same paint to same thickness as the shop coat. These areas shall be thoroughly cleaned of rust and other bond inhibiting materials before applying the touch-up paint. Paint all existing steel using the high-solids epoxy specified in Part 2. Provide epoxy coat system for all exterior painting.

2. Galvanized Members: After erection, clean and paint all damaged areas to the galvanizing, welds, and areas adjacent to welds with the galvanizing repair paint. For galvanized members to be painted, finish painting shall be the final two coats of the epoxy paint system.

3.03 TOLERANCES

A. Erection tolerances shall be in accordance with "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges".

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Cooperate with the Special Inspector and the Testing Laboratory performing Special Inspection testing.

B. The Special Inspector will review erection of structural framework and test field bolting and welding as listed in Part 2 of this Section.

C. The Contractor shall engage an engineer licensed in the State of New York to check tolerances and inspect the erection.

D. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents

3.05 CLEANING

A. Structural steel or portions of such to receive sprayed fireproofing shall be clean of dust, grease, oils, loose material, and any other matter which would impair the adhesion of the fireproofing material to the steel.

END OF SECTION 051200

LIST OF SUBMITTALS

SUBMITTAL	DATE SUBMITTED	DATE APPROVED
Product Data:	_____	_____
1. Primer paint, repair paint 2. Expansion/adhesive anchors 3. Zinc metallizing		
Shop Drawings:	_____	_____
1. Steel shop drawings 2. Calculations		
Certificates:	_____	_____
1. Steel affidavit 2. Bolt test reports 3. Welders qualifications & license 4. Material listing 5. ICC Certification for Mechanical/Adhesive Anchors		
Qualifications	_____	_____
1. Fabricator 2. Erector 3. Zinc Metallizer		
Test Reports:	_____	_____
Zinc metallizing and epoxy coating		

* * *

ROOF RELATED ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

A. All plant, labor, materials, equipment, testing and services necessary to complete the work shown on the schedules, keynotes, drawings, as specified herein, and as may be required by conditions and including, but not limited to, the following:
   1. Related wood nailers, blocking, shims, and plywood.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 04 0100 - Maintenance of Masonry.

B. Section 075010 - Modifications to Existing Roofing.

1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. APA PRP-108 - Performance Standards and Qualification Policy for Structural-Use Panels (Form E445); 2001.

B. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2015a.

C. AWPA U1 - Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood; 2012.

D. ICC (IBC) - International Building Code; 2015.

E. PS 1 - Structural Plywood; 2009.

F. WCLIB (GR) - Standard Grading Rules for West Coast Lumber No. 17; 2004, and supplements.

G. WWPA G-5 - Western Lumber Grading Rules; 2011.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:
   1. A firm (Installer) with at least 5 continuous years experience performing carpentry work comparable to that required for this project, employing personnel skilled in the work specified.
   2. The Installer shall directly employ the personnel performing the work of this section.
   3. The Installer shall have a full time supervisor on the roof when work is in progress. The Supervisor shall have a minimum of 5 years experience in work similar in nature and scope to this project, and speak fluent English.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit the following items far enough in advance to obtain approval prior to performing any work on site:
   1. Mill or Manufacturer data sheets to identify the source for each type of lumber and fastener.
   2. Do not submit trade association literature.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver and store materials dry at all times.
   1. Cover with tarps and protect against exposure to weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces.

B. Support stacked products to prevent deformation and to allow air circulation.

C. Do not overload the structure when storing material on the roof. Material stored on the roof shall be placed on 2 by 10 wooden planks, placed over 1-1/2 inch foam insulation, that is laid on a layer of 6 mil fire retardant polyethylene.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.

B. Refer to Section 075010 - Modifications to Existing Roofing for Warranty requirements.

1.9

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Wood, including shims, nailers, blocking, furring and similar members, in the sizes indicated, worked into the shapes shown, and as follows:
   1. Lumber: Douglas Fir dimension lumber, free of large knots and other imperfections.
   2. Plywood: Exterior grade APA rated Type CDX underlayment plywood.
   3. Beveled Siding: Utility grade cedar, redwood, or synthetic siding, 1/2 inch by 6 inches and 3/4 inch by 10 inches wide, tapered to 1/8 inch thick.
   4. Fascia Boards: 5/4 inch clear white pine where painted. Douglas Fir dimension lumber where covered with metal or other materials

B. Lumber: Comply with PS 20 and approved grading rules and inspection agencies.
   1. Acceptable Lumber Inspection Agencies: Any agency with rules approved by American Lumber Standards Committee.
   2. Material Quality: Obtain each type of material from a single source to ensure consistent quality, color, pattern, and texture.
   3. Pre-Work Conference: Attend the pre-roofing meeting to discuss how carpentry work will be performed and coordinated with other work.

C. Lumber fabricated from old growth timber is not permitted.

D. Metal including light gage metal channels and studs shall be factory formed of minimum 24 gauge cold, unless otherwise noted, formed galvanized steel.

2.2 FASTENERS

A. Hot dipped galvanized steel, stainless steel, or steel covered with a proprietary rust inhibiting coating.

B. Use screws wherever possible, minimum size diameter #12. If nails are used they shall be annular ring shank type. Do not use dry wall screws to secure wood blocking assemblies.

C. Hot dipped galvanized steel, stainless steel, or steel covered with a proprietary rust inhibiting coating.

D. Metal and Finish: Hot-dipped galvanized steel per ASTM A153/A153M for high humidity and preservative-treated wood locations galvanized elsewhere.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Batt Insulation: un-faced fiberglass insulation, minimum thickness 6 inches, R=30, as needed to fill the metal stud framing.

B. Polyethylene: 6 mil thick fire retardant polyethylene sheeting.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

A. Coordinate carpentry work with the installation of the roofing system, insulation, flashings, and other similar items.

B. Shim and set carpentry work plumb and true, except provide slope at the top surfaces of horizontal members as indicated.

C. Stagger joints in built up assemblies at least 2 feet to obtain maximum strength. Provide the appropriate shapes needed and adjust wood members to suit existing conditions for full bearing and secure attachment. Discard defective material, and pieces which are too small, and fabricate the work with a minimum of joints and an optimum joint arrangement.

D. Securely attach carpentry work to resist a pull of 275 pounds per lineal foot in any direction. Countersink all fasteners flush unless otherwise shown.

E. Blocking used for the attachment of roof assembly and flashing shall be dry prior to roof or flashing is installed.

F. Space fasteners to achieve adequate holding power, generally as follows:
   1. Anchor bolts embedded in concrete, drilled anchors into concrete or masonry, screws into a steel deck or structural steel member, or screws into wood framing: 12 inches on center.
   2. Nails into wood: 8 inches on center.
   3. Install two rows of fasteners on blocking wider than 5 inches.

G. Fit carpentry work neatly scribed and cut to fit within 1/8 inch of adjoining materials. Position furring, nailers, blocking, shims and similar supports for the proper attachment of subsequent work.

H. Fasten wood blocking assemblies to metal decks with #12 screws. Pre-drill holes as needed. .

3.2 CLEANING, PROTECTION AND WATERTIGHTNESS

A. Contractor shall inspect the interior and exterior of the building and grounds, and submit a written report with photos to document any leaks or damage, prior to performing any work.

B. Provide any equipment, material and labor necessary to protect the site, the building, its contents and occupants, pedestrians, and surrounding landscaped and paved areas from damage due to the construction work or from inclement weather during construction.

C. Do not perform work during inclement weather. Protect incomplete work and the building from damage by inclement weather which may occur unexpectedly. Make all work areas watertight at the end of each day's work.

D. Frequently clean up all refuse, rubbish, scrap materials and debris so the work site presents a neat, orderly and workmanlike appearance.

E. Carefully clean the roof to remove all residual debris when work is complete. After cleaning the roof, thoroughly clean all drain sumps, drain lines, leader heads and leaders. Do not allow debris to enter the drainage system.

3.3 WASTE DISPOSAL

A. Comply with the requirements of Section 01 7419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal.

B. Comply with applicable regulations.

C. Do not burn scrap on project site.

END OF SECTION

MODIFICATIONS TO EXISTING ROOFING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Portions of the existing roof is under warranty. Coordinate with Owner's representative for further information.
   1. Contractor must notify and be authorized by the manufacturer to perform all work as per the manufacturer's instruction.
   2. Refer to paragraph 1.12

B. Modification to existing EPDM membrane roofing system.

C. Modification to existing bituminous membrane roofing.

D. Remove all existing membrane, insulation, flashings, curbs, cover boards, and vapor barrier as required to provide and install new openings, mechanical equipment, connection to existing roofing, curbs, and dunnage as shown on drawings.

E. Cut new openings and install curbs.

F. Disposal of removal and construction waste is the responsibility of General Contractor. Perform disposal in manner complying with all applicable federal, state, and local regulations.

G. Install new isocyanurate insulation, cover board, and flashings on all roof areas indicated or required.

H. Clean all residual material from substrate surfaces and the flutes of any exposed steel deck - prior to installing new insulation and roofing. Install new insulation, roofing and flashings only on dry smooth surfaces.

I. Roof top mechanical equipment work is specified else-where. Coordinate with the mechanical contractors to set new curbs and equipment, and make modifications to the existing curbs and equipment; then install new roof flashings as indicated.

J. Maintain building watertight at all times.

K. Install new support steel and decking; insulation to finish flush with existing the deck substrate, new insulation and roofing to make the building permanently watertight.

L. Comply with the published recommendations and instructions of the roofing membrane manufacturer.

M. Commencement of work by Contractor shall constitute acknowledgement by Contractor that this specification can be satisfactorily executed, under the project conditions and with all necessary prerequisites for warranty acceptance by roofing membrane manufacturer. No modification of the Contract Sum will be made for failure to adequately examine the Contract Documents or the project conditions.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 06 1010 - Roof Related Rough Carpentry Wood nailers associated with roofing and roof insulation.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Roofing Terminology: Refer to ASTM D1079 for definition of terms related to roofing work not otherwise defined in the section.

1.5 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2015.

B. ASTM C1177/C1177M - Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing; 2013.

C. ASTM C1289 - Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board; 2016.

D. ASTM D3909/D3909M - Standard Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Glass Felt) Surfaced with Mineral Granules; 2014.

E. ASTM D2626/D2626M - Standard Specification for Asphalt-Saturated and Coated Organic Felt Base Sheet Used in Roofing; 2004 (Reapproved 2012).

F. ASTM D1079 - Standard Terminology Relating to Roofing and Waterproofing; 2013.

G. ASTM D4637/D4637M - Standard Specification for EPDM Sheet Used in Single-Ply Roof Membrane; 2013.

H. ASTM D6380/D6380M - Standard Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Organic Felt); 2003 (Reapproved 2013).

I. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2015a.

J. FM 4470 - Single-Ply, Polymer-Modified Bitumen Sheet, Built-Up Roof (BUR) and Liquid Applied Roof Assemblies for use in Class 1 and Noncombustible Roof Deck Construction; 2012.

K. NRCA (RM) - The NRCA Roofing Manual; 2017.

1.6 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Pre-Installation Conference: Before start of roofing work, General Construction Contractor shall hold a meeting to discuss the proper installation of materials, status of the existing warranty and requirements to maintain the existing warranty and requirements to maintain the existing warranty.
   1. Require attendance with all parties directly influencing the quality of roofing work or affected by the performance of roofing work.
   2. Notify Owner's Representative well in advance of meeting.

1.7 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data:
   1. Provide manufacturer's printed data sufficient to show that all components of roofing systems, including insulation and fasteners, comply with the specified requirements and with the roofing manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for the system type specified; include at least the following:.
      a. Technical data sheet for each roof membrane and fabric type.
      b. Technical data sheets for splice tape and adhesives.
      c. Technical data sheet for each insulation type.
      d. Technical data sheet for each cover board type.
   2. Installation Instructions: Provide manufacturer's instructions to installer, marked up to show exactly how all components will be installed; where instructions allow installation options, clearly indicate which option will be used.
   3. Pre-Work Site and Building Inspection Report with photos to documents conditions before commencing work.
   4. Written certification from the manufacturer which states that the installer is acceptable or licensed to install the specified roofing; if not previously provided.

C. Installer Qualifications: Letter from manufacturer attesting that the roofing installer meets the specified qualifications for all systems under warranty.

1.8 CODE APPROVAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Install roofing and insulation system components to meet the following minimum requirements:

1. New York State Uniform Fire Prevention and Building Code, which includes by reference the New York State Energy Conservation Code.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Portions of Existing Roof is under warranty.
   1. Contractor must notify and be authorized by the manufacturer to perform all work as per the manufacturer's instruction.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum twenty (20) years of documented experience.

C. Installer Qualifications: Roofing installer shall have the following:
   1. A firm (Installer) with not less than 5 continuous years experience performing EPDM and Built-up roofing work similar to that required for this project, employing personnel skilled in the specified work.
      a. The Installer shall directly employ the personnel performing the work of this section.
      b. The Installer shall have a full time supervisor/foreman on the roof when roofing work is in progress. The Supervisor shall have a minimum of 5 years experience in roofing work similar in nature and scope to this project, and speak fluent English.
      c. The Installer shall be acceptable to or licensed by the Manufacturer of the primary roofing materials, and provide written certification from the Manufacturer to confirm this prior to award if requested.

D. Material Quality: Obtain each product, including the insulation, cover board, PVC roofing and flashing, and cements, primers and adhesives produced by a single Manufacturer, which has manufactured the same products in the United States of America for not less than 5 continuous years.

E. Pre-Work Conference: Meet at the project site approximately one week prior to starting roof work, with the Owner's Representative and Architect and other representatives concerned about the work, to discuss the following:
   1. How the building will be kept watertight as old roofing is removed and the work progresses.
   2. How new roofing work will be coordinated with mechanical equipment work, replacement of deteriorated existing insulation and the installation of new insulation, cover board, flashings and other items to provide a watertight installation.
   3. Generally accepted industry practice, the Manufacturer's instructions for handling and installing his products, and project specific work requirements.
   4. The condition of the substrate (deck), curbs, penetrations and preparatory work needed by trades other than the roofer.
   5. Submittals, if any remain incomplete.
   6. The construction schedule, weather forecast for the work period, availability of materials, personnel, equipment and facilities needed to proceed and complete the work in an expeditious manner and on schedule.
   7. A schedule for Manufacturer and Owner's Representative inspections.

1.10 JOB CONDITIONS (CAUTIONS & WARNINGS)

A. Splice cleaner, primer, cements and bonding adhesives are flammable. Do not breathe vapors or use near fire or flame or in a confined or unventilated area. Dispense only from a UL listed or approved safety can.

B. Remove empty adhesive and solvent containers and contaminated rags from the roof and legally dispose of them daily.

C. Do not apply adhesives adjacent to open ventilation system louvers, or windows. Temporarily cover the louvers and windows with 6 mil fire retardant polyethylene and prevent adhesive odors from entering the building. Remove temporary covers at the end of each days work.

1.11 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver material to the site in the Manufacturer's original and unopened packaging, bearing labels which identify the type and names of the products and Manufacturers, with the labels intact and legible.

B. Store all materials in accordance to manufacturer's instructions.

C. Immediately remove any insulation which gets wet from the job site.

D. Do not overload the structure when storing materials on the roof.

E. Store and install all material within the Manufacturer's recommended temperature range.

1.12 WARRANTY

A. See Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

B. Existing Roof System Under Warranty

1. Portions of the existing roofing system is under warranty and the General Construction Contractor or their subcontractor must notify and be authorized by the manufacturer to perform all work as per the manufacturer's instruction.
    a. Guarantee/Warranty coverage shall remain in effect for gust wind speeds up to 72 miles per hour, measured at ground level at the site.
    b. Manufacture's Warranty: Certification from manufacturer that the existing warranty covering membrane, roof insulation, and other indicated components of the system, shall remain the new and existing terms of the original warranty.
2. Comply with all warranty procedures required by manufacturer, including notifications Manufacture's Warranty: Certification from manufacturer that the existing warranty covering membrane, roof insulation, and other indicated components of the system, shall remain the new and existing terms of the original warranty, scheduling, and inspections:
3. Manufacture's Warranty: Certification from manufacturer that the existing warranty covering membrane, roof insulation, and other indicated components of the system, shall remain the new and existing terms of the original warranty Contractors warranty.
4. Manufacturer's and Contractor's Guarantees/Warranties shall be issued no more than 30 days before the satisfactory completion of punch list work.

C. Existing Roofing System Not Under Warranty

1. Provide a Contractor's written Guarantee which warrants that all work performed under this contract will remain free of material and workmanship defects and in a watertight condition for a five year period beginning upon Final Completion:
    a. Defective work includes but is not limited to the following types of failure: leakage, delamination, lifting, loosening, splitting, cracking, and undue expansion.
    b. The Contractor's Guarantee shall provide that the Contractor will make the repairs needed to enable the work to perform as warranted at his own expense:
    c. The Guarantee shall include the removal and replacement of items or materials installed as part of the original work, if removal is needed to affect guaranteed repairs.

D. Manufacturer's and Contractor's Guarantees/Warranties shall be issued no more than 30 days before the satisfactory completion of punch list work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. Acceptable Manufacturer - Roofing System: Match existing manufacturers roofing system.

1. Roofing systems manufactured by others, for non-warrantied roof areas are acceptable provided the roofing system is completely equivalent in materials and warranty conditions and the manufacturer meets the following qualifications:
    a. Specializing in manufacturing the roofing system to be provided.
    b. Minimum ten years of experience manufacturing the roofing system to be provided.

B. Substitutions: See Section 01 2500 - Substitution Procedures

2.2 EPDM ROOFING

A. Unreinforced 60 mils thick, fire retardant, EPDM (Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer) sheet membrane conforming to the following minimum physical properties.

	PROPERTY	TEST METHOD	SPECIFICATION
1.	Color- Gray/Black		
2.	Elongation	ASTM D-412	300% min
3.	Tear Strength	ASTM D-624	150 lb/in min
4.	Ozone Resistance	ASTM D-1149	No cracks, 7 days/100 pphm/100ºF/50% strain
5.	Heat Aging	ASTM D-573	1200 psi min@ 200% elongation/4 wks/240ºF
6.	Brittleness Temperature	ASTM D-746	-49ºF
7.	Water Vapor Permanence	ASTM E-96	2.0 perm max
8.	Thickness	ASTM D-412	60 mils plus/minus 6 mils
9.	Fire Retardant		UL Class A

B. Related Materials:

1. Cleaners, adhesives, sealants, caulking and fasteners furnished by the EPDM system Manufacturer. Use low VOC adhesives and cleaners to comply with regulations in effect at the time of application.
    a. Stripping: 90 mil thick 5 inch and 9 inch wide self adhering flashing, consisting of 45 mils of semi-cured EPDM factory laminated to 45 mils of cured seaming tape.
    b. Bonding Adhesive: High strength contact adhesive.
    c. Splice Adhesive: High strength synthetic polymer based contact cement formulated specifically to splice EPDM sheets.
    d. Lap Sealant: EPDM rubber based gun grade sealant.
    e. Water Block Seal: One component low viscosity butyl rubber sealant.
    f. Pre-Molded Pipe Flashing: Pressure sensitive prefabricated flashings with pre-applied adhesive.
    g. Pourable Sealer: Two component, solvent free polyurethane based sealant.
    h. Reinforced Perimeter Fastening Strips: .030 inch thick reinforced cured EPDM.
    i. Seam Tape Primer: Synthetic rubber polymer based primer designed to clean and prime seam tape spice areas prior to installing the tape.
    j. Seam Splice Tape: Nominal 30 mil thick cured polymer self adhesive tape with release paper carrier, 6 inches wide.
    k. Plates and Bars: Galvanized and corrosion resistant specialty products.
    l. Fasteners: #14 Fluorocarbon polymer coated heavy duty screws.

C. Gypsum Cover Board: 1/4 inch thick fire resistant gypsum board decking with inorganic glass mat facers and a water resistant core, formulated in 48 x 48 inch square edge boards, UL Class A, meeting ASTM C-1177, manufactured under the trade name Dens-Deck Prime

2.3 INSULATION:

A. Isocyanurate – Tapered rigid cellular polyisocyanurate boards with fibrous felt/fiberglass mat facers, sloping 1/8 inch per foot, (match existing) minimum starting thickness 1-1/2 inches, minimum compressive strength 20 psi, meeting ASTM C1289-01, Type II, Class1, Grade 2.

1. Tapered insulation sloping 1/4 inch per foot, minimum starting thickness as shown on the roof plan.
2. Crickets sloping 1/4 inch per foot.

3. At repairs to existing building match thickness of existing insulation.
4. Product: Firestone “ISO 95+ Isocyanurate Insulation” or approved equal.

2.4 BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE ROOFING

A. Match existing.

B. Base Sheet: ASTM D4601/D4601M Type I; asphalt-coated glass fiber; unperforated.

C. Mineral Surface Cap Sheet: Asphalt-saturated organic roll roofing, ASTM D6380/D6380M, Class M, Type II, 2 inch (50 mm) selvage; white colored mineral granules.

D. Roof Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M, Type I, asbestos free.

2.5 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Concrete Pavers: Interlocking, with shiplap edges on all sides and integral radiused bearing pads.
1. Size: Approximately 30 inches (750 mm) by 30 inches (750 mm) by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.

PART 3 INSTALLATION

3.1 GENERAL

A. Construct the new roofing system in a watertight, workmanlike manner, meeting the guarantee requirements specified herein; in strict accordance with the drawings and in conformance with the Manufacturer's requirements, except as enhanced in this specification.

B. Clean the surface on which roofing system components will be applied, of all laitance, dirt, oil, grease or other foreign matter which would in any way affect the quality of the installation.

C. Install roof system components on dry surfaces only. Do not install any items when weather conditions and outside temperatures are not suitable in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations.

D. Complete all work in sequence as quickly as possible so that as small an area as practicable is in the process of construction at any one time. Complete the entire area of work begun each day, the same day, and make all exposed edges watertight at the end of each day's work.

3.2 SUBSTRATE INSPECTION

A. Remove portions of existing roofing, insulation, and flashings, and carefully check the existing deck and new roof substrate. To be an acceptable surface for the new roofing system, the deck and substrate shall be well secured to the underlying structure, dry and not otherwise deteriorated.

B. Immediately notify the Owner's Representative in writing if defects in the substrate are discovered.

C. Maintain the building watertight in the interim, but do not install new insulation or roofing until substrate defects have been corrected.

3.3 NEW TO EXISTING INTERFACE

A. Remove and replace portions of existing roofing at the construction interface between new construction and existing roof areas.
1. Install new isocyanurate insulation, mechanically fastened, to match existing insulation thickness and to maintain the slope of the existing insulation.
2. Install 60 mil. fully adhered EPDM membrane to lap a minimum of 12 inches onto existing EPDM membrane.

3.4 PREPARATION

A. Take appropriate measures to ensure that fumes from adhesive solvents are not drawn into the building through air intakes.

B. Prior to proceeding, prepare roof surface so that it is clean, dry, and smooth, and free of sharp edges, fins, roughened surfaces, loose or foreign materials, oil, grease and other materials that may damage the membrane.

C. Fill all surface voids in the immediate substrate that are greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) wide with fill material acceptable insulation to membrane manufacturer.

D. Seal, grout, or tape deck joints, where needed, to prevent bitumen seepage into building.

3.5 INSULATION AND COVER BOARD INSTALLATION

A. Install insulation in configuration and with attachment method(s) specified in PART 2, under Roofing System.

B. Neatly and tightly fit insulation to all penetrations, projections, and nailers, with gaps not greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm). Fill gaps greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) with acceptable insulation. Do not leave the roofing membrane unsupported over a space greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm).

C. Mechanical Fastening: Using specified fasteners and insulation plates engage fasteners through insulation into deck to depth and in pattern required by membrane manufacturer.

3.6 SINGLE-PLY MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

A. Beginning at low point of roof, place membrane without stretching over substrate and allow to relax at least 30 minutes before attachment or splicing; in colder weather allow for longer relax time.

B. Lay out the membrane pieces so that field and flashing splices are installed to shed water.

C. Install membrane without wrinkles and without gaps or fishmouths in seams; bond and test seams and laps in accordance with membrane manufacturer's instructions and details.

D. Install membrane adhered to the substrate, with edge securement as specified.

E. Fully adhere EPDM to the substrate with bonding adhesive, .
   1. Allow contact bonding adhesive to dry to the touch EPDM before joining the PVC to the substrate. Roll the EPDM onto the bonding adhesive and immediately rub it vigorously with a soft bristle broom to ensure complete adhesion.
   2. Do not punch holes in cans of adhesive and use them in a “Better Spreader” without first opening the cans to mix them.
   3. Replace used roller covers each day; discard covers after each days use.
   4. Allow bonding adhesive to dry to the touch before joining the EPDM to the substrate.
   5. Allow bonding adhesive to dry to the touch before joining the EPDM to the substrate.

F. Roofing installed over improperly applied adhesive or with adhesive that wasn't stirred, and roofing installed with blisters, ridges, mole runs and similar deficiencies shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor’s expense

G. Adhered Membrane: Bond membrane sheet to substrate using membrane manufacturer's recommended bonding material, application rate, and procedures.

H. Edge Securement: Secure membrane at all locations where membrane terminates or goes through an angle change greater than 2 in 12 inches (1:6) using mechanically fastened reinforced perimeter fastening strips, plates, or metal edging as indicated or as recommended by roofing manufacturer.

3.7 BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE APPLICATION

A. Install built-up bituminous roofing system in accordance with manufacturers recommendations and NRCA (RM) applicable requirements.

B. Lay base sheet, coated side down. Lap sides 2 inches (50 mm); lap ends 6 inches (150 mm).
   1. Set in cold mastic at 2 gal/sq ft (97 L/sq m).

C. Apply cap sheet membrane plies, weather lap edges and ends, and mop with 20 lbs/square (100 sq ft) (9 kgs/square (9.3 sq m)) of bitumen per ply.

D. Apply smooth, free from air pockets, wrinkles, fish-mouths, or tears.

E. At intersections with vertical surfaces:
   1. Extend membrane and base sheet over cant strips and up a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) onto vertical surfaces.
   2. Mop on base flashing of two additional plies of felt and one ply of base flashing material.

F. Around roof penetrations, mop in and seal flanges and flashings with two additional plies of felt.

G. Install walkway pads in cold mastic at 2 gal/sq ft (97 L/sq m). Set joints 6 inches (150 mm) apart.

3.8 FLASHING AND ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION

A. Install flashings, including laps, splices, joints, bonding, adhesion, and attachment, as required by membrane manufacturer's recommendations and details.

B. Metal Accessories: Install metal edgings, gravel stops, and copings in locations indicated on the drawings, with horizontal leg of edge member over membrane and flashing over metal onto membrane.
   1. Follow roofing manufacturer's instructions.
   2. Remove protective plastic surface film immediately before installation.
   3. Install water block sealant under the membrane anchorage leg.
   4. Flash with manufacturer's recommended flashing sheet unless otherwise indicated.
   5. Where single application of flashing will not completely cover the metal flange, install additional piece of flashing to cover the metal edge.

C. Flashing at Walls, Curbs, and Other Vertical and Sloped Surfaces: Install weathertight flashing at all walls, curbs, parapets, curbs, skylights, and other vertical and sloped surfaces that the roofing membrane abuts to; extend flashing high above membrane surface or as shown on drawings.
   1. Use the longest practical flashing pieces.
   2. Evaluate the substrate and overlay and adjust installation procedure in accordance with membrane manufacturer's recommendations.
   3. Complete the splice between flashing and the main roof sheet with specified splice adhesive before adhering flashing to the vertical surface.
   4. Provide termination directly to the vertical substrate as shown on roof drawings.

D. Flashing at Penetrations: Flash all penetrations passing through the membrane; make flashing seals directly to the penetration.
   1. Pipes, Round Supports, and Similar Items: Flash with specified pre-molded pipe flashings wherever practical; otherwise use specified self-curing elastomeric flashing.

3.9 FINISHING AND WALKWAY INSTALLATION

A. Install walkways at access points to the roof, around rooftop equipment that may require maintenance, and where indicated on the drawings.
   1. Use concrete pavers where indicated and detailed.

B. Walkway Pads: Adhere to the roofing membrane, spacing each pad at minimum of 1.0 inch (25 mm) and maximum of 3.0 inches (75 mm) from each other to allow for drainage.
   1. If installation of walkway pads over field fabricated splices or within 6 inches (150 mm) of a splice edge cannot be avoided, adhere another layer of flashing over the splice and extending beyond the walkway pad a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) on either side.
   2. Prime the membrane, remove the release paper on the pad, press in place, and walk on pad to ensure proper adhesion.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspection by Manufacturer: Provide final inspection of the roofing system by a Technical Representative employed by roofing system manufacturer specifically to inspect installation for warranty purposes (i.e. not a sales person).

B. Perform all corrections necessary for issuance of warranty.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean all contaminants generated by roofing work from building and surrounding areas, including bitumen, adhesives, sealants, and coatings.

B. Repair or replace building components and finished surfaces damaged or defaced due to the work of this section; comply with recommendations of manufacturers of components and surfaces.

C. Remove leftover materials, trash, debris, equipment from project site and surrounding areas.

3.12 PROTECTION

A. Where construction traffic must continue over finished roof membrane, provide durable protection and replace or repair damaged roofing to original condition.

END OF SECTION

FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Firestopping systems.

B. Firestopping of all penetrations in fire resistance rated and smoke resistant assemblies, whether indicated on drawings or not.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 09 2116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Gypsum wallboard fireproofing.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM E119 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials; 2015.

B. ASTM E814 - Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops; 2013a.

C. FM 4991 - Approval Standard for Firestop Contractors; 2013.

D. UL 1479 - Standard for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestops; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

E. UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory; current edition.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide data on product characteristics, performance ratings, and limitations.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Comply with firestopping manufacturer's recommendations for temperature and conditions during and after installation. Maintain minimum temperature before, during, and for 3 days after installation of materials.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FIRESTOPPING - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Primers, Sleeves, Forms, Insulation, Packing, Stuffing, and Accessories: Type required for tested assembly design.

2.2 FIRESTOPPING ASSEMBLY REQUIREMENTS

A. Head-of-Wall Joint System Firestopping at Joints Between Fire-Rated Wall Assemblies and Non-Rated Horizontal Assemblies: Use any system that has been tested according to ASTM E2837 to have fire resistance F Rating equal to required fire rating of floor or wall, whichever is greater.

B. Through Penetration Firestopping: Use any system that has been tested according to ASTM E814 to have fire resistance F Rating equal to required fire rating of penetrated assembly.

1. Temperature Rise: In addition, provide systems that have been tested to show T Rating as indicated.
2. Air Leakage: In addition, provide systems that have been tested to show L Rating as indicated.

2.3 FIRESTOPPING PENETRATIONS THROUGH GYPSUM BOARD WALLS

A. Penetrations By:

1. Uninsulated Metallic Pipe, Conduit, and Tubing:
   a. 1 Hour Construction: UL System W-L-1054; Hilti FS-ONE MAX Intumescent Firestop Sealant.
2. Electrical Cables Not In Conduit:
   a. 1 Hour Construction: UL System W-L-3065; Hilti FS-ONE MAX Intumescent Firestop Sealant, CP 606 Flexible Firestop Sealant, CD 601S Elastomeric Firestop Sealant, or CP 618 Firestop Putty Stick.
3. Insulated Pipes:

a. 1 Hour Construction: UL System W-L-5028; Hilti FS-ONE MAX Intumescent Firestop Sealant.

4. HVAC Ducts, Insulated:
   a. 1 Hour Construction: UL System W-L-7156; Hilti FS-ONE MAX Intumescent Firestop Sealant.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify openings are ready to receive the work of this section.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrate surfaces of dirt, dust, grease, oil, loose material, or other matter that could adversely affect bond of firestopping material.

B. Remove incompatible materials that could adversely affect bond.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install materials in manner described in fire test report and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, completely closing openings.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean adjacent surfaces of firestopping materials.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect adjacent surfaces from damage by material installation.

END OF SECTION

JOINT SEALERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Sealants and joint backing.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 01 6116 - Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) Content Restrictions.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM C834 - Standard Specification for Latex Sealants; 2014.

B. ASTM C920 - Standard Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants; 2014.

C. ASTM C1193 - Standard Guide for Use of Joint Sealants; 2016.

D. ASTM D1667 - Standard Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials--Poly(Vinyl Chloride) Foam (Closed-Cell); 2005 (Reapproved 2011).

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate the work with other sections referencing this section.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide data indicating sealant chemical characteristics.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Maintain temperature and humidity recommended by the sealant manufacturer during and after installation.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 SEALANTS

A. Sealants and Primers - General: Provide products having volatile organic compound (VOC) content as specified in Section 01 6116.

B. General Purpose Exterior Sealant: Polyurethane; ASTM C920, Grade NS, Class 25 minimum; Uses M, G, and A; single component.
   1. Color: Match adjacent finished surfaces.
   2. Applications: Use for:
      a. Control, expansion, and soft joints in masonry.
      b. Joints between metal frames and other materials.
      c. Other exterior joints for which no other sealant is indicated.
   3. Polyurethane Products:
      a. Pecora Corporation; DynaTrol I-XL General Purpose One Part Polyurethane Sealant: www.pecora.com.
      b. Sika Corporation; Sikaflex-1a: www.usa-sika.com.

C. General Purpose Interior Sealant: Acrylic emulsion latex; ASTM C834, Type OP, Grade NF single component, paintable.
   1. Color: Match adjacent finished surfaces.
   2. Applications: Use for:
      a. Interior wall and ceiling control joints.
      b. Joints between door and window frames and wall surfaces.

c. Other interior joints for which no other type of sealant is indicated.

3. Products:

a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 + Silicone Acrylic Latex Caulking Compound: www.pecora.com.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Primer: Non-staining type, recommended by sealant manufacturer to suit application.

B. Joint Backing: Round foam rod compatible with sealant; ASTM D1667, closed cell PVC; oversized 30 to 50 percent larger than joint width.

C. Bond Breaker: Pressure sensitive tape recommended by sealant manufacturer to suit application.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that substrate surfaces are ready to receive work.

B. Verify that joint backing and release tapes are compatible with sealant.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove loose materials and foreign matter that could impair adhesion of sealant.

B. Clean and prime joints in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

C. Perform preparation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and ASTM C1193.

D. Protect elements surrounding the work of this section from damage or disfigurement.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Perform work in accordance with sealant manufacturer's requirements for preparation of surfaces and material installation instructions.

B. Perform installation in accordance with ASTM C1193.

C. Install bond breaker where joint backing is not used.

D. Install sealant free of air pockets, foreign embedded matter, ridges, and sags.

E. Apply sealant within recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.

F. Tool joints concave.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean adjacent soiled surfaces.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect sealants until cured.

END OF SECTION

GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Metal stud wall framing.

B. Acoustic insulation.

C. Gypsum wallboard.

D. Joint treatment and accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 07 8400 - Firestopping: Top-of-wall assemblies at fire rated walls.

B. Section 07 9200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing acoustical gaps in construction other than gypsum board or plaster work.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM A1003/A1003M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Carbon, Metallic- and Nonmetallic-Coated for Cold-Formed Framing Members; 2015.

B. ASTM C475/C475M - Standard Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board; 2015.

C. ASTM C665 - Standard Specification for Mineral-Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing; 2012.

D. ASTM C840 - Standard Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board; 2013.

E. ASTM C954 - Standard Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs From 0.033 in. (0.84 mm) to 0.112 in. (2.84 mm) in Thickness; 2015.

F. ASTM C1047 - Standard Specification for Accessories For Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base; 2014a.

G. ASTM C1396/C1396M - Standard Specification for Gypsum Board; 2014.

H. ASTM D3273 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber; 2012.

I. GA-216 - Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board; 2013.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide data on gypsum board, accessories, and joint finishing system.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL FRAMING MATERIALS

A. Non-Loadbearing Framing System Components: ASTM C645; galvanized sheet steel, of size and properties necessary to comply with ASTM C754 for the spacing indicated, with maximum deflection of wall framing of L/120 at 5 psf (L/120 at 240 Pa).

1. Studs: "C" shaped with flat or formed webs with knurled faces.
2. Runners: U shaped, sized to match studs.
3. Thickness: 20ga. (16ga. at door jambs)
4. Ceiling Channels: C-shaped.

B. Shaft Wall Studs and Accessories: ASTM C645; galvanized sheet steel, of size and properties necessary to comply with ASTM C754 and specified performance requirements.

C. Partition Head To Structure Connections: Provide track fastened to structure with legs of sufficient length to accommodate deflection, for friction fit of studs cut short and fastened as indicated on drawings.

2.2 BOARD MATERIALS

A. Gypsum Wallboard: Paper-faced gypsum panels as defined in ASTM C1396/C1396M; sizes to minimize joints in place; ends square cut.
   1. Application: Use for vertical surfaces and ceilings, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. At Assemblies Indicated with Fire-Rating: Use type required by indicated tested assembly; if no tested assembly is indicated, use Type X board, UL or WH listed.

B. Abuse Resistant Wallboard:
   1. Application: All locations.
   2. Mold Resistance: Score of 10, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273.
   3. Type: Fire resistance rated Type X, UL or WH listed.
   4. Thickness: 5/8 inch (16 mm).
   5. Edges: Tapered.
   6. Paper-Faced Products:
      a. American Gypsum Company; M-Bloc AR Type X.
      b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum; ToughRock Fireguard X Mold Guard Abuse-Resistant.
      c. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond Hi-Abuse XP Gypsum Board.

C. Shaftwall and Coreboard: Type X; 1 inch (25 mm) thick by 24 inches (610 mm) wide, beveled long edges, ends square cut.
   1. Paper-Faced Type: Gypsum shaftliner board or gypsum coreboard as defined ASTM C1396/C1396M; water-resistant faces.
   2. Mold Resistance: Score of 10, when tested in accordance with ASTM D3273.
   3. Paper-Faced Products:
      a. American Gypsum Company; M-Bloc Shaft Liner.
      b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum; ToughRock Shaftliner.
      c. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond Fire-Shield Shaftliner XP.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Acoustic Insulation: ASTM C665; preformed mineral fiber, friction fit type, unfaced. Thickness: 4 inch (101.6 mm).
   1. Mineral fiber blanket thermal insulation: Type 1; ASTM C665
   2. Flame Spread and Smoke Developed Index: 0; ASTM E84
   3. Density: 2.2 lbs/cu.ft.; ASTM C167
   4. Product: Rockwool AFB, or approved equal.

B. Acoustic Sealant: Acrylic emulsion latex or water-based elastomeric sealant; do not use solvent-based non-curing butyl sealant.

C. Beads, Joint Accessories, and Other Trim: ASTM C1047, galvanized steel or rolled zinc, unless noted otherwise.
   1. Rigid Corner Beads: Low profile, for 90 degree outside corners.
   2. L-Trim with Tear-Away Strip: Sized to fit 5/8 inch (20 mm) thick gypsum wallboard.

D. Joint Materials: ASTM C475/C475M and as recommended by gypsum board manufacturer for project conditions.
   1. Tape: 2 inch (50 mm) wide, creased paper tape for joints and corners, except as otherwise indicated.
   2. Ready-mixed vinyl-based joint compound.
   3. Chemical hardening type compound.

E. Screws for Fastening of Gypsum Panel Products to Cold-Formed Steel Studs Less than 0.033 inch (0.84 mm) in Thickness and Wood Members: ASTM C1002; self-piercing tapping screws, corrosion resistant.

F. Screws for Fastening of Gypsum Panel Products to Steel Members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) in Thickness: ASTM C954; steel drill screws, corrosion resistant.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that project conditions are appropriate for work of this section to commence.

3.2 SHAFT WALL INSTALLATION

A. Shaft Wall Framing: Install in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
   1. Fasten runners to structure with short leg to finished side, using appropriate power-driven fasteners at not more than 24 inches (600 mm) on center.
   2. Install studs at spacing detailed.

B. Shaft Wall Liner: Cut panels to accurate dimension and install sequentially between special friction studs.

3.3 FRAMING INSTALLATION

A. Metal Framing: Install in accordance with ASTM C754 and manufacturer's instructions.

B. Suspended Ceilings and Soffits: Space framing and furring members as indicated.
   1. Level ceiling system to a tolerance of 1/1200.

C. Studs: Space studs at 16 inches on center (at 406 mm on center).
   1. Extend partition framing to structure where indicated and to ceiling in other locations.
   2. Partitions Terminating at Structure: Attach extended leg top runner to structure, maintain clearance between top of studs and structure, and brace both flanges of studs with continuous bridging.

D. Openings: Reinforce openings as required for weight of doors or operable panels, using not less than double studs at jambs.

3.4 ACOUSTIC ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION

A. Acoustic Insulation: Place tightly within spaces, around cut openings, behind and around electrical and mechanical items within partitions, and tight to items passing through partitions.

B. Acoustic Sealant: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
   1. Place one bead continuously on substrate before installation of perimeter framing members.
   2. Place continuous bead at perimeter of each layer of gypsum board.
   3. Seal around all penetrations by conduit, pipe, ducts, and rough-in boxes, except where firestopping is provided.

3.5 BOARD INSTALLATION

A. Comply with ASTM C840, GA-216, and manufacturer's instructions. Install to minimize butt end joints, especially in highly visible locations.

B. Single-Layer Non-Rated: Install gypsum board in most economical direction, with ends and edges occurring over firm bearing.
   1. Exception: Tapered edges to receive joint treatment at right angles to framing.

C. Double-Layer Non-Rated: Use gypsum board for first layer, placed parallel to framing or furring members, with ends and edges occurring over firm bearing. Use glass mat faced gypsum board at exterior walls and at other locations as indicated. Place second layer perpendicular to framing or furring members. Offset joints of second layer from joints of first layer.

D. Fire-Rated Construction: Install gypsum board in strict compliance with requirements of assembly listing.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF TRIM AND ACCESSORIES

A. Control Joints: Place control joints consistent with lines of building spaces and as indicated.

B. Corner Beads: Install at external corners, using longest practical lengths.

C. Edge Trim: Install at locations where gypsum board abuts dissimilar materials.

3.7 JOINT TREATMENT

A. Finish gypsum board in accordance with levels defined in ASTM C840, as follows:
   1. Level 4: Walls and ceilings to receive paint finish or wall coverings, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Level 1: Fire rated wall areas above finished ceilings, whether or not accessible in the completed construction.

B. Tape, fill, and sand exposed joints, edges, and corners to produce smooth surface ready to receive finishes.
   1. Feather coats of joint compound so that camber is maximum 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).

END OF SECTION

SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Suspended metal grid ceiling system.

B. Acoustical units.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM C635/C635M - Standard Specification for the Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings; 2013a.

B. ASTM C636/C636M - Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-In Panels; 2013.

C. ASTM E1264 - Standard Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products; 2014.

D. UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory; current edition.

1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Sequence work to ensure acoustical ceilings are not installed until building is enclosed, sufficient heat is provided, dust generating activities have terminated, and overhead work is completed, tested, and approved.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide data on suspension system components and acoustical units.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Suspension System Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 ACOUSTICAL UNITS

A. Acoustical Panels: Painted mineral fiber, with the following characteristics:
   1. Classification: ASTM E1264 Type III.
      a. Form: 1, nodular.
      b. Pattern: "E" - lightly textured.
   2. Size: 24 by 24 inches (610 by 610 mm) and 24 by 48 inches (610 by 1220 mm), as indicated.
   3. Thickness: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
   4. Tile Edge: Beveled.
   5. Color: White.
   6. Suspension System: Exposed grid.
   7. Products:
      a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc; Cirrus High NRC: www.armstrongceilings.com/#sle.

2.2 SUSPENSION SYSTEM(S)

A. Suspension Systems - General: Complying with ASTM C635/C635M; die cut and interlocking components, with stabilizer bars, clips, splices, perimeter moldings, and hold down clips as required.

B. Exposed Steel Suspension System: Formed steel, commercial quality cold rolled; heavy-duty.
   1. Profile: Tee; 15/16 inch (24 mm) or 9/16 inch (14 mm) wide face; match existing.
   2. Construction: Double web.
   3. Finish: White painted.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Wire Ties: No. 12 galvanized wire.

B. Perimeter Moldings: Same material and finish as grid.
   1. At Exposed Grid: Provide L-shaped molding for mounting at same elevation as face of grid.

C. Acoustical Sealant For Perimeter Moldings: Non-hardening, non-skinning, for use in conjunction with suspended ceiling system.

D. Touch-up Paint: Type and color to match acoustical and grid units.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION - SUSPENSION SYSTEM

A. Rigidly secure system, including integral mechanical and electrical components, for maximum deflection of 1:360.

B. Hang suspension system independent of walls, columns, ducts, pipes and conduit. Where carrying members are spliced, avoid visible displacement of face plane of adjacent members.

C. Where ducts or other equipment prevent the regular spacing of hangers, reinforce the nearest affected hangers and related carrying channels to span the extra distance.

D. Do not eccentrically load system or induce rotation of runners.

E. Perimeter Molding: Install at intersection of ceiling and vertical surfaces and at junctions with other interruptions.
   1. Use longest practical lengths.
   2. Overlap and rivet corners.

3.2 INSTALLATION - ACOUSTICAL UNITS

A. Install acoustical units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Fit acoustical units in place, free from damaged edges or other defects detrimental to appearance and function.

C. Fit border trim neatly against abutting surfaces.

D. Install units after above-ceiling work is complete.

E. Install acoustical units level, in uniform plane, and free from twist, warp, and dents.

F. Cutting Acoustical Units:
   1. Cut to fit irregular grid and perimeter edge trim.
   2. Make field cut edges of same profile as factory edges.
   3. Double cut and field paint exposed reveal edges.

3.3 TOLERANCES

A. Maximum Variation from Flat and Level Surface: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m).

B. Maximum Variation from Plumb of Grid Members Caused by Eccentric Loads: 2 degrees.

END OF SECTION

RESILIENT FLOORING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Resilient tile flooring.

B. Resilient base.

C. Installation accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

A. Section 03 3000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Restrictions on curing compounds for concrete slabs and floors.

B. Section 03 5400 - Cast Underlayment.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM F1066 - Standard Specification for Vinyl Composition Floor Tile; 2004 (Reapproved 2014).

B. ASTM F1700 - Standard Specification for Solid Vinyl Tile; 2013a.

C. ASTM F1861 - Standard Specification for Resilient Wall Base; 2008 (Reapproved 2012).

D. RFCI (RWP) - Recommended Work Practices for Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings; Resilient Floor Covering Institute; October 2011.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide data on specified products, describing physical and performance characteristics; including sizes, patterns and colors available; and installation instructions.

C. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures, recommended maintenance materials, and suggested schedule for cleaning, stripping, and re-waxing.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in installing specified flooring with minimum three years documented experience.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Upon receipt, immediately remove any shrink-wrap and check materials for damage and the correct style, color, quantity and run numbers.

B. Store all materials off of the floor in an acclimatized, weather-tight space.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 TILE FLOORING

A. Vinyl Composition Tile: Homogeneous, with color extending throughout thickness.
   1. Manufacturers:
      a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc; Premium Excelon, Crown Texture: www.armstrong.com/#sle.
   2. Minimum Requirements: Comply with ASTM F1066, of Class corresponding to type specified.
   3. Size: 12 by 12 inch (305 by 305 mm).
   4. Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
   5. Color: To be selected by Engineer from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 RESILIENT BASE

A. Resilient Base: ASTM F1861, Type TS rubber, vulcanized thermoset; top set Style B, Cove.
   1. Height: 6 inch (150 mm).
   2. Thickness: 0.125 inch (3.2 mm) thick.

3. Finish: Satin.
4. Color: To be selected by Engineer from manufacturer's full range.
5. Accessories: Premolded external corners and internal corners.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Subfloor Patching/Leveling Compound: White premix latex; type recommended by adhesive material manufacturer.

B. Primers and Adhesives: Waterproof; types recommended by flooring manufacturer.

C. Adhesive for Transition strips and mouldings : Premium Contact Adhesive.

D. Moldings, Transition and Edge Strips: Rubber.

E. Sealer and Wax: Types recommended by flooring manufacturer and approved by owner. .

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that surfaces are flat to tolerances acceptable to flooring manufacturer, free of cracks that might telegraph through flooring, clean, dry, and free of curing compounds, surface hardeners, and other chemicals that might interfere with bonding of flooring to substrate.

B. Verify that wall surfaces are smooth and flat within the tolerances specified for that type of work, are dust-free, and are ready to receive resilient base.

C. Cementitious Sub-floor Surfaces: Verify that substrates are dry enough and ready for resilient flooring installation by testing for moisture and pH.
1. Obtain instructions if test results are not within limits recommended by resilient flooring manufacturer and adhesive materials manufacturer.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Remove existing resilient flooring and flooring adhesives; follow the recommendations of RFCI (RWP).

B. Prepare floor substrates as recommended by flooring and adhesive manufacturers.

C. Remove any sub-floor ridges and bumps. Fill minor low spots, cracks, joints, holes, and other defects with sub-floor filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface.

D. Provide surface patching/leveling compound over 100% of all floor substrates.

E. Prohibit traffic until leveling compound is fully cured.

F. Screen final floor substrate to remove any trowel marks, ridges or imperfections.

G. Clean substrate.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Starting installation constitutes acceptance of sub-floor conditions.

B. Install in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Spread only enough adhesive to permit installation of materials before initial set.

D. Fit joints and butt seams tightly.

E. Set flooring in place, press with heavy roller to attain full adhesion.

F. Where type of floor finish, pattern, or color are different on opposite sides of door, terminate flooring under centerline of door.

G. Install edge strips at unprotected or exposed edges, where flooring terminates, and where indicated.

H. Scribe flooring to walls, columns, cabinets, floor outlets, and other appurtenances to produce tight joints.

I. Install transitions and mouldings where indicated and at any transitions to differing materials. Apply contact adhesive to trim and substrate. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.4 TILE FLOORING

A. Mix tile from container to ensure shade variations are consistent when tile is placed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's installation instructions.

B. Lay flooring with joints and seams parallel to building lines to produce symmetrical tile pattern.

C. Install tile to ashlar pattern. Allow minimum 1/2 full size tile width at room or area perimeter.

3.5 RESILIENT BASE

A. Fit joints tightly and make vertical. Maintain minimum dimension of 18 inches (45 mm) between joints.

B. Miter internal corners. At external corners, 'V' cut back of base strip to 2/3 of its thickness and fold. At exposed ends, use premolded units.

C. Install base on solid backing. Bond tightly to wall and floor surfaces.

D. Scribe and fit to door frames and other interruptions.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Remove excess adhesive from floor, base, and wall surfaces without damage.

B. Clean in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Provide 3 wax coats, allowing full drying between each coat, in accordance with manufacturer's application requirements.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Prohibit traffic on resilient flooring for 48 hours after installation.

END OF SECTION

INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Surface preparation.

B. Field application of paints.

C. Scope: Finish all interior new or disturbed surfaces exposed to view, unless fully factory-finished and unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Mechanical and Electrical:
      a. In finished areas, paint insulated and exposed pipes, conduit, boxes, insulated and exposed ducts, hangers, brackets, collars and supports, mechanical equipment, and electrical equipment, unless otherwise indicated.
      b. In finished areas, paint shop-primed items.
      c. Paint interior surfaces of air ducts and convector and baseboard heating cabinets that are visible through grilles and louvers with one coat of flat black paint to visible surfaces.

D. Do Not Paint or Finish the Following Items:
   1. Items factory-finished unless otherwise indicated; materials and products having factory-applied primers are not considered factory finished.
   2. Fire rating labels, equipment serial number and capacity labels, bar code labels, and operating parts of equipment.
   3. Glass.
   4. Concealed pipes, ducts, and conduits.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Conform to ASTM D16 for interpretation of terms used in this section.

1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. ASTM D16 - Standard Terminology for Paint, Related Coatings, Materials, and Applications; 2014.

B. MPI (APSM) - Master Painters Institute Architectural Painting Specification Manual; Current Edition, www.paintinfo.com.

C. SSPC-SP 1 - Solvent Cleaning; 2015.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 01 3000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide complete list of products to be used, with the following information for each:
   1. Manufacturer's name, product name and/or catalog number, and general product category (e.g. "alkyd enamel").
   2. MPI product number (e.g. MPI #47).
   3. Cross-reference to specified paint system(s) product is to be used in; include description of each system.

C. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Yonkers Public Schools's use in maintenance of project.
   1. Extra Paint and Finish Materials: 1 gallon (4 L) of each color; from the same product run, store where directed.
   2. Label each container with color in addition to the manufacturer's label.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified, with minimum three years documented experience.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptability.

B. Container Label: Include manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.

C. Paint Materials: Store at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F (7 degrees C) and a maximum of 90 degrees F (32 degrees C), in ventilated area, and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the temperature ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.

B. Follow manufacturer's recommended procedures for producing best results, including testing of substrates, moisture in substrates, and humidity and temperature limitations.

C. Provide lighting level of 80 ft candles (860 lx) measured mid-height at substrate surface.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Provide paints and finishes from the same manufacturer to the greatest extent possible.

1. In the event that a single manufacturer cannot provide specified products, minor exceptions will be permitted provided approval by Engineer is obtained using the specified procedures for substitutions.

B. Paints:

1. Sherwin-Williams Company: www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle.

C. Primer Sealers: Same manufacturer as top coats.

2.2 PAINTS AND FINISHES - GENERAL

A. Paints and Finishes: Ready mixed, unless intended to be a field-catalyzed paint.

1. Provide paints and finishes of a soft paste consistency, capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to a homogeneous coating, with good flow and brushing properties, and capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags.
2. Supply each paint material in quantity required to complete entire project's work from a single production run.
3. Do not reduce, thin, or dilute paint or finishes or add materials unless such procedure is specifically described in manufacturer's product instructions.

B. Colors: To be selected from manufacturer's full range of available colors.

1. Match existing adjacent finish colors.
2. In finished areas, finish pipes, ducts, conduit, and equipment the same color as the wall/ceiling they are mounted on/under.

2.3 PAINT SYSTEMS - INTERIOR

A. Interior Surfaces to be Painted, Unless Otherwise Indicated: Including wood.

1. Two top coats and one coat primer.
2. Top Coat Sheen:
   a. Eggshell: MPI gloss level 3; use this sheen at all locations.
   b. Semi-Gloss: MPI gloss level 5; use this sheen for wall base trim.
3. Primer: As recommended by top coat manufacturer for specific substrate.

B. Paint I-OP-MD-DT - Medium Duty Trim: For surfaces subject to frequent contact by occupants, including metals and wood:

1. Medium duty applications include doors, door frames, railings, handrails, guardrails, and balustrades.
2. Two top coats and one coat primer.
3. Top Coat(s): Interior Light Industrial Coating, Water Based; MPI #151, 153 or 154.
   a. Products:
      a) Sherwin-Williams Pro Industrial Acrylic Coating, Semi-Gloss. (MPI #153)

C. Paint I-OP-MD-WC - Medium Duty Vertical and Overhead: Including gypsum board, plaster, concrete, concrete masonry units, uncoated steel, shop primed steel, galvanized steel, and aluminum.
1. Two top coats and one coat primer.
2. Top Coat(s): High Performance Architectural Interior Latex; MPI #138, 139, 140, or 141.
   a. Products:
      a) Sherwin-Williams Pro Industrial Acrylic Coating, Eg-Shel.
3. Top Coat Sheen:
   a. Eggshell: MPI gloss level 3; use this sheen at all locations.

2.4 PRIMERS

A. Primers: Provide the following unless other primer is required or recommended by manufacturer of top coats.
1. Alkali Resistant Water Based Primer; MPI #3.
   a. Products:
      a) Sherwin-Williams Loxon Water Blocking Primer/Finish.
2. Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler; MPI #4.
   a. Products:
      a) Sherwin-Williams ConFlex Block Filler. (MPI #4)

2.5 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Accessory Materials: Provide primers, sealers, cleaning agents, cleaning cloths, sanding materials, and clean-up materials as required for final completion of painted surfaces.

B. Patching Material: Latex filler.

C. Fastener Head Cover Material: Latex filler.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Do not begin application of paints and finishes until substrates have been properly prepared.

B. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work as instructed by the product manufacturer.

C. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work. Report any condition that may potentially effect proper application.

D. Test shop-applied primer for compatibility with subsequent cover materials.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean surfaces thoroughly and correct defects prior to application.

B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

C. Remove or mask surface appurtenances, including electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings, prior to preparing surfaces or finishing.

D. Seal surfaces that might cause bleed through or staining of topcoat.

E. Concrete:

F. Masonry:

1. Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or if alkalinity of mortar joints exceed that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions. Allow to dry.
2. Prepare surface as recommended by top coat manufacturer.

G. Gypsum Board: Fill minor defects with filler compound. Spot prime defects after repair.

H. Plaster: Fill hairline cracks, small holes, and imperfections with latex patching plaster. Make smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Wash and neutralize high alkali surfaces.

I. Aluminum: Remove surface contamination and oils and wash with solvent according to SSPC-SP 1.

J. Galvanized Surfaces:

K. Existing Wood Surfaces to Receive Opaque Finish: Wipe off dust and grit prior to priming. Prime any new or previously unfinished areas as required. Fill nail holes, damaged sections and cracks after primer has dried; sand between coats. Remove any loose paint or base adhesive residue. Sand surface prior to applying new paint.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Remove unfinished louvers, grilles, covers, and access panels on mechanical and electrical components and paint separately.

B. Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual".

C. Do not apply finishes to surfaces that are not dry. Allow applied coats to dry before next coat is applied.

D. Apply each coat to uniform appearance in thicknesses specified by manufacturer.

E. Sand wood and metal surfaces lightly between coats to achieve required finish.

F. Vacuum clean surfaces of loose particles. Use tack cloth to remove dust and particles just prior to applying next coat.

G. Reinstall electrical cover plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings removed prior to finishing.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Collect waste material that could constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers, and remove daily from site.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect finishes until completion of project.

B. Touch-up damaged finishes after Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230500 – COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. The requirements of this Section apply to all sections of Division 23.

B. Definitions:

1. "Concealed": Piping, ductwork, and equipment concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants.
2. "Exposed": Piping, ductwork, and equipment exposed to view in finished rooms.
3. "Finished": Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
4. "Furnish": purchase and supply all materials, labor, equipment, testing apparatus, controls, tests, accessories and all other items customarily required for the proper and complete application for the particular work referred to.
5. "Install": join, unite, fasten, link, attach, set up or otherwise connect together before testing and turning over to the Owner, complete and ready for regular operation, the particular work referred to.
6. "Option" or "optional": Contractor's choice of an alternate material or method.
7. "Provide": Furnish and Install.

1.2 RELATED WORK

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related Sections

1. All sections within Division 23 – Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning.
2. All sections within Division 01 – General Requirements.
3. Relevant sections within Division 03 – Concrete
4. Relevant sections within Division 07 – Thermal and Moisture Protection
5. Relevant sections within Division 08 – Openings
6. Relevant sections within Division 09 – Finishes
7. Relevant sections within Division 21 – Fire Protection
8. Relevant sections within Division 26 – Electrical
9. Relevant sections within Division 28 – Fire Alarm

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mechanical, electrical and associated systems shall be safe, reliable, efficient, durable, easily and safely operable and maintainable, easily and safely accessible, and in compliance with applicable codes as specified. The systems shall be comprised of high quality institutional-class and industrial-class products of manufacturers that are experienced specialists in the required product lines. All construction firms and personnel shall be experienced and qualified specialists in industrial and institutional HVAC.

B. Equipment Vibration Tolerance:

1. Refer to Section 23 Section “Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC.” Equipment shall be factory-balanced to this tolerance and re-balanced on site, as necessary.
2. After HVAC air balance work is completed and permanent drive sheaves are in place, perform field mechanical balancing and adjustments required to meet the specified vibration tolerance.

C. Products Criteria:

1. Standard Products: Material and equipment shall be the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products for at least 3 years (or longer as specified elsewhere). The design, model and size of each item shall have been in satisfactory and efficient operation on at least three installations for approximately three years. However, digital electronics devices, software and systems such as controls, instruments, computer work station, shall be the current generation of technology and basic design that has a proven satisfactory service record of at least three years. See other specification sections for any exceptions and/or additional requirements.
2. All items furnished shall be free from defects that would adversely affect the performance, maintainability and appearance of individual components and overall assembly.
3. Conform to codes and standards as required by the specifications. Conform to local codes, if required by local authorities such as the natural gas supplier, if the local codes are more stringent than those specified. Refer any conflicts to the Engineer.
4. Multiple Units: When two or more units of materials or equipment of the same type or class are required, these units shall be products of one manufacturer.
5. Assembled Units: Manufacturers of equipment assemblies, which use components made by others, assume complete responsibility for the final assembled product.
6. Nameplates: Nameplate bearing manufacturer's name or identifiable trademark shall be securely affixed in a conspicuous place on equipment, or name or trademark cast integrally with equipment, stamped or otherwise permanently marked on each item of equipment.
7. Asbestos products or equipment or materials containing asbestos shall not be used.

D. Equipment Service Organizations:

1. HVAC: Products and systems shall be supported by service organizations that maintain a complete inventory of repair parts and are located within 50 miles to the site.

E. HVAC Mechanical Systems Welding: Before any welding is performed, contractor shall submit a certificate certifying that welders comply with the following requirements:

1. Qualify welding processes and operators for piping according to ASME "Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code", Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications".
2. Comply with provisions of ASME B31 series "Code for Pressure Piping".
3. Certify that each welder has passed American Welding Society (AWS) qualification tests for the welding processes involved, and that certification is current.

F. Execution (Installation, Construction) Quality:

1. Apply and install all items in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Refer conflicts between the manufacturer's instructions and the contract drawings and specifications to the Engineer for resolution.
2. Provide complete layout drawings as required by Paragraph “SUBMITTALS” below. Do not commence construction work on any system until the layout drawings have been approved.

G. Upon request, provide lists of previous installations for selected items of equipment. Include contact persons who will serve as references, with telephone numbers and e-mail addresses.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit in accordance with Division 01, and with requirements in the individual specification sections.

B. Contractor shall make all necessary field measurements and investigations to assure that the equipment and assemblies will meet contract requirements.

C. If equipment is submitted which differs in arrangement from that shown, provide drawings that show the rearrangement of all associated systems. Approval will be given only if all features of the equipment and associated systems, including accessibility, are equivalent to that required by the contract.

D. Prior to submitting shop drawings for approval, contractor shall certify in writing that manufacturers of all major items of equipment have each reviewed drawings and specifications, and have jointly coordinated and properly integrated their equipment and controls to provide a complete and efficient installation.

E. Submittals and shop drawings for interdependent items, containing applicable descriptive information, shall be furnished together and complete in a group. Coordinate and properly integrate materials and equipment in each group to provide a completely compatible and efficient.

F. Manufacturer's Literature and Data: Submit under the pertinent section rather than under this section.

1. Submit belt drive with the driven equipment. Submit selection data for specific drives when requested by the Engineer.
2. Submit electric motor data and variable speed drive data with the driven equipment.
3. Equipment and materials identification.
4. Fire-stopping materials.

5. Hangers, inserts, supports and bracing. Provide load calculations for variable spring and constant support hangers.
6. Wall, floor, and ceiling plates.

G. HVAC Maintenance Data and Operating Instructions:

1. Maintenance and operating manuals in accordance with Division 01, for systems and equipment.
2. Provide a listing of recommended replacement parts for keeping in stock supply, including sources of supply, for equipment. Include in the listing belts for equipment: Belt manufacturer, model number, size and style, and distinguished whether of multiple belt sets.

H. Provide copies of approved HVAC equipment submittals to the Testing, Adjusting and Balancing Subcontractor.

1.5 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

A. Coordinate all new work with existing structure and with existing work which is to remain. Note all existing conditions which may interfere with new work as shown on the documents of this trade and of all other trades which are part of this project. In form the Architect and Engineers of all such conditions in writing with sufficient time to address the conflicts so as not to affect project schedule.

B. Prepare a complete set of construction Coordination Drawings indicating the equipment actually purchased and the exact routing for all lines such as piping, busway, conduit, ductwork, etc., including conduit embedded in concrete. Use the sheet metal shop drawings as the base drawings to which all other contractors will add their work.

C. Color Coordinated drawings (with different color per trade) shall be provided for all areas with acceptance sign off from all trades required at time of shop drawing submittals, including, but not limited to:
1. Plumbing Contractor
2. Electrical Contractor
3. IT Contractor
4. AV Contractor
5. Ceiling Support Contractor
6. General Contractor
7. Testing Adjusting and Balancing Contractor
8. Controls Contractor
9. Fire Sprinkler Contractor
10. Fire Alarm Contractor

D. Drawings shall indicate coordination with work in other Divisions which must be incorporated in mechanical spaces, including, but not limited to:
1. Irrigation Equipment and Piping.
2. Elevator Equipment.
3. Electrical Equipment.

4. Cable Trays.
5. Architectural features, including doors and partitions
6. IT/Electrical outlets
7. Plumbing equipment

E. Indicate piping loads and support points for all piping 4" and larger, racked piping, racked conduit, and busway, and submit to the Structural Engineer for review and approval. Indicate the elevation, location, support points, static, dynamic and expansion forces and loads imposed on the structure at support, anchor points, and size of all lines. Indicate all beam penetrations and slab penetrations sized and coordinated. Indicate all work routed underground or embedded in concrete by dimension to column and building lines.

F. Work installed which interferes with work of any other trade will be corrected at no cost to the project.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for HVAC items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces.

B. Cooperate with all other Divisions performing work on this project as necessary to achieve a complete neatly fitted installation for each condition. Consult the Drawings and Specifications to determine nature and extent of work specified in other Divisions that adjoins, shares space with, or attaches to the work of this Division. Confer with other Divisions at the site to coordinate this work with theirs in view of job conditions to the end that interferences may be eliminated and that maximum headroom and clearance may be obtained. In the event that interferences develop, the Owner's Representative's decision will be final as to which Division shall relocate its work, and no additional compensation will be allowed for the moving of piping, ductwork, conduit or equipment to clear such interferences.

C. The mechanical drawings show the general arrangement of equipment, ductwork, piping and appurtenances. Follow these drawings as closely as the actual construction and the work of other trades will permit. Provide offsets, fittings, and accessories which may be required but not shown on the drawings. Investigate the site, structural and finish ground conditions affecting the work, and arrange the work accordingly. Provide such work and accessories as may be required to meet such conditions, at no additional cost to the project.

D. Examine and compare the contract drawings and specifications with the drawings and specifications of other trades, and report any discrepancies between them to the Engineer and obtain from him written instructions for changes necessary in the work. Install and coordinate the work in cooperation with other related trades. Before installation, make proper provisions to avoid interferences.

E. Wherever the work is of sufficient complexity, prepare additional detail drawings to scale similar to that of the design drawings, prepared on tracing medium of the same size as contract drawings. With these layouts, coordinate the work with the work of other trades. Such detailed work to be clearly identified on the drawings as to the area to which it applies. Submit these drawings to the

Engineer for review. At completion include a set of such drawings with each set of as-built drawings.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Protection of Equipment:

1. Equipment and material placed on the job site shall remain in the custody of the Contractor until phased acceptance, whether or not the Owner has reimbursed the Contractor for the equipment and material. The Contractor is solely responsible for the protection of such equipment and material against any damage.
2. Place damaged equipment in first class, new operating condition; or, replace same as determined and directed by the Engineer. Such repair or replacement shall be at no additional cost.
3. Protect interiors of new equipment and piping systems against entry of foreign matter. Clean both inside and outside before painting or placing equipment in operation.
4. Existing equipment and piping being worked on by the Contractor shall be under the custody and responsibility of the Contractor and shall be protected as required for new work.

B. Cleanliness of Piping and Equipment Systems:

1. Exercise care in storage and handling of equipment and piping material to be incorporated in the work. Remove debris arising from cutting, threading and welding of piping.
2. Piping systems shall be flushed, blown or pigged as necessary to deliver clean systems.
3. Clean interior of all tanks prior to delivery
4. Boilers shall be left clean following final internal inspection
5. Contractor shall be fully responsible for all costs, damage, and delay arising from failure to provide clean systems.

1.8 JOB CONDITIONS – WORK IN EXISTING BUILDING

A. Building Operation: Employees will be continuously operating and managing all facilities, including temporary facilities.

B. Maintenance of Service: Schedule all work to permit continuous service as required by the project.

C. Phasing of Work: Comply with all requirements shown on drawings or specified.

D. Building Working Environment: Maintain the architectural and structural integrity of the building and the working environment at all times. Maintain the interior of building at 65 degrees F minimum. Limit the opening of doors, windows or other access openings to brief periods as necessary for rigging purposes. No storm water or ground water leakage permitted. Provide daily clean up of construction and demolition debris on all floor surfaces and on all equipment.

E. Acceptance of Work: As new facilities are made available for operation and these facilities are of beneficial use, inspections will be made and tests will be performed. Based on the inspections, a list of contract deficiencies will be issued to the Contractor. After correction of deficiencies as necessary for beneficial use, the project professional will process necessary acceptance and the equipment will then be under the control and operation of the Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FACTORY-ASSEMBLED PRODUCTS

A. Provide maximum standardization of components to reduce spare part requirements.

B. Manufacturers of equipment assemblies that include components made by others shall assume complete responsibility for final assembled unit.

1. All components of an assembled unit need not be products of same manufacturer.
2. Constituent parts that are alike shall be products of a single manufacturer.
3. Components shall be compatible with each other and with the total assembly for intended service.
4. Contractor shall guarantee performance of assemblies of components, and shall repair or replace elements of the assemblies as required to deliver specified performance of the complete assembly.

C. Components of equipment shall bear manufacturer's name and trademark, model number, serial number and performance data on a name plate securely affixed in a conspicuous place, or cast integral with, stamped or otherwise permanently marked upon the components of the equipment.

D. Major items of equipment, which serve the same function, must be the same make and model. Exceptions will be permitted if performance requirements cannot be met.

2.2 COMPATIBILITY OF RELATED EQUIPMENT

Equipment and materials installed shall be compatible in all respects with other items being furnished and with existing items so that the result will be a complete and fully operational plant that conforms to contract requirements.

2.3 WALL, FLOOR AND CEILING PLATES

A. Material and Type: Chrome plated brass or chrome plated steel, one piece or split type with concealed hinge, with set screw for fastening to pipe, or sleeve. Use plates that fit tight around pipes, cover openings around pipes and cover the entire pipe sleeve projection.

B. Thickness: Not less than 3/32 inch for floor plates. For wall and ceiling plates, not less than 0.025-inch for up to 3 inch pipe, 0.035-inch for larger pipe.

C. Locations: Use where pipe penetrates floors, walls and ceilings in exposed locations, in finished areas only. Provide a watertight joint in spaces where brass or steel pipe sleeves are specified.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ARRANGEMENT AND INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT AND PIPING

A. Coordinate location of piping, sleeves, inserts, hangers, ductwork and equipment. Locate piping, sleeves, inserts, hangers, ductwork and equipment clear of windows, doors, openings, light outlets, and other services and utilities. Prepare equipment layout drawings to coordinate proper location and personnel access of all facilities. Submit the drawings for review as required by Part 1. Follow manufacturer's published recommendations for installation methods not otherwise specified.

B. Operating Personnel Access and Observation Provisions: Select and arrange all equipment and systems to provide clear view and easy access, without use of portable ladders, for maintenance and operation of all devices including, but not limited to: all equipment items, valves, filters, strainers, transmitters, sensors, control devices. All gages and indicators shall be clearly visible by personnel standing on the floor or on permanent platforms. Do not reduce or change maintenance and operating space and access provisions that are shown on the drawings.

C. Equipment and Piping Support: Coordinate structural systems necessary for pipe and equipment support with pipe and equipment locations to permit proper installation.

D. Location of pipe sleeves, trenches and chases shall be accurately coordinated with equipment and piping locations.

E. Cutting Holes:

1. Cut holes through concrete and masonry by rotary core drill. Pneumatic hammer, impact electric, and hand or manual hammer type drill will not be allowed, except as permitted by Owner where working area space is limited.
2. Locate holes to avoid interference with structural members such as beams or grade beams. Holes shall be laid out in advance and drilling done only after approval by Owner. If the Contractor considers it necessary to drill through structural members, this matter shall be referred to Owner for approval.
3. Do not penetrate membrane waterproofing.

F. Protection and Cleaning:

1. Equipment and materials shall be carefully handled, properly stored, and adequately protected to prevent damage before and during installation, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and as approved by the Owner. Damaged or defective items in the opinion of the Owner, shall be replaced.
2. Protect all finished parts of equipment, such as shafts and bearings where accessible, from rust prior to operation by means of protective grease coating and wrapping. Close pipe openings with caps or plugs during installation. Tightly cover and protect fixtures and

equipment against dirt, water chemical, or mechanical injury. At completion of all work thoroughly clean fixtures, exposed materials and equipment.

G. Install gages, thermometers, valves and other devices with due regard for ease in reading or operating and maintaining said devices. Locate and position thermometers and gages to be easily read by operator or staff standing on floor or walkway provided. Servicing shall not require dismantling adjacent equipment or pipe work.

H. Switchgear/Electrical Equipment Drip Protection: Every effort shall be made to eliminate the installation of pipe above electrical and telephone switchgear. If this is not possible, encase pipe in a second pipe with a minimum of joints. Installation of piping, ductwork, leak protection apparatus or other installations foreign to the electrical installation shall be located in the space equal to the width and depth of the equipment and extending from to a height of 6 ft. above the equipment or to ceiling structure, whichever is lower (NFPA 70).

I. Inaccessible Equipment:

1. Where the Owner determines that the Contractor has installed equipment not conveniently accessible for operation and maintenance, equipment shall be removed and reinstalled or remedial action performed as directed at no additional cost.
2. The term "conveniently accessible" is defined as capable of being reached without the use of ladders, or without climbing or crawling under or over obstacles such as motors, fans, pumps, belt guards, transformers, high voltage lines, piping, and ductwork.

3.2 TEMPORARY PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

A. Continuity of operation of existing facilities will generally require temporary installation or relocation of equipment and piping.

B. The Contractor shall provide all required facilities in accordance with the requirements of phased construction and maintenance of service. All piping and equipment shall be properly supported, sloped to drain, operate without excessive stress, and shall be insulated where injury can occur to personnel by contact with operating facilities. The requirements of Paragraph 3.1 apply.

C. Temporary facilities and piping shall be completely removed and any openings in structures sealed. Provide necessary blind flanges and caps to seal open piping remaining in service.

3.3 RIGGING

A. Design is based on application of available equipment. This is an existing building. Carefully coordinate all rigging arrangement with the owner to ensure that no damage occurs to the building and the equipment.

B. Alternative methods of equipment delivery may be offered by Contractor and will be considered under specified restrictions of phasing and maintenance of service as well as structural integrity of the building.

C. Close all openings in the building when not required for rigging operations to maintain proper environment in the facility for operation and maintenance of service.

D. Contractor shall provide all facilities required to deliver specified equipment and place on foundations. Attachments to structures for rigging purposes and support of equipment on structures shall be Contractor's full responsibility. Upon request, the Owner will check structure adequacy and advise Contractor of recommended restrictions.

E. Contractor shall check all clearances, weight limitations and shall offer a rigging plan designed by a Registered Professional Engineer. All modifications to structures, including reinforcement thereof, shall be at Contractor's cost, time and responsibility.

F. Rigging plan and methods shall be referred to Owner for evaluation prior to actual work.

G. Restore building to original condition upon completion of rigging work.

3.4 MECHANICAL DEMOLITION

A. Rigging access, other than indicated on the drawings, shall be provided by the Contractor after approval for structural integrity by the Owner. Such access shall be provided without additional cost or time. Where work is in an operating plant, provide approved protection from dust and debris at all times for the safety of plant personnel and maintenance of plant operation and environment of the plant.

B. In an operating facility, maintain the operation, cleanliness and safety. Personnel will be carrying on their normal duties of operating, cleaning and maintaining equipment and plant operation. Confine the work to the immediate area concerned; maintain cleanliness and wet down demolished materials to eliminate dust. Do not permit debris to accumulate in the area to the detriment of plant operation. Perform all flame cutting to maintain the fire safety integrity of this plant. Adequate fire extinguishing facilities shall be available at all times. Perform all work in accordance with recognized fire protection standards.

C. Completely remove all piping, wiring, conduit, and other devices associated with the equipment not to be re-used in the new work. This includes all pipe, valves, fittings, insulation, and all hangers including the top connection and any fastenings to building structural systems. Seal all openings, after removal of equipment, pipes, ducts, and other penetrations in roof, walls, floors, in an approved manner and in accordance with plans and specifications where specifically covered. Structural integrity of the building system shall be maintained. Reference shall also be made to the drawings and specifications of the other disciplines in the project for additional facilities to be demolished or handled.

D. All valves including gate, globe, ball, butterfly and check, all pressure gages and thermometers with wells shall remain property of the Owner and shall be removed and delivered to Owner and stored as directed. The Contractor shall remove all other material and equipment, devices and demolition debris under these plans and specifications. Such material shall be removed from the property expeditiously and shall not be allowed to accumulate.

3.5 CLEANING AND PAINTING

A. Prior to final inspection and acceptance of the plant and facilities for beneficial use, the plant facilities, equipment and systems shall be thoroughly cleaned and painted.

B. In addition, the following special conditions apply:

1. Cleaning shall be thorough. Use solvents, cleaning materials and methods recommended by the manufacturers for the specific tasks. Remove all rust prior to painting and from surfaces to remain unpainted. Repair scratches, scuffs, and abrasions prior to applying prime and finish coats.
2. Material And Equipment Not To Be Painted Includes:
    a. Motors, controllers, control switches, and safety switches.
    b. Control and interlock devices.
    c. Regulators.
    d. Pressure reducing valves.
    e. Control valves and thermostatic elements.
    f. Lubrication devices and grease fittings.
    g. Copper, brass, aluminum, stainless steel and bronze surfaces.
    h. Valve stems and rotating shafts.
    i. Pressure gauges and thermometers.
    j. Glass.
    k. Name plates.
3. Control and instrument panels shall be cleaned, damaged surfaces repaired, and shall be touched-up with matching paint obtained from panel manufacturer.
4. Pumps, motors, steel and cast iron bases, and coupling guards shall be cleaned, and shall be touched-up with the same color as utilized by the pump manufacturer
5. Temporary Facilities: Apply paint to surfaces that do not have existing finish coats.
6. Paint shall withstand the following temperatures without peeling or discoloration:
    a. Condensate and feedwater -- 100 degrees F on insulation jacket surface and 250 degrees F on metal pipe surface.
    b. Steam -- 125 degrees F on insulation jacket surface and 375 degrees F on metal pipe surface.
7. Final result shall be smooth, even-colored, even-textured factory finish on all items. Completely repaint the entire piece of equipment if necessary to achieve this.

3.6 LUBRICATION

A. Lubricate all devices requiring lubrication prior to initial operation. Field-check all devices for proper lubrication.

B. Equip all devices with required lubrication fittings or devices. Provide a minimum of one quart of oil and one pound of grease of manufacturer's recommended grade and type for each different application; also provide 12 grease sticks for lubricated plug valves. Deliver all materials to Owner in unopened containers that are properly identified as to application.

C. Provide a separate grease gun with attachments for applicable fittings for each type of grease applied.

D. All lubrication points shall be accessible without disassembling equipment, except to remove access plates.

3.7 STARTUP AND FIELD ADJUSTMENT

A. Startup Service:

1. Prior to startup, ensure that systems are ready, including checking the following: Proper equipment rotation, proper wiring, auxiliary connections, lubrications, venting fan balance, controls and installed properly set relief and safety valves.
2. Start and operate all systems. Provide services of factory trained technicians for startup of major equipment and systems including boilers, fire pumps, etc.

B. Contractor shall be responsible to change or adjust belts, drives, pulleys, motors, impellers, as required by balancing company to achieve the desired air and water delivery in an energy efficient manor by all air handling equipment, fans and pumps. Refer to Section 23 05 93.

C. Start up equipment as described in equipment specifications. Verify that vibration is within specified tolerance prior to extended operation.

3.8 OPERATING AND PERFORMANCE TESTS

A. Prior to the final inspection, perform required tests as specified in Division 01 and submit the test reports and records to the Engineer.

B. Should evidence of malfunction in any tested system, or piece of equipment or component part thereof, occur during or as a result of tests, make proper corrections, repairs or replacements, and repeat tests at no additional cost.

C. When completion of certain work or system occurs at a time when final control settings and adjustments cannot be properly made to make performance tests, then make performance tests for heating systems and for cooling systems respectively during first actual seasonal use of respective systems following completion of work.

3.9 OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

A. Each Contractor shall thoroughly instruct the representative(s) of the Owner, to the complete satisfaction of the Architect, in the proper operation of all systems and equipment provided by him. Each Contractor shall make arrangements, via the Prime Contractor as to whom the instructions are to be given in the operation of the basic and auxiliary systems and the periods of time in which they are to be given.

B. The Architect shall be completely satisfied that the representative of the Owner has been thoroughly and completely instructed in the proper operation of all systems and equipment before final payment is made. If the Architect determines that complete and thorough instructions have not been given by each Contractor to the Owner's representative, then each Contractor shall be

directed by the Architect to provide whatever instructions are necessary until the intent of this paragraph of the specification has been complied with. All time required for Owner's instruction to satisfy the above requirements shall be included in this Contract. No extra compensation for such instructions will be allowed.

C. Provide operating instructions and maintenance data books for all equipment and materials furnished under this Division.

D. Maintenance instruction manuals to include complete oiling, cleaning, and servicing data compiled in clearly and easily understandable form. Show all model numbers of each piece of equipment, complete lists of replacement parts, motor ratings, and actual loads. Include for each piece of equipment the name, address, e-mail address, and phone number of service personnel.

END OF SECTION 230500

SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in HVAC equipment schedules or Sections.

B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

C. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.

1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

I. Insulation: Class F.

J. Code Letter Designation:

1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.

3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

SECTION 230514 - VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 DESCRIPTION

A. This specification is to cover a complete Variable Frequency Drive (VFD aka: VSD, AFD, ASD, Inverter, AC Drive, et al) consisting of a pulse width modulated (PWM) inverter designed for use with a standard NEMA Design B induction motor.

B. The drive manufacturer shall supply the drive and all necessary options as herein specified. The manufacturer shall have been engaged in the production of this type of equipment for a minimum of twenty years. VFDs that are manufactured by a third party and "brand labeled" shall not be acceptable. Drive manufacturers who do not build their own power boards and assemblies, or do not have full control of the power board manufacturing and quality control, shall be considered as a "brand labeled" drive. All VFDs installed on this project shall be from the same manufacturer.

1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Referenced Standards and Guidelines:
   1. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)
      a. IEEE 519-1992, Guide for Harmonic Content and Control.
   2. Underwriters Laboratories (as appropriate)
      a. UL508
      b. UL508A
      c. UL508C
   3. National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA)
      a. ICS 7.0, AC Adjustable Speed Drives
   4. International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC)
      a. EN/IEC 61800-3
   5. National Electric Code (NEC)
      a. NEC 430.120, Adjustable-Speed Drive Systems
   6. International Building Code (IBC)
      a. IBC 2012 Seismic – referencing ASC 7-05 and ICC AC-156

B. Qualifications:
   1. VFDs and options shall be UL508 listed as a complete assembly. The base VFD shall be UL labeled 100 kA RMS Symmetrical, 600V max. C
   2. CE Mark – The base VFD shall conform to the European Union Electromagnetic Compatibility directive, a requirement for CE marking. The VFD shall meet product standard EN 61800-3 for the First Environment restricted level (Category C2). Base drives that only meet the Second Environment (Category C3, C4) shall be supplied with filters to bring the drive in compliance with the First Environment levels.
   3. The entire VFD assembly, including the bypass (if specified), shall be seismically certified and labeled as such in accordance with the 2012 International Building Code (IBC):
      a. VFD manufacturer shall provide Seismic Certification and Installation requirements at time of submittal.

b. Seismic importance factor of 1.5 rating is required and shall be based upon actual shake test data as defined by ICC AC-156.
c. Seismic ratings based upon calculations alone are not acceptable. Certification of Seismic rating must be based on testing done in all three axis of motion.
d. Special seismic certification of equipment and components shall be provided by OSHPD preapproval.

4. Acceptable Manufacturers
   a. ABB ACH Series.
   b. Alternate manufacturer's requests must be submitted in writing to the Engineer for approval at least 20 working days prior to bid. Approval does not relieve the supplier of specification requirements.
5. Factory authorized start up and owner training should be provided locally upon request.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals shall include the following information:
   1. Outline dimensions, conduit entry locations and weight.
   2. Customer connection and power wiring diagrams.
   3. Complete technical product description include a complete list of options provided. Any portions of this specification not met must be clearly indicated or the supplier and contractor shall be liable to provide all additional components required to meet this specification.

1.1 BUILDING INFORMATION MODELING (BIM)

B. BIM objects shall contain IFC parameters and associated data applicable to building system requirements. These elements shall support the analytic process including size, clearance, location, mounting heights, and system information where applicable.
C. VFD BIM models shall contain as a minimum the following attributes:
   1. Input voltage
   2. Current rating
   3. Model number
   4. Manufacturer
   5. Enclosure type

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. ABB.
   2. Honeywell.
   3. Yaskawa Electric America, Inc; Drives Division.

B. The VFD package as specified herein and defined on the VFD schedule shall be enclosed in a UL Type enclosure (enclosures with only NEMA ratings are not acceptable), completely assembled and tested by the manufacturer in an ISO9001 facility.

C. The VFD shall provide full rated output from a line of ±10% of nominal voltage. The VFD shall continue to operate without faulting from a line of +30% to -35% of nominal voltage.
   1. VFDs shall be capable of continuous full load operation under the following environmental operating conditions:
      a. -15 to 40° C (5 to 104° F) ambient temperature. Operation to 50° C shall be allowed with a 10% reduction from VFD full load current.
      b. Altitude 0 to 3300 feet above sea level. Operation to 6600 shall be allowed with a 10% reduction from VFD full load current.
      c. Humidity less than 95%, non-condensing.

D. All VFDs shall have the following standard features:
   1. All circuit boards shall be coated to protect against corrosion.
   2. All VFDs shall have the same customer interface, including digital display, and keypad, regardless of horsepower rating. The keypad shall be removable, capable of remote mounting and allow for uploading and downloading of parameter settings as an aid for start-up of multiple VFDs.
   3. The keypad shall include Hand-Off-Auto selections and manual speed control. The drive shall incorporate “bumpless transfer” of speed reference when switching between “Hand” and “Auto” modes. There shall be fault reset and “Help” buttons on the keypad. The Help button shall include “on-line” assistance for programming and troubleshooting.
   4. There shall be a built-in time clock in the VFD keypad. The clock shall have a battery backup with 10 years minimum life span. The clock shall be used to date and time stamp faults and record operating parameters at the time of fault. VFD programming shall be held in non-volatile memory and is not dependent on battery power
   5. The VFD’s shall utilize pre-programmed application macros specifically designed to facilitate start-up. The Application Macros shall provide one command to reprogram all parameters and customer interfaces for a particular application to reduce programming time. The VFD shall have two user macros to allow the end-user to create and save custom settings.
   6. The VFD shall have cooling fans that are designed for easy replacement. The fans shall be designed for replacement without requiring removing the VFD from the wall or removal of circuit boards. The VFD cooling fans shall operate only when required, based on the temperature of and run command to the drive. VFD protection shall be based on thermal sensing and not cooling fan operation.
   7. The VFD shall be capable of starting into a coasting load (forward or reverse) up to full speed and accelerate or decelerate to set point without tripping or component damage (flying start).
   8. The VFD shall have the ability to automatically restart after an over-current, over-voltage, under-voltage, or loss of input signal protective trip. The number of restart attempts, trial time, and time between attempts shall be programmable.
   9. The overload rating of the drive shall be 110% of its normal duty current rating for 1 minute every 10 minutes, 130% overload for 2 seconds every minute. The minimum FLA rating shall meet or exceed the values in the NEC/UL table 430.250 for 4-pole motors.
   10. VFDs through 200 HP shall have internal swinging (non-linear) chokes providing impedance equivalent to 5% to reduce the harmonics to the power line. Swinging choke shall be required resulting in superior partial load harmonic reduction. Linear chokes are

not acceptable. 5% impedance may be from dual (positive and negative DC bus) chokes, or 5% swinging AC line chokes. VFD's with only one DC choke shall add an AC line choke.

11. The input current rating of the VFD shall not be greater than the output current rating. VFD's with higher input current ratings require the upstream wiring, protection devices, and source transformers to be oversized per NEC 430.122. Input and output current ratings must be shown on the VFD nameplate.
12. The VFD shall include a coordinated AC transient surge protection system consisting of 4 MOVs (phase to phase and phase to ground), a capacitor clamp, 1600 PIV Diode Bridge and internal chokes. The MOV's shall have a minimum 125 joule rating per phase across the diode bridge. VFDs that do not include coordinated AC transient surge protection shall include an external TVSS (Transient Voltage Surge Suppressor).
13. The VFD shall provide a programmable loss-of-load (broken belt / broken coupling) Form-C relay output. The drive shall be programmable to signal the loss-of-load condition via a keypad warning, Form-C relay output, and / or over the serial communications bus. The loss-of-load condition sensing algorithm shall include a programmable time delay that will allow for motor acceleration from zero speed without signaling a false loss-of-load condition.
14. The VFD shall include multiple "two zone" PID algorithms that allow the VFD to maintain PID control from two separate feedback signals (4-20mA, 0-10V, and / or serial communications). The two zone control PID algorithm will control motor speed based on a minimum, maximum, or average of the two feedback signals. All of the VFD PID controllers shall include the ability for "two zone" control.
15. If the input reference is lost, the VFD shall give the user the option of either (1) stopping and displaying a fault, (2) running at a programmable preset speed, (3) hold the VFD speed based on the last good reference received, or (4) cause a warning to be issued, as selected by the user. The drive shall be programmable to signal this condition via a keypad warning, Form-C relay output and / or over the serial communication bus.
16. The VFD shall have programmable "Sleep" and "Wake up" functions to allow the drive to be started and stopped from the level of a process feedback signal.

E. All VFDs to have the following adjustments:
    1. Three (3) programmable critical frequency lockout ranges to prevent the VFD from operating the load continuously at an unstable speed. The lockout range must be fully adjustable, from 0 to full speed.
    2. Two (2) PID Set point controllers shall be standard in the drive, allowing pressure or flow signals to be connected to the VFD, using the microprocessor in the VFD for the closed-loop control. The VFD shall have 250 ma of 24 VDC auxiliary power and be capable of loop powering a transmitter supplied by others. The PID set point shall be adjustable from the VFD keypad, analog inputs, or over the communications bus. There shall be two independent parameter sets for the PID controller and the capability to switch between the parameter sets via a digital input, serial communications or from the keypad. The independent parameter sets are typically used for night setback, switching between summer and winter set points, etc.
    3. There shall be an independent, second PID loop that can utilize the second analog input and modulate one of the analog outputs to maintain the set point of an independent

process (i.e. valves, dampers, etc.). All set points, process variables, etc. to be accessible from the serial communication network.

4. Two (2) programmable analog inputs shall accept current or voltage signals.
5. Two (2) programmable analog outputs (0-20ma or 4-20 ma). The outputs may be programmed to output proportional to Frequency, Motor Speed, Output Voltage, Output Current, Motor Torque, Motor Power (kW), DC Bus voltage, Active Reference, Active Feedback, and other data.
6. Six (6) programmable digital inputs for maximum flexibility in interfacing with external devices. All digital inputs shall be programmable to initiate upon an application or removal of 24VDC.
7. Three (3) programmable, digital Form-C relay outputs. The relay outputs shall include programmable on and off delay times and adjustable hysteresis. The relays shall be rated for maximum switching current 8 amps at 24 VDC and 0.4 A at 250 VAC; Maximum voltage 300 VDC and 250 VAC; continuous current rating of 2 amps RMS. Outputs shall be true Form-C type contacts; open collector outputs are not acceptable. Drives that have only two (2) relay outputs must provide an option card that provides additional relay outputs.
8. Run permissive circuit - There shall be a run permissive circuit for damper or valve control. Regardless of the source of a run command (keypad, input contact closure, time-clock control, or serial communications), the VFD shall provide a dry contact closure that will signal the damper to open (VFD motor does not operate). When the damper is fully open, a normally open dry contact (end-switch) shall close. The closed end-switch is wired to a VFD digital input and allows VFD motor operation. Two separate safety interlock inputs shall be provided. When either safety is opened, the motor shall be commanded to coast to stop and the damper shall be commanded to close. The keypad shall display “start enable 1 (or 2) missing”. The safety input status shall also be transmitted over the serial communications bus.
9. The VFD control shall include a programmable time delay for VFD start and a keypad indication that this time delay is active. A Form C relay output provides a contact closure to signal the VAV boxes open. This will allow VAV boxes to be driven open before the motor operates. The time delay shall be field programmable from 0 – 120 seconds. Start delay shall be active regardless of the start command source (keypad command, input contact closure, time-clock control, or serial communications), and when switching from drive to bypass.
10. Seven (7) programmable preset speeds.
11. Two independently adjustable accel and decel ramps with 1 – 1800 seconds adjustable time ramps.
12. The VFD shall include a motor flux optimization circuit that will automatically reduce applied motor voltage to the motor to optimize energy consumption and reduce audible motor noise. The VFD shall have selectable software for optimization of motor noise, energy consumption, and motor speed control.
13. The VFD shall include a carrier frequency control circuit that reduces the carrier frequency based on actual VFD temperature that allows higher carrier frequency settings without derating the VFD.
14. The VFD shall include password protection against parameter changes.

F. The Keypad shall include a backlit LCD display. The display shall be in complete English words for programming and fault diagnostics (alpha-numeric codes are not acceptable). All VFD faults shall be displayed in English words. The keypad shall include a minimum of 14 assistants including:
   1. Start-up assistant
   2. Parameter assistants
      a. PID assistant
      b. Reference assistant
      c. I/O assistant
      d. Serial communications assistant
      e. Option module assistant
      f. Panel display assistant
      g. Low noise set-up assistant
   3. Maintenance assistant
   4. Troubleshooting assistant
   5. Drive optimizer assistants

G. All applicable operating values shall be capable of being displayed in engineering (user) units. A minimum of three operating values from the list below shall be capable of being displayed at all times. The display shall be in complete English words (alpha-numeric codes are not acceptable):
   1. Output Frequency
   2. Motor Speed (RPM, %, or Engineering units)
   3. Motor Current
   4. Motor Torque
   5. Motor Power (kW)
   6. DC Bus Voltage
   7. Output Voltage

H. The VFD shall include a fireman's override input. Upon receipt of a contact closure from the fire / smoke control station, the VFD shall operate in one of two modes: 1) Operate at a programmed predetermined fixed speed ranging from -500Hz (reverse) to 500Hz (forward). 2) Operate in a specific fireman's override PID algorithm that automatically adjusts motor speed based on override set point and feedback. The mode shall override all other inputs (analog/digital, serial communication, and all keypad commands), except customer defined safety run interlocks, and force the motor to run in one of the two modes above. "Override Mode" shall be displayed on the keypad. Upon removal of the override signal, the VFD shall resume normal operation, without the need to cycle the normal digital input run command.

I. Serial Communications
   1. The VFD shall have an EIA-485 port as standard. The standard protocols shall be Modbus, Johnson Controls N2, Siemens Building Technologies FLN, and BACnet. [Optional protocols for LonWorks, Profibus, EtherNet, BACnet IP, and DeviceNet shall be available.] Each individual drive shall have the protocol in the base VFD. The use of third party gateways and multiplexers is not acceptable. All protocols shall be "certified" by the governing authority (i.e. BTL Listing for BACnet). Use of non-certified protocols is not allowed.
   2. The BACnet connection shall be an EIA-485, MS/TP interface operating at 9.6, 19.2, 38.4, or 76.8 Kbps. The connection shall be tested by the BACnet Testing Labs (BTL)

and be BTL Listed. The BACnet interface shall conform to the BACnet standard device type of an Applications Specific Controller (B-ASC). The interface shall support all BIBBs defined by the BACnet standard profile for a B-ASC including, but not limited to:

a. Data Sharing – Read Property – B.
b. Data Sharing – Write Property – B.
c. Device Management – Dynamic Device Binding (Who-Is; I-Am).
d. Device Management – Dynamic Object Binding (Who-Has; I-Have).
e. Device Management – Communication Control – B.

3. Serial communication capabilities shall include, but not be limited to; run-stop controls, speed set adjustment, and lock and unlock the keypad. The drive shall have the capability of allowing the BAS to monitor feedback such as process variable feedback, output speed / frequency, current (in amps), % torque, power (kW), kilowatt hours (resettable), operating hours (resettable), and drive temperature. The BAS shall also be capable of monitoring the VFD relay output status, digital input status, and all analog input and analog output values. All diagnostic warning and fault information shall be transmitted over the serial communications bus. Remote VFD fault reset shall be possible.
4. Serial communication in bypass (if bypass is specified) shall include, but not be limited to; bypass run-stop control, the ability to force the unit to bypass, and the ability to lock and unlock the keypad. The bypass shall have the capability of allowing the BAS to monitor feedback such as, current (in amps), kilowatt hours (resettable), operating hours (resettable), and bypass logic board temperature. The BAS shall also be capable of monitoring the bypass relay output status, and all digital input status. All bypass diagnostic warning and fault information shall be transmitted over the serial communications bus. Remote bypass fault reset shall be possible.
5. The VFD / bypass shall allow the BAS to control the drive and bypass digital and analog outputs via the serial interface. This control shall be independent of any VFD function. The analog outputs may be used for modulating chilled water valves or cooling tower bypass valves. The drive and bypass' digital (Form-C relay) outputs may be used to actuate a damper, open a valve or control any other device that requires a maintained contact for operation. In addition, all of the drive and bypass' digital inputs shall be capable of being monitored by the BAS system. This allows for remote monitoring of which (of up to 4) safeties are open.
6. The VFD shall include an independent PID loop for customer use. The independent PID loop may be used for cooling tower bypass value control, chilled water value / hot water valve control, etc. Both the VFD PID control loop and the independent PID control loop shall continue functioning even if the serial communications connection is lost. As default, the VFD shall keep the last good set point command and last good DO & AO commands in memory in the event the serial communications connection is lost and continue controlling the process.

J. EMI / RFI filters. All VFD's shall include EMI/RFI filters. The onboard filters shall allow the VFD assembly to be CE Marked and the VFD shall meet product standard EN 61800-3 for the First Environment restricted level (Category C2) with up to 100 feet of motor cable. Second environment (Category C3, C4) is not acceptable, no Exceptions. Certified test reports shall be provided with the submittals confirming compliance to EN 61800-3, First Environment (C2).

K. DRIVE OPTIONS – Options shall be furnished and mounted by the drive manufacturer as defined on the VFD schedule. All optional features shall be UL Listed by the drive manufacturer as a complete assembly and carry a UL508 label.
   1. Circuit Breaker - Door interlocked padlockable circuit breaker that will disconnect all input power from the drive and all internally mounted options. Circuit breaker option shall be available with or without systems requiring bypass.
   2. Disconnect Switch with Fuses - Door interlocked, padlockable disconnect switch that will disconnect all input power from the drive and all internally mounted options. Drive input fusing is included.
   3. Fieldbus adapters – The following optional fieldbus adapters shall be available as a plug in modules.
      a. LonWorks
      b. DeviceNet
      c. Ethernet IP
         1) ControlNet over Ethernet & ModBus TCP
      d. BACnet IP
      e. Profibus

L. BYPASS – Bypasses shall be furnished and mounted by the drive manufacturer as defined on the VFD schedule. All VFD with bypass configurations shall be UL Listed by the drive manufacturer as a complete assembly and carry a UL508 label.
   1. A complete factory wired and tested bypass system consisting of a door interlocked, padlockable circuit breaker, output contactor, bypass contactor, and fast acting VFD input fuses. UL Listed motor overload protection shall be provided in both drive and bypass modes.
   2. The bypass enclosure door and VFD enclosure must be mechanically interlocked such that the disconnecting device must be in the “Off” position before either enclosure may be accessed.
   3. The VFD and bypass package shall have a UL listed short circuit current rating (SCCR) of 100,000 Amps and this rating shall be indicated on the UL data label.
   4. The drive and bypass package shall be seismic certified and labeled to the IBC:
      a. Seismic importance factor of 1.5 rating is required, and shall be based upon actual shake table test data as defined by ICC AC-156.
      b. Special seismic certification of equipment and components shall be provided by OSHPD preapproval.
   5. Drive Isolation Fuses - To ensure maximum availability of bypass operation, fast acting fuses, exclusive to the VFD, shall be provided to allow the VFD to disconnect from the line prior to clearing upstream branch circuit protection. This maintains bypass operation capability in the event of a VFD failure. Bypass designs which have no such fuses, or that incorporate fuses common to both the VFD and the bypass, will not be accepted. Third contactor “isolation contactors” are not an acceptable alternative to fuses, as contactors could weld closed and are not an NEC recognized disconnecting device.
   6. The bypass shall maintain positive contactor control through the voltage tolerance window of nominal voltage +30%, -35%. This feature is designed to avoid contactor coil failure during brown out / low line conditions and allow for input single phase operation when in the VFD mode. Designs that will not allow input single phase operation in the VFD mode are not acceptable.

7. Motor protection from single phase power conditions - the bypass system must be able to detect a single phase input power condition while running in bypass, disengage the motor in a controlled fashion, and give a single phase input power indication. Bypass systems not incorporating single phase protection in bypass mode are not acceptable.
8. The bypass system shall be designed for stand-alone operation and shall be completely functional in both Hand and Automatic modes even if the VFD has been removed from the system for repair / replacement. Serial communications shall remain functional even with the VFD removed. Bypass systems that do not maintain full functionality with the drive removed are not acceptable.
9. Serial communications – the bypass shall be capable of being monitored and / or controlled via serial communications. On-board communications protocols shall include ModBus RTU; Johnson Controls N2; Siemens Building Technologies FLN (P1); and BACnet MS/TP.
    a. Serial communication capabilities shall include, but not be limited to: bypass run-stop control, the ability to force the unit to bypass, and the ability to lock and unlock the keypad. The bypass shall have the capability of allowing the BAS to monitor feedback such as, current (Amps), kilowatt hours (resettable), operating hours (resettable), and bypass logic board temperature. The BAS shall also be capable of monitoring the bypass relay output status, and all digital input status. All bypass diagnostic warning and fault information shall be transmitted over the serial communications bus. Remote bypass fault reset shall be possible. The following additional status indications and settings shall be transmitted over the serial communications bus and / or via a Form-C relay output – keypad “Hand” or “Auto” selected, bypass selected, and broken belt indication. The BAS system shall also be able to monitor if the motor is running in the VFD mode or bypass mode over serial communications. A minimum of 50 field serial communications points shall be capable of being monitored in the bypass mode.
    b. The bypass serial communications shall allow control of the drive/bypass (system) digital outputs via the serial interface. This control shall be independent of any bypass function or operating state. The system digital (relay) outputs may be used to actuate a damper, open a valve or control any other device that requires a maintained contact for operation. All system analog and digital I/O shall be capable of being monitored by the BAS system.
10. There shall be an adjustable motor current sensing circuit for the bypass and VFD modes to provide proof of flow (broken belt) indication. The condition shall be indicated on the keypad display, transmitted over the BAS and / or via a Form-C relay output contact closure. The broken belt indication shall be programmable to be a system (drive and bypass) indication. The broken belt condition sensing algorithm shall be programmable to cause a warning or system shutdown.
11. The digital inputs for the system shall accept 24VDC. The bypass shall incorporate an internally sourced power supply and not require an external control power source. The bypass power board shall supply 250 mA of 24 VDC for use by others to power external devices.
12. There shall be a coordinated run permissive circuit for damper or valve control. Regardless of the source of a run command (keypad command, time-clock control, digital input, or serial communications) the bypass shall provide a dry contact closure that will

signal the damper to open before the motor can run. When the damper is fully open, a normally open dry contact (end-switch) shall close. The closed end-switch is wired to a bypass system input and allows motor operation. Up to four separate safety interlock inputs shall be provided. When any safety is opened, the motor shall be commanded to coast to stop, and the damper shall be commanded to close. This feature will also operate in Fireman's override / smoke control mode.

13. The bypass control shall monitor the status of the VFD and bypass contactors and indicate when there is a welded contactor contact or open contactor coil. This failed contactor condition shall be indicated on the bypass LCD display, programmed to activate a Form-C relay output, and / or over the serial communications protocol.
14. The bypass control shall include a programmable time delay bypass start including keypad indication of the time delay. A Form C relay output commands the VAV boxes open. This will allow VAV boxes to be driven open before the motor operates at full speed in the bypass mode. The time delay shall be field programmable from 0 – 120 seconds.
15. There shall be a keypad adjustment to select manual or automatic transfer to bypass. The user shall be able to select via keypad programming which drive faults will result in an automatic transfer to bypass mode and which faults require a manual transfer to bypass. The user may select whether the system shall automatically transfer from drive to bypass mode on the following drive fault conditions:
    a. Over current
    b. Over voltage
    c. Under voltage
    d. Loss of analog input
16. The following operators shall be provided:
    a. Bypass Hand-Off-Auto
    b. Drive mode selector
    c. Bypass mode selector
    d. Bypass fault reset
17. The bypass shall include the ability to select the operating mode of the system (VFD/Bypass) from either the bypass keypad or digital input.
18. The bypass shall include a two line, 20 character LCD display. The display shall allow the user to access and view:
    a. Energy savings – in US dollars
    b. Bypass motor amps
    c. Bypass input voltage– average and individual phase voltage
    d. Bypass power (kW)
    e. Bypass faults and fault logs
    f. Bypass warnings
    g. Bypass operating time (resettable)
    h. Bypass energy (kilowatt hours – resettable)
    i. I/O status
    j. Parameter settings / programming
    k. Printed circuit board temperature
19. The following indicating lights (LED type) or keypad display indications shall be provided. A test mode or push to test feature shall be provided.

a. Power-on (Ready)
b. Run enable
c. Drive mode selected
d. Bypass mode selected
e. Drive running
f. Bypass running
g. Drive fault
h. Bypass fault
i. Bypass H-O-A mode
j. Automatic transfer to bypass selected
k. Safety open
l. Damper opening
m. Damper end-switch made

20. The Bypass controller shall have six programmable digital inputs, and five programmable Form-C relay outputs. This I/O allows for a total System (VFD and Bypass) I/O count of 24 points as standard. The bypass I/O shall be available to the BAS system even with the VFD removed.
21. The on-board Form-C relay outputs in the bypass shall programmable for any of the following indications.
    a. System started
    b. System running
    c. Bypass override enabled
    d. Drive fault
    e. Bypass fault
    f. Bypass H-O-A position
    g. Motor proof-of-flow (broken belt)
    h. Overload
    i. Bypass selected
    j. Bypass run
    k. System started (damper opening)
    l. Bypass alarm
    m. Over temperature
22. The bypass shall provide a separate terminal strip for connection of freeze, fire, smoke contacts, and external start command. All external safety interlocks shall remain fully functional whether the system is in VFD or Bypass mode. The remote start/stop contact shall operate in VFD and bypass modes. The terminal strip shall allow for independent connection of up to four (4) unique safety inputs.
23. The bypass shall include a supervisory control mode. In this bypass mode, the bypass shall monitor the value of the VFD's analog input (feedback). This feedback value is used to control the bypass contactor on and off state. The supervisory mode shall allow the user to maintain hysteresis control over applications such as cooling towers and booster pumps.
24. The user shall be able to select the text to be displayed on the keypad when an external safety opens. Example text display indications include "FireStat", "FreezStat", "Over pressure" and "Low suction". The user shall also be able to determine which of the four (4) safety contacts is open over the serial communications connection.

25. Smoke Control Override Mode (Override 1) – The bypass shall include a dedicated digital input that will transfer the motor from VFD mode to Bypass mode upon receipt of a dry contact closure from the Fire / Smoke Control System. The Smoke Control Override Mode action is not programmable and will always function as described in the bypass User's Manual documentation. In this mode, the system will ignore low priority safeties and acknowledge high priority safeties. All keypad control, serial communications control, and normal customer start / stop control inputs will be disregarded. This Smoke Control Mode shall be designed to meet the intent of UL864/UUKL.
26. Fireman's Override Mode (Override 2) – the bypass shall include a second, programmable override input which will allow the user to configure the unit to acknowledge some digital inputs, all digital inputs, ignore digital inputs or any combination of the above. This programmability allows the user to program the bypass unit to react in whatever manner the local Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) requires. The Override 2 action may be programmed for "Run-to-Destruction". The user may also force the unit into Override 2 via the serial communications link.
27. Class 10, 20, or 30 (programmable) electronic motor overload protection shall be included.
28. Drive Service Switch – Drive service switches shall be furnished and mounted by the drive manufacturer as defined on the VFD schedule. VFD/Bypass configurations that utilize contactors as a means to remove VFD input power for the purpose of VFD servicing are not acceptable. NEC Code does not recognize a contactor as a means of disconnect in a motor control circuit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Installation shall be the responsibility of the mechanical contractor. The contractor shall install the drive in accordance with the recommendations of the VFD manufacturer as outlined in the VFD installation manual.

B. Power wiring shall be completed by the electrical contractor, to NEC code 430.122 wiring requirements based on the VFD input current. The contractor shall complete all wiring in accordance with the recommendations of the VFD manufacturer as outlined in the installation manual.

3.02 START-UP

A. Factory start-up shall be provided for each drive by a factory authorized service center. A start-up form shall be filled out for each drive with a copy provided to the owner, and a copy kept on file at the manufacturer.

3.03 PRODUCT SUPPORT

A. Factory trained application engineering and service personnel that are thoroughly familiar with the VFD products offered shall be locally available at both the specifying and installation locations. A toll free 24/365 technical support line connected to factory support personnel located in the US shall be available. Technical support offered only through the local sales office is not acceptable.

B. Training shall include installation, programming and operation of the VFD, bypass and serial communication. Factory authorized start up and owner training to be provided locally upon request.

3.04 WARRANTY

A. PROPOSED: The VFD Product Warranty shall be 36 months from the date of factory shipment. The warranty shall include all parts, labor, travel time and expenses. A toll free 24/365 technical support line shall be available.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
2. Duct-thermometer mounting brackets.
3. Thermowells.
4. Dial-type pressure gages.
5. Gage attachments.
6. Test plugs.
7. Test-plug kits.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include product application schedule.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Trerice, H.O. Co

b. Weiss Instruments, Inc
c. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
d. Winters Instruments – U.S.

2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Cast aluminum; 9-inch nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
4. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
7. Window: Glass.
8. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.

a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

9. Connector: 1-1/4 inches, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.2 DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS

A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

2.3 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Trerice, H.O. Co
b. Weiss Instruments, Inc
c. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
d. Winters Instruments – U.S.

2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.
4. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: Brass.
5. Material for Use with Steel Piping: Stainless steel.
6. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
7. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
8. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
9. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
11. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.

12. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.4 DIAL-TYPE PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Trerice, H.O. Co
   b. Weiss Instruments, Inc
   c. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
   d. Winters Instruments – U.S.

2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Liquid-filled type(s); stainless steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass or plastic.
10. Ring: Stainless steel.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.5 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

A. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of brass or stainless-steel pipe with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 pipe threads.

B. Valves: Brass ball, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.6 TEST PLUGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Trerice, H.O. Co
2. Weiss Instruments, Inc
3. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
4. Winters Instruments – U.S.

B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.

C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.

D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.

E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.

F. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.7 TEST-PLUG KITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Trerice, H.O. Co
2. Weiss Instruments, Inc
3. Weksler Glass Thermometer Corp.
4. Winters Instruments – U.S.

B. Furnish **one** test-plug kit containing **two** thermometers, one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.

C. Low-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 25 to 125 deg F.

D. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.

E. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.

F. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install thermowells with socket extending to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.

B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.

C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.

D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.

E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.

G. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.

H. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.

I. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.

J. Install valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.

K. Install valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for steam.

L. Install test plugs in piping tees.

M. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.

N. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.

O. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.

P. Install wafer-orifice flowmeter elements between pipe flanges.

Q. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements, with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and downstream from element according to manufacturer's written instructions.

R. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.

S. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.

T. Mount thermal-energy meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.

U. Install thermometers in the following locations:

1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
2. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.

V. Install pressure gages in the following locations:

1. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
2. Suction and discharge of each pump.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow space for service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

B. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.

C. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.

D. Connect thermal-energy meter transmitters to meters.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F and minus 20 to plus 50 deg C.

B. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C.

C. Scale Range for Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 110 deg F and minus 40 to plus 45 deg C.

3.5 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi.

B. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi.

END OF SECTION 230519

SECTION 230523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Ball valves.
2. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
3. High-performance butterfly valves.
4. Check valves.
5. Chainwheels.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section “Hydronic Piping Specialties” for hydronic specialty valves including calibrated-orifice, balancing valves.
2. Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.

C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

D. NRS: Nonrising stem.

E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.

F. RS: Rising stem.

G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

B. Valve Schedule: Indicate system, size, service, and model number for each valve.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.

B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

D. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.

2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
3. Hand lever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller except plug valves.
4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.

E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:

1. Gate Valves: With rising stem.
2. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
3. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

F. Valve-End Connections:

1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BALL VALVES

A. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
b. Hammond Valve.
c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
d. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
d. Body Design: Three piece.
e. Body Material: Bronze.
f. Ends: Threaded.
g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
h. Stem: Stainless steel.
i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
j. Port: Full.

2.3 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. American Valve, Inc.
b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group.
d. DeZurik Water Controls.
e. Flo Fab Inc.
f. Hammond Valve.
g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
h. NIBCO INC.
i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
e. Seat: EPDM.
f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
g. Disc: Stainless steel.

2.4 HIGH-PERFORMANCE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Class 300, Single-Flange, High-Performance Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Bray Controls; a division of Bray International.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Flowseal.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
d. NIBCO INC.
e. Tyco Valves & Controls; a unit of Tyco Flow Control.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-68.
b. CWP Rating: 720 psig at 100 deg F.
c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
d. Body Material: Carbon steel, cast iron, or ductile iron.

e. Seat: Reinforced PTFE or metal.
f. Stem: Stainless steel; offset from seat plane.
g. Disc: Carbon steel.
h. Service: Bidirectional.

2.5 CHECK VALVES

A. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. American Valve, Inc.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
e. Kitz Corporation.
f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
g. NIBCO INC.
h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
i. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded.
f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
d. Hammond Valve.
e. Kitz Corporation.
f. Legend Valve.
g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
h. NIBCO INC.
i. Powell Valves.
j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
k. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
m. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
f. Ends: Flanged.
g. Trim: Bronze.
h. Gasket: Asbestos free.

C. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Anvil International, Inc.
b. APCO Willamette Valve and Primer Corporation.
c. Crispin Valve.
d. DFT Inc.
e. Flo Fab Inc.
f. GA Industries, Inc.
g. Hammond Valve.
h. Metraflex, Inc.
i. Milwaukee Valve Company.
j. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
k. NIBCO INC.
l. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International.
m. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
n. Val-Matic Valve & Manufacturing Corp.
o. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
e. Style: Compact wafer.
f. Seat: Bronze.

2.6 CHAINWHEELS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Babbitt Steam Specialty Co.
2. Roto Hammer Industries.
3. Trumbull Industries.

B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.

1. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
2. Attachment: For connection to valve stems.
3. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron, of type and size required for valve.
4. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install chainwheels on operators for valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.

F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:

1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
2. Center-Guided Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. General applications:
   1. Balancing: Calibrated-orifice, balancing valves (refer to Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping Specialties").
   2. Manual Drains: Ball valves.
   3. Dead-End: Single-flange butterfly valves
   4. Building-Level Hydronic System Isolation: High performance butterfly valves.

B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. Install shutoff valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.

D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.

E. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:

   1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
   2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
   3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
   4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
   5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
   6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.5 VALVE SCHEDULE

System	Pipe Diameter (in)	Shutoff Service	Check Valve Service
Heating Hot Water	2 and below	Ball	45 deg Swing Check
	2-1/2 and above	Butterfly	Center-Guided
Chilled Water	2 and below	Ball	45 deg Swing Check
	2-1/2 and above	Butterfly	Center-Guided

END OF SECTION 230523

SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Pipe stands.
7. Equipment supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation devices.
2. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Metal framing systems.
3. Pipe stands.
4. Equipment supports.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.

3. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
4. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
6. Coating: Zinc.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.

B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.

C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless-steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.6 PIPE STANDS

A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.

B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Base: Stainless steel.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

E. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Pipe Stand Installation:

1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.

G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

N. Insulated Piping:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.

   a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
   b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
   c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.

   a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.

   a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

   a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
   b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
   c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
   d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
   e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.

5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers, and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.

F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and fiberglass pipe hangers and fiberglass strut systems and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.

G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.

H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.

20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:

a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.

13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:

a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.

P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

SECTION 23 05 33 - ELECTRIC HEAT TRACING

GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE

A. These requirements cover electric heat tracing for commercial and industrial applications as applied to piping and equipment. Heat tracing cables, including all auxiliary equipment required for a complete heating system, are intended for installations as specified by the manufacturer, as indicated in the drawings and as directed by the Engineer.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

A. The Contract Documents are complementary; what is called for by one is as binding as if called for by all.

B. It is the Contractor’s responsibility for scheduling and coordinating the Work awarded with other contractors, subcontractors, suppliers, and other individuals or entities performing and/or furnishing any portion of this Contractor’s Work so as to provide a complete operating system.

C. The following Sections are related to the Work described in this Section. This list of Related Sections is provided for convenience only and is not intended to excuse or otherwise diminish the duty of the Contractor to see that the completed Work complies accurately with the Contract Documents.
   1. Section 26 05 00 – Common Work Results for Electrical.
   2. Section 26 05 19 – Low Voltage Conductors and Cables.
   3. Section 26 05 26 – Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE)
   1. Standard for the Testing, Design, Installation, and Maintenance of Electrical Resistance Heat Tracing for Industrial Applications, IEEE 515
   2. Recommended Practice for the Testing, Design, Installation, and Maintenance of Electrical Resistance Heat Tracing for Commercial Applications, IEEE 515.1.

B. National Electrical Code (NEC) & (ANSI/NFPA 70)

C. National Electrical Manufacturers' Association (NEMA).

D. National Electrical Safety Code (NESC).

E. Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. (UL).

1.04 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Product data:
   1. Product cut-sheets containing make and catalog/part number, wattage output, voltage rating.
   2. Installation Instructions.
   3. Operation Manual
   4. Warranty.

B. Shop drawings: Include isometric drawings for each heat traced pipe showing installation details, and size and type of heat tracing cable.

C. Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1.06 DELIVERY

A. Equipment shall be handled and stored in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. One (1) copy of these instructions shall be included with the equipment at time of shipment.

B. Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01 60 00 – Product Requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. Provide a low temperature, self-regulating type heating system for all pipes, vessels and equipment indicated in the drawing that will maintain its fluid temperatures from freezing when the ambient temperature drops below 0º C or the fluids critical low temperature point.

B. Design for a useful life of 20 years or more with "power on" continuously.
   1. The criteria for life shall be to retain at least 75 percent of its original power when tested according to UL 746B.
   2. Aluminum bonding tape.

2.02 HEAT TRACING CABLE

A. Heat trace cable system shall be the "Nelson Heat Trace" as manufactured by Emerson or approved equal.

B. Self-regulating heating cable shall vary its heat output relative to the temperature of the surface of the pipe or the tank allowing cable to be crossed over itself without overheating and to be cut to length in the field.

C. Type: Self-regulating and self-limiting, 5 watts per foot, 120 volts, 60 hertz, multi-stranded tin-plated twin copper bus wires, with copper metal braid and UV stabilized thermoplastic elastomer overjacket for wet applications.

D. The heater cable assembly shall have a monolithic heating core construction consisting of two parallel nickel-plated copper bus conductors with a minimum conductor size of 16

AWG and a semi conductive PTC polymer extruded over and between these parallel conductors. A polyethylene dielectric insulating jacket is extruded over the heating element core.

E. The cable assembly shall be covered with a chemical and corrosion resistant overjacket of thermoplastic elastomer.

F. Contractor shall determine the quantities for the components and the sizes of the breaker(s) for this particular application as required and recommended per manufacturer, subject to Engineer acceptance, for complete operable system at no additional cost to the Owner. Provide manufacturer approved:
1. Power connection kits.
2. Junction box(es).
3. Inline and Tee Splice kits.
4. End seal kits.
5. Protection and control devices.

2.03 CONNECTIONS AND SPLICES

A. Heat trace connection, end, splice, and tee kits shall be designed to meet or exceed the life of the heat trace and shall be given equal consideration and evaluation.

B. Provide watertight, flexible equipment such as wiring, conduits, junction boxes, circuit protection and any other electrical components as required.

C. A ground-fault protection device set at 30 mA, with a nominal 100-ms response time, shall be used to protect each circuit.

2.04 INSULATION

A. Provide ASTM approved insulating blankets and wraps for all pipes and vessels located outdoors and below ground down six (6) inches past the frost-line with minimum one inch thick insulating material of the following characteristics:
1. Ultraviolet resistant/stabilized.
2. Moisture absorption resistant.
3. Wet locations.
4. Mold and mildew resistant.

B. In piping and equipment systems specified to be heat traced and insulated, provide access to all valves, strainers, filters, equipment and access openings, requiring inspecting and servicing, by use of a removable or hinged insulating panel.

C. Insulating Jackets, Type 2:
1. Material: Ultraviolet resistant polyvinyl chloride jacketing, 20 mil minimum thickness.
2. Fire Rating: 25 maximum flame spread, smoke developed 50 or less.
3. Color: White or as specified in drawings or directed by engineer.
4. Overlap: One-inch minimum at joints and fittings.
5. Joint Seal: PVC solvent welded or adhesive as recommended by the manufacturer.
6. Fittings: Factory made with full thickness insulation.
7. Manufacturers: One of the following or equal:

a. Johns Manville, Zeston 2000 PVC.
b. Proto Corp., LoSMOKE PVC.
c. Speedline Smoke Safe PVC Jacketing System.

D. Cover Adhesive: Premium adhesive as recommended by the insulation cover supplier for heavy-duty service in corrosive, wet environments. Standard duty adhesives are not permitted.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 HEAT TRACE CABLE INSTALLATION

A. Install heat tracing cable on exterior, underground and interior of exposed piping systems subject to freezing as indicated on the drawings and as directed by Engineer.

B. Apply aluminum foil tape on plastic pipe to avoid overheating areas of the plastic pipe in contact with the heating cable and to aid overall heat transfer from heating cable to the entire pipe surface.

C. Wrap heat-tracing cable with fiberglass or aluminum tape prior to installing approved insulation.

D. After attaching heating cables to pipe, test cables for insulation resistance to ground in accordance with the NEC. Where leakage is detected, replace cable and retest.

E. Install electric traced warning labels every 10 feet on the exterior of the pipe insulation.

F. Design system so that heating cables will be thermally de-energized when the pipeline temperature rises above 40 degrees F or as indicated in the drawings or as directed by the Engineer.

G. Install heat trace system in accordance with manufacturer's published installation instructions.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Installing Contractor shall fully inspect shipments for damage and report damage to manufacturer and file claim upon shipper, if necessary.

B. Contractor shall ensure that all circuit protective devices, such as GFCI’s & AFCI’s, are in place and are properly sized in accordance with all applicable codes and manufacturer’s instructions for each heat trace and heating panel system.

C. Manufacturer's field service:
1. Inspect installed systems for proper installation.
2. Instruct Owner’s personnel on operations and maintenance of the systems.

3.03 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Secure and test piping and equipment before application of heating system.

B. On equipment to be heated, install and functionally test heating devices before installation of insulation.

C. Before beginning installation of piping insulation, verify that the Engineer has accepted piping tests, coating applications, and heat tracing tests.

END OF SECTION 230533

SECTION 230548 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Open-spring isolators.
4. Restrained-spring isolators.
5. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
6. Resilient pipe guides.
7. Elastomeric hangers.
8. Spring hangers.
9. Mechanical anchor bolts.
10. Adhesive anchor bolts.
11. Vibration isolation equipment bases.
12. Restrained isolation roof-curb rails.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. IBC: International Building Code.

B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Wind-Restraint Loading:
1. Basic Wind Speed: **98 mph**.
2. Wind Importance Factor **1.15**.
3. Wind Exposure Category: **C**.
4. Building Classification Category: **III**.
5. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. multiplied by maximum area of HVAC component projected on vertical plane normal to wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.

B. Seismic Criteria:
1. Design Category: **B**

2. Risk Category: **III**
3. Seismic Importance: **1.25**
4. Site Class: **D**.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device and seismic-restraint component required.

    a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an **agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction**.
    b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.

3. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation, seismic-restraint and wind-restraint device.

1. Include design calculations and details for selecting vibration isolators, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation bases complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight, operation, **and wind** forces required to select vibration isolators **and wind** restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

    a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.

3. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.

4. **Wind**-Restraint Details:

   a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of **wind** restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
   b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
   c. Coordinate vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.

D. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation and seismic bracing for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.

E. Welding certificates.

F. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7 and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.

C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are unavailable, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. Greenheck

b. Mason Industries
c. Kinetic Noise Control, Inc
d. Novia, a division of Carpenter & Paterson

2. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent excessive movement due to wind loads.

a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
b. Top plate with **threaded mounting holes**.
c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.

3. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment to provide wind restraint.
4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.2 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

A. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of two steel tubes separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- thick neoprene.

1. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
2. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psigon isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

2.3 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

A. Description: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- thick neoprene.

1. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

2.4 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
a. Mason Industries
b. Kinetic Noise Control, Inc
c. Novia, a division of Carpenter & Paterson

2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

2.5 SPRING HANGERS

A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   a. Mason Industries
   b. Kinetic Noise Control, Inc
   c. Novia, a division of Carpenter & Paterson
2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
9. Self-centering hanger-rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

2.6 MECHANICAL ANCHOR BOLTS

A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
1. Eaton (B line)
2. Hilti
3. Mason Industries

B. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.7 ADHESIVE ANCHOR BOLTS

A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
1. Eaton (B line)
2. Hilti

3. Mason Industries

B. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.8 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
1. Greenheck (Basis of Design)
2. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc
3. Mason Industries, Inc
4. Novia, a division of Carpenter & Paterson

B. Steel Rails: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel rails.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide rails.

   a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.

2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Rails shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.

C. Steel Bases: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails with cross members to form an integral support platform.

1. Design Requirements: Structural steel members shall be designed to match supported equipment and shall have enough rigidity to resist all starting and operating forces without supplemental hold-down devices. Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.

   a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.

   b. Vibration bases for fans shall have adjustable motor slide rails, and shall accommodate motor overhang.

2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
   a. Bases for exterior use shall be painted or hot-dipped galvanized for complete corrosion resistance.
3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.

D. Spring Isolators for Vibration Isolation: provide with appropriately selected restrained spring isolators for exterior application to withstand wind loads and provide 90% dampening efficiency to securely attach the equipment base to the roof structure. Refer to Section 2.2 above for more requirements.

2.9 RESTRAINED ISOLATION ROOF-CURB RAILS

A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   1. Greenheck (Basis of Design)
   2. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc
   3. Mason Industries, Inc
   4. Novia, a division of Carpenter & Paterson

B. Description: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment and to withstand **wind** forces.

C. Upper Frame: The upper frame shall provide continuous support for equipment and shall be captive to resiliently resist **wind** forces.

D. Lower Support Assembly: The lower support assembly shall be formed sheet metal section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support the upper frame. The lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials, and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches of rigid, glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly. Adjustable, restrained-spring isolators shall be mounted on elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.

E. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and **wind**-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by **an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction**.

B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.

C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 VIBRATION CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in **Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."**

B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

C. Comply with requirements in **Section 077200 "Roof Accessories"** for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

D. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

E. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

G. Drilled-in Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.

5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: **Engage** a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
4. Test at least five (5) of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
7. Measure isolator deflection.
8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
9. Test and adjust restrained-air-spring isolator controls and safeties.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.

B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

END OF SECTION 230548

SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Pipe labels.
3. Duct labels.
4. Valve tags.
5. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

D. Valve numbering scheme.

E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White.
3. Background Color: Black.

4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White.
3. Background Color: Black.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Letter Color: White.

C. Background Color: Red.

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.

G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping. At least 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

2.4 DUCT LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Letter Color: Refer to **section 3.5**.

C. Background Color: Refer to **section 3.5**.

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater

viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.

G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include duct size and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain or beaded chain or S-hook.

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.

1. Size: Approximately 4 by 7 inches.
2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Color: Red background with white lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

B. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Chilled-Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background

2. Heating Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.

D. DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

E. Install plastic-laminated duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:

1. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
3. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.

F. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:

1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:

a. All services: 2 inches, round.

2. Valve-Tag Colors:

a. All services: Natural

3. Letter Color:

a. All services: Black

3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 230553

SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Balancing Air Systems:

    a. Constant-volume air systems.
    b. Variable-air-volume systems.
    c. Multizone systems.

2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:

    a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
    b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.

3. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:

    a. Motors.
    b. Heat-transfer coils.

4. Testing, adjusting, and balancing existing systems and equipment.
5. Sound tests.
6. Control system verification.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.

B. BAS: Building automation systems.

C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.

D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.

F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.

G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. TAB Conference: Conduct a TAB conference at Project site with the Architect, Construction Manager, Commissioning Authority, and Engineer after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.

1. Minimum Agenda Items:

a. The Contract Documents examination report.
b. The TAB plan.
c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.

C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.

D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.

E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.

F. Certified TAB reports.

G. Sample report forms.

H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:

1. Instrument type and make.
2. Serial number.
3. Application.
4. Dates of use.
5. Dates of calibration.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: The balancing agency shall be an independent contractor certified by AABC and shall have no affiliation with a mechanical contracting or sheet metal company and shall have at least one Professional Engineer registered in the State in which the services are to be performed.

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC, NEBB, or, TABB.
2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC, NEBB, or, TABB as a TAB technician.

B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."

C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy the site, existing building, and/or completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCOPE

A. TAB contractor is responsible to balance all terminal air devices in the existing and new systems affected by the scope of the project.

3.2 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.

C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.

D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.

F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.

1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.

G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.

H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.

I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.

K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.

L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.

M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.

N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.

O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.

P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.3 PREPARATION

A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:

1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
3. Instrumentation to be used.
4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.

B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:

1. Airside:

a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
d. Clean filters are installed.
e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
h. Ceilings are installed.
i. Windows and doors are installed.
j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

2. Hydronics:

a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
c. Water treatment is complete.
d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
f. Control valves are functioning per the sequence of operation.
g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
h. Pumps are started and proper rotation is verified.
i. Pump gage connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" or ASHRAE 111 or NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems", SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.

B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.

1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
2. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230700 "HVAC Insulation."

C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.

D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.

D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.

E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.

F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.

G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

I. Check for airflow blockages.

J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure total airflow.

    a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
    c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
    d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.

2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:

    a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.

3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
4. Obtain approval from Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.

    1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
    2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
    3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.

C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.

    1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
    2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
    3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
    4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.

D. Verify final system conditions.

1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
4. Mark all final settings.
5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
6. Measure and record all operating data.
7. Record final fan-performance data.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:

    a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
    b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
    c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
    d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
    e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
    f. When in full cooling or full heating, ensure that there is no mixing of hot-deck and cold-deck airstreams unless so designed.
    g. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.

5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

    a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.

b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.

6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:

a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.

7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.

a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.

8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls contractor.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:

a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
d. Mark final settings.
e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR MULTIZONE SYSTEMS

A. Position the unit's automatic zone dampers for maximum flow through the cooling coil.

B. The procedures for multizone systems will utilize the zone balancing dampers to achieve the indicated airflow within the zone.

C. After balancing, place the unit's automatic zone dampers for maximum heating flow. Retest zone airflows and record any variances.

D. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure total airflow.

    a. Set outside-air, return-air and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor air conditions.
    b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
    c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
    d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.

2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:

    a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
    c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
    d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.

3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
4. Obtain approval from Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

E. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.

1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.

F. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.

1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.

G. Verify final system conditions.

1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
4. Mark all final settings.
5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
6. Measure and record all operating data.
7. Record final fan-performance data.

3.9 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for pumps, coils, and heat exchangers. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required coil and heat exchanger flow rates with pump design flow rate.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.

C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing as follows:

1. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
2. Check highest vent for adequate pressure.
3. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
4. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
5. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
6. Check that air has been purged from the system.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.

1. Measure total water flow.

a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.

2. Measure pump TDH as follows:

a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.

d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.

3. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.

B. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.

1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.

C. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.

1. Measure flow at terminals.
2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
4. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.

D. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:

1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

E. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:

1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

F. Verify final system conditions as follows:

1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
3. Mark final settings.

G. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals, and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

B. Adjust the variable-flow hydronic system as follows:

1. Verify that the differential-pressure sensor is located as indicated.
2. Determine whether there is diversity in the system.

C. For systems with no diversity:

1. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.

a. Measure total water flow.

1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.

b. Measure pump TDH as follows:

1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.

c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.

2. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.

a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.

3. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.

a. Measure flow at terminals.
b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
d. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.

4. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:

a. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

5. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:

a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

6. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine the system differential-pressure set point.
7. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
8. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:

a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
c. Mark final settings.

10. Verify that memory stops have been set.

D. For systems with diversity:

1. Determine diversity factor.
2. Simulate system diversity by closing required number of control valves, as approved by the design engineer.
3. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.

a. Measure total water flow.

1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.

b. Measure pump TDH as follows:

1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.

5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.

c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.

4. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.

a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.

5. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.

a. Measure flow at terminals.
b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.

6. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:

a. Measure differential pressure, and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

7. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:

a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

8. Open control valves that were shut. Close a sufficient number of control valves that were previously open to maintain diversity, and balance terminals that were just opened.
9. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine system differential-pressure set point.
10. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
11. Mark final settings and verify that memory stops have been set.
12. Verify final system conditions as follows:

a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
c. Mark final settings.

13. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR PRIMARY-SECONDARY HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Balance the primary circuit flow first.

B. Balance the secondary circuits after the primary circuits are complete.

C. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.

1. Measure total water flow.

    a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
    b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
    c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.

2. Measure pump TDH as follows:

    a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
    b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
    c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
    d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
    e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.

3. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.

D. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.

1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.

E. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.

1. Measure flow at terminals.
2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
4. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.

F. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:

1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

G. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:

1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.

H. Verify final system conditions as follows:

1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
3. Mark final settings.

I. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.13 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Phase and hertz.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
8. Service factor and frame size.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

3.14 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:

1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
2. Water flow rate.
3. Water pressure drop for major (more than 20 gpm) equipment coils, excluding unitary equipment such as reheat coils, unit heaters, and fan-coil units.
4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
6. Airflow.

B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:

1. Nameplate data.
2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Airflow.
3. Inlet steam pressure.

D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.

3.15 SOUND TESTS

A. After the systems are balanced and construction is Substantially Complete, measure and record sound levels at **five (5)** locations as designated by the Architect.

B. Instrumentation:

1. The sound-testing meter shall be a portable, general-purpose testing meter consisting of a microphone, processing unit, and readout.
2. The sound-testing meter shall be capable of showing fluctuations at minimum and maximum levels, and measuring the equivalent continuous sound pressure level (LEQ).
3. The sound-testing meter must be capable of using 1/3 octave band filters to measure mid-frequencies from 31.5 Hz to 8000 Hz.
4. The accuracy of the sound-testing meter shall be plus or minus one decibel.

C. Test Procedures:

1. Perform test at quietest background noise period. Note cause of unpreventable sound that affects test outcome.
2. Equipment should be operating at design values.
3. Calibrate the sound-testing meter prior to taking measurements.
4. Use a microphone suitable for the type of noise levels measured that is compatible with meter. Provide a windshield for outside or in-duct measurements.
5. Record a set of background measurements in dBA and sound pressure levels in the eight un-weighted octave bands 63 Hz to 8000 Hz (NC) with the equipment off.
6. Take sound readings in dBA and sound pressure levels in the eight un-weighted octave bands 63 Hz to 8000 Hz (NC) with the equipment operating.

7. Take readings no closer than 36 inches from a wall or from the operating equipment and approximately 60 inches from the floor, with the meter held or mounted on a tripod.
8. For outdoor measurements, move sound-testing meter slowly and scan area that has the most exposure to noise source being tested. Use A-weighted scale for this type of reading.

D. Reporting:

1. Report shall record the following:

a. Location.
b. System tested.
c. dBA reading.
d. Sound pressure level in each octave band with equipment on and off.

2. Plot sound pressure levels on NC worksheet with equipment on and off.

3.16 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:

1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.

B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

3.17 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.

1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
3. Check the refrigerant charge.
4. Check the condition of filters.
5. Check the condition of coils.
6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.

7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.

B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:

1. New filters are installed.
2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
3. Drain pans are clean.
4. Fans are clean.
5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.

C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.

1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
4. Balance each air outlet.

3.18 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: 0% to +5%.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: 0% to +5%.
3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: 0% to +5%.
4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: 0% to +5%.

B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.19 PROGRESS REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC

systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

B. Status Reports: Prepare biweekly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.20 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Pump curves.
2. Fan curves.
3. Manufacturers' test data.
4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents including the following:

    a. Indicated versus final performance.
    b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.

12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.

13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:

    a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    b. Conditions of filters.
    c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water and steam flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.
7. Position of balancing devices.

E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

    a. Unit identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Make and type.
    d. Model number and unit size.
    e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    f. Unit arrangement and class.
    g. Discharge arrangement.
    h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
    j. Number, make, and size of belts.
    k. Number, type, and size of filters.

2. Motor Data:

    a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    b. Horsepower and rpm.
    c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
    f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
    b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    c. Fan rpm.
    d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
    j. Return airflow in cfm.
    k. Outdoor-air damper position.
    l. Return-air damper position.
    m. Vortex damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

    a. System identification.
    b. Location.
    c. Coil type.
    d. Number of rows.
    e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
    f. Make and model number.
    g. Face area in sq. ft..
    h. Tube size in NPS.
    i. Tube and fin materials.
    j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Airflow rate in cfm.
    b. Average face velocity in fpm.
    c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
    d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    h. Water flow rate in gpm.
    i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
    j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
    k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
    l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
    m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
    n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
    o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

G. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and unit size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Fuel type in input data.
g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
h. Ignition type.
i. Burner-control types.
j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
j. Manifold pressure in psig.
k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
m. Motor voltage at each connection.
n. Motor amperage for each phase.
o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.

H. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Coil identification.
d. Capacity in Btu/h.
e. Number of stages.
f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.

g. Rated amperage.
h. Airflow rate in cfm.
i. Face area in sq. ft..
j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Heat output in Btu/h.
b. Airflow rate in cfm.
c. Air velocity in fpm.
d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
f. Voltage at each connection.
g. Amperage for each phase.

I. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Arrangement and class.
g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Motor Data:

a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
b. Horsepower and rpm.
c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
g. Number, make, and size of belts.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
c. Fan rpm.
d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

J. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:

    a. System and air-handling-unit number.
    b. Location and zone.
    c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
    d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
    e. Duct size in inches.
    f. Duct area in sq. ft..
    g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
    h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
    i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
    j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
    k. Barometric pressure in psig.

K. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:

    a. System and air-handling unit identification.
    b. Location and zone.
    c. Apparatus used for test.
    d. Area served.
    e. Make.
    f. Number from system diagram.
    g. Type and model number.
    h. Size.
    i. Effective area in sq. ft..

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

    a. Airflow rate in cfm.
    b. Air velocity in fpm.
    c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
    d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
    e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
    f. Final velocity in fpm.
    g. Space temperature in deg F.

L. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

    a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
    b. Location and zone.
    c. Room or riser served.
    d. Coil make and size.
    e. Flowmeter type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Airflow rate in cfm.
b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

M. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:

1. Unit Data:

a. Unit identification.
b. Location.
c. Service.
d. Make and size.
e. Model number and serial number.
f. Water flow rate in gpm.
g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
i. Pump rpm.
j. Impeller diameter in inches.
k. Motor make and frame size.
l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
m. Voltage at each connection.
n. Amperage for each phase.
o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
p. Seal type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
c. Actual impeller size in inches.
d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
j. Voltage at each connection.
k. Amperage for each phase.

N. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

a. Instrument type and make.
b. Serial number.

c. Application.
d. Dates of use.
e. Dates of calibration.

3.21 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of **Construction Manager** or **commissioning authority**.

B. **Construction Manager** or **Commissioning authority** shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.

C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."

D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:

1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.22 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230700 - HVAC INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Insulation Materials
    a. Flexible Elastomeric
    b. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation
    c. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation
    d. Mineral-Fiber Preformed Pipe Insulation
    e. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank Insulation
2. Acoustical Duct Lagging Insulation
3. Fire-Rated Insulation Materials
4. Adhesives
5. Mastics
6. Lagging Adhesives
7. Sealants
8. Factory-Applied Jackets
9. Field-Applied Fabric-Reinforcing Mesh
10. Field-Applied Cloths
11. Field-Applied Jackets
12. Tapes
13. Securements
14. Corner Angles

B. Related Sections:
1. Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, acoustical performance, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, flanges, valves, and specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties and equipment connections.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

C. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with Installer for insulation application. Before preparing Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.7 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. General

1. Comply with requirements in insulation schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
2. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
3. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
4. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
5. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Sheet, K-Flex Gray Duct Liner, and K-FLEX LS.

C. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.

D. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
   b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
   c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
   d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
   e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
   f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

E. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
   b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
   c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
   d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
   e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.

2. Type I, 850 deg F (454 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ or ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

F. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
   b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
   c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
   d. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Flex.
   e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL DUCT LAGGING INSULATION

A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
   1. eNoise Control (Basis of Design)
   2. Acoustical Surfaces, Inc.
   3. IES 2000

B. General: A specialty product that combines an acoustic duct lagging with reinforced foil facing on one side that is bonded to quilted fiberglass insulation on the other side. 1 lb. psf reinforced-foil faced loaded vinyl barrier bonded to a 2" thick scrim faced quilted fiberglass absorber.

C. Duct Lagging: a flexible barrier material shall have a nominal density of 1 lb/ft^2 and shall be 0.10" thick. The barrier shall be barium loaded (non-lead) high mass, limp vinyl bonded to reinforced aluminum foil facing on one side. The noise barrier shall meet a Class A Flammability Rating per ASTM E-84 and have a sound transmission loss values as stated on the chart below

	Octave Band Frequencies (Hz)						
Product	125	250	500	1000	2000	4000	STC
DL-10-LAG/Q2	19	20	23	33	44	53	30

D. Fiberglass Insulation: 2-inch thick scrim faced quilted fiberglass absorber with R-9 insulation rating.

E. Flammability: product to meet performance requirements of Section 1.4 above.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

      a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
      b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
      c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
      d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.

   2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
    b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
    c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
    b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
    c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.

3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
    b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.

c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms (0.86 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. (203 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. (2 strands by 2 strands/sq. mm) for covering ducts.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas No. 5.

B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave, for ducts.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
    b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
    b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
    c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
    d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.

2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
3. Color: White.

C. Metal Jacket:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
    b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
    c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.

2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.

    a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing or factory cut and rolled to size.
    b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.

D. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white or stucco-embossed aluminum-foil facing.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Alumaguard 60.

2.11 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
    b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
    c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
    d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
   b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
   c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
   d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
   b. Compac Corporation; 130.
   c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.

2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
3. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
   b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
   c. Compac Corporation; 120.
   d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.

2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
   b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

   a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

      1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
      2) GEMCO; CD.
      3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.
      4) Nelson Stud Welding; TPA, TPC, and TPS.

2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.

   a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

      1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CHP-1.
      2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
      3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
      4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.

3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.

b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

4. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1) GEMCO; Nylon Hangers.
2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Nylon Insulation Hangers.

b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches (63 mm).
d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

5. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Self-Adhering Insul-Hangers.
2) GEMCO; Peel & Press.
3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Self Stick.

b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.

6. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm) thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.

    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

        1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
        2) GEMCO; R-150.
        3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
        4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.

    b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

7. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.

    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

        1) GEMCO.
        2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. C & F Wire.

2.13 CORNER ANGLES

A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), aluminum according to ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches (50 mm) o.c.

    a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

Q. Acoustical Duct Lagging Insulation to be installed in accordance with manufacturer recommendations, fastened with adhesive, tape, mechanical fasteners or bands.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).

1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.

6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION ON DUCT SYSTEMS

A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

    a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
    b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), place pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

    a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).

5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches (450 mm) o.c.
6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

    a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
    b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), space pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

    a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).

5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION ON PIPING SYSTEMS

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

3.10 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.

B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.

C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.11 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

2. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

3. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.13 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. General:
1. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
    a. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
    b. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
    c. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
    d. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
    e. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
    f. Indoor, exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
    g. Indoor, concealed oven and warewash exhaust.
    h. Indoor, exposed oven and warewash exhaust.
    i. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
    j. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
    k. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
    l. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
2. Items Not Insulated:
    a. Fibrous-glass ducts.

b. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
c. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
d. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
e. Flexible connectors.
f. Vibration-control devices.
g. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. Duct Insulation Schedule:

Duct System	**Location**	**Insulation**	**Jacket**
Supply Return	Outdoors	Mineral-Fiber Board: 3” thick 3-lb/cu. ft.	Aluminum: Smooth 0.016” thick
Supply Return Outside Air (all)	Indoors: Mechanical rooms, shafts, crawlspaces, trenches	Mineral-Fiber Board: 2” thick 3-lb/cu. ft.	None
Supply	Indoors: RTU-9 supply ductwork	Acoustic Lagging Insulation 2” thick 1-lb/cu.ft.	
Return	Indoors: In ceiling void of room served	None	None
Supply Return Outside Air (all)	Indoors: All other areas not listed above	Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2” thick 0.75-lb/cu. ft.	None

3.14 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. General:
1. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range.
2. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
a. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
b. Underground piping.
c. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

B. Pipe, Valve, and Fitting Insulation Material Schedule:

Pipe System	**Insulation Material**	**Vapor Barrier Locations**
Cold Condensate Drain	Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Insulation	-
Chilled Water	Mineral Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation	All Installations
Heating Hot Water	Mineral Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation	Outdoors

C. Pipe, Valve, and Fitting Insulation Thickness Schedule:

Pipe System	Insulation Thickness
Cold Condensate Drain	0.5”
Chilled Water	1.5”
Heating Hot Water, ≤ 1.5" diameter	1.5”
Heating Hot Water, > 1.5" diameter	2.0”

1. The above table is based on insulation having a conductivity (k) not exceeding 0.27 Btu per inch/h · ft2 °F.
2. For insulation with a thermal conductivity not equal to 0.27 Btu · inch/h · ft2 · °F at a mean temperature of 75°F, the minimum required pipe thickness is adjusted using the following equation;

   T = r [(1+tlr)K/k-1]

   where:

   T = Adjusted insulation thickness (in).

   r = Actual pipe radius (in).

   t = Insulation thickness from applicable cell in table (in).

   K = New thermal conductivity at 75°F (Btu · in/hr · ft2 · °F).

   k = 0.27 Btu · in/hr · ft2 · °F

D. Pipe, Valve, and Fitting Insulation Field-Applied Jacketing Schedule:

Pipe System Location	Jacket
Outdoors	Aluminum
Indoors, inaccessible Portions of Shafts	None
Indoors, exposed	PVC

3.15 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. General:
1. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below.
2. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.

B. Equipment Insulation Schedule:

Equipment	Insulation	Thickness	Jacket
Pumps	Mineral Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation	2”	PVC

END OF SECTION 230713

SECTION 230800 – MECHANICAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1. DESCRIPTION

A. General provisions and other mechanical systems are specified in other Sections of Division 23.

B. Commissioning is an ongoing process and shall be performed throughout construction. Commissioning requires the participation of Division 23 to ensure that all systems are operating in a manner consistent with the Contract Documents. Contractor shall be familiar with the commissioning work typically required of Division 23 and shall execute all commissioning responsibilities to demonstrate full compliance and functionality as described in the Contract Documents.

C. Commissioning shall conclude with the completion of all required deferred testing, training and system documentation as specified and required to ensure the proper operation of the mechanical equipment and systems provided by this Division.

D. This Section covers mechanical systems commissioning, as required to demonstrate that the equipment and systems of Division 23 are ready for safe and satisfactory operation, as defined by project documents. Commissioning shall include, but shall not be limited to, identification of piping and equipment, cleaning, lubrication, start-up, check-out, and testing, adjusting, and balancing of systems, preparation of equipment and systems documentation and of maintenance and operation manuals, Owner training, and preparation of record drawings.

1.2. QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The Mechanical Contractor shall identify a mechanical commissioning supervisor. The mechanical commissioning supervisor should have a minimum of ten years of experience in mechanical contracting. The mechanical commissioning supervisor shall become familiar with the design intent and the requirements of the commissioning process as defined in this Section. The mechanical commissioning supervisor shall attend all commissioning meetings and produce and coordinate the commissioning schedule. Even though employed by the Mechanical Contractor the mechanical commissioning supervisor will exercise fair judgement to act as an objective third-party authority overseeing the commissioning process.

1.3. MECHANICAL, PLUMBING, AND FIRE PROTECTION CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

A. The mechanical commissioning supervisor shall be responsible for scheduling, supervising, and coordinating the startup, testing and commissioning activities as specified herein. Specific requirements of the mechanical contractor and associated subcontractors are identified in this Section and in other Sections of this Division.

B. Mechanical commissioning shall take place in three phases. Commissioning requirements for each phase are as follows:

1. Construction Phase

   a. The Mechanical Contractor shall conduct a Commissioning Scoping meeting and additional commissioning meetings as required throughout the commissioning process. These commissioning meetings will be monthly during early construction and may increase in frequency to weekly during the start-up, pre-functional and functional testing phases. The Mechanical Contractor shall assure that all subcontractors who have commissioning responsibilities attend the Commissioning Scoping meeting and other commissioning meetings, as appropriate, during the construction process.
   b. The Mechanical Contractor shall document in writing, at least as often as commissioning meetings are scheduled concerning the status of his activities as they affect the commissioning process, the status of each discrepancy identified, the pre-functional and functional testing process, explanations of any disagreements with the identified deficiencies, and proposed resolution and schedule.
   c. The Mechanical Contractor shall provide the documentation that shall include detailed manufacturer installation, start-up, operating, troubleshooting and maintenance procedures; full details of any owner-contracted tests; fan and pump curves; full factory testing reports, if any; and full warranty information, including all responsibilities of the Owner to keep the warranty in force clearly identified. In addition, the installation, start-up and checkout materials that are actually shipped inside the equipment and the actual field checkout sheet forms to be used by the factory or field technicians shall be included. The Engineer may request further documentation. This data request may be made prior to normal submittals.
   d. The Mechanical Contractor shall develop and submit to Engineer, for review prior to equipment or system startup, a complete startup and initial checkout plan using manufacturer's start-up procedures.
   e. The Mechanical Contractor shall review and complete the pre-functional check-sheets and sign-off on the appropriate areas when the Contractor and sub-contractors are complete. The pre-functional test sheets will be developed by the Contractor with input from manufacturer(s).
   f. The Mechanical Contractor shall provide a copy of the O&M manuals and submittals of commissioned equipment, through normal channels, to the Owner for record.
   g. The Mechanical Contractor shall prepare the specific functional test procedures as specified herein. The Mechanical Contractor shall review the proposed functional performance test procedures with the Engineer and any sub-contractors to ensure feasibility, safety and equipment protection and provide necessary written alarm limits to be used during the tests.
   h. Mechanical Contractor shall prepare a preliminary schedule for Division 23 commissioning activities, to include pipe and duct system testing, flushing and cleaning, equipment start-up, and TAB start and completion, and shall update the schedule as appropriate.
   i. The Mechanical Contractor shall update the commissioning activities and notify any delays in the progress meetings. Mechanical Contractor shall notify the Owner during the commissioning meetings when commissioning activities not yet performed or not yet scheduled will delay construction. Mechanical equipment

start-up shall not be initiated until the complete sign-off of the pre-functional check-sheets as specified in other Sections of Division 23.

j. The Mechanical Contractor shall provide startup testing for all HVAC equipment, including the building automation control system and shall execute the mechanical-related portions of the pre-functional checklists for all commissioned equipment during the startup and initial checkout process.
k. The Mechanical Contractor shall perform and clearly document all completed start-up and system operational checkout procedures.
l. The Mechanical Contractor shall correct current A/E punch list and deficiency items before functional performance testing can begin. Air and water TAB shall be completed with discrepancies and problems remedied before functional testing of the respective air or water related systems.
m. The Mechanical Contractor shall generate the functional testing procedure and conduct the functional testing process. The Mechanical Contractor shall operate boilers, pumps, etc., and systems in accordance with the requirements, open and close disconnects and switch normal and emergency power requirements as directed by the functional testing procedures.
n. The Mechanical Contractor shall report in writing at least as often as commissioning meetings concerning the status of each outstanding discrepancy identified during commissioning, pre-functional and functional performance testing. Report shall include description of the identified discrepancy, explanations of any disagreements, and proposals and schedule for correction of the discrepancy.

2. Acceptance Phase. The Mechanical Contractor shall conduct the commissioning process by:

a. Putting all HVAC equipment and systems into operation and continuing the operation during each working day of the test and balance and commissioning effort, as required.
b. For a given area, have all required pre-functional checklists, calibrations, startup and selected functional tests of the mechanical system and associated controls completed and approved by the Engineer prior to beginning the test and balance process.
c. Provide a qualified technician to operate the controls as required to assist the TAB contractor in performing TAB, or provide sufficient training for TAB to operate the system without assistance.
d. The Mechanical Contractor shall conduct a random 10% of the air and water distribution requirements with a TAB representative assistance.
e. Include cost of sheaves and belts that may be required to obtain required equipment performance, as measured by the test and balance effort.
f. Providing test holes in ducts and plenums where directed by TAB to allow air measurements and air balancing. Providing an approved plug.
g. Providing temperature and pressure taps according to the Construction Documents for TAB and commissioning testing.
h. Installing a P/T plug at each water sensor that is an input point to the Control System.
i. Providing skilled technicians to execute starting and operation of equipment.
j. The Mechanical Contractor will conduct functional performance testing. The testing is to be conducted by a skilled technician.

k. The functional performance testing will require full and part load performance verifications as well as seasonal and simulated testing requirements. The Contractor shall plan to operate different components of various systems (example, DX and hot water systems to generate loading strategies) during the functional testing.
l. Correct deficiencies (differences between specified and observed performance) as interpreted by the Engineer.
m. Prepare O&M manuals according to the Contract Documents, including clarifying and updating the original sequence of operation to as-built conditions.
n. Maintain on site redline as built drawings and produce final "As-built" drawings for all project drawings and contractor-generated coordination drawings. List and clearly identify on the as-built drawings the locations of all airflow stations and sensor installations that are not equipment mounted.
o. Provide specified training of the Owner's operating personnel.
p. Coordinate with equipment manufacturers to determine specific requirements to maintain the validity of the warranty.
q. Provide updated diagrammatical logic for all TAB adjustments to the system.

3. Warranty Period. During the warranty period, the Mechanical Contractor shall:

a. Be available for seasonal or deferred functional performance testing.
b. Correct deficiencies and make necessary adjustments to O&M manuals and as-built drawings for applicable issues identified in any seasonal testing.

1.4. TAB CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Six weeks prior to the starting of the T&B, submit to the Owner, the qualifications of the site technician(s) for the project, including three (3) names of contractors and facility managers of recent projects on which the personnel were in charge. The Owner will approve the site technician for this job.

B. Three months prior to the start of the TAB, submit a TAB plan and approach for each system. The plan shall be reviewed by the TAB and the Engineer for review and approval. The submitted plan shall include:

1. Certification that the TAB contractor has reviewed the construction documents and the systems with the design engineers and Contractors to sufficiently understand the design intent for each system.
2. An explanation of the intended use of the building control system.
3. All field check-out sheets and logs to be used that lists each piece of equipment to be tested adjusted and balanced with the data cells to be gathered for each.
4. Final test report forms to be used during this process:

a. Detailed step by step procedures for TAB work for each system and issue: terminal flow calibration; diffuser proportioning; branch and submain proportioning; total flow calculations; and rechecking diversity issues.
b. List all air flow, water flow, sound level, system capacity and efficiency measurements to be performed and a description of each of the test procedures, parameters and formulas to be used.

c. Details of how total flow will be determined (Air: sum of terminal flows via BMS calibrated readings or via hood, pitot tube or flow stations). Details of how total water flow will be determined (Water: pump curves, circuit setters, flow station, ultrasonic, etc.).
d. The identification and types of measurement instruments to be used and their most recent calibration date.
e. Specific procedures that will ensure that both air and watersides will be operating at their lowest possible pressure at the point where the system will operate.
f. Confirmation that the TAB contractor understands the outside air ventilation criteria under all conditions and how this will be measured during normal, economizer and unoccupied conditions.
g. Details of how building static, room static and exhaust fan capacity will be checked.
h. Proposed selection points for traverse measurement locations on the as-built documents. Review the placement of the HVAC measurement devices for proper straight runs and accuracy.
i. Submit a plan for testing and checking the fume hood system exhaust requirements.
j. Plan for formal progress reports including scope and frequency.
k. Plan for formal deficiency reports including scope and frequency.

5. TAB contractor shall attend commissioning meetings as directed by the Contractor and the general contractor.
6. TAB contractor shall communicate in writing to the controls contractor and the Engineer all setpoint and parameter changes made or problems and discrepancies identified during the TAB process that would affect the control loop system set-up and operation.
7. Submit written report of discrepancies, deficit or uncompleted work by others, contract interpretation requests and list of completed tests to the Engineer at least once per week.
8. After the TAB plan is accepted and two-weeks prior to TAB work, the contractor shall conduct a pre-balancing conference. Prior to the pre-balancing conference, the TAB contractor shall inspect the system readiness for testing and balancing. The TAB contractor shall prepare a list of deficiencies and uncompleted work that will affect the TAB process. This list shall be submitted to the Contractor to be addressed.
9. The TAB contractor shall review the projected schedule and provide, in writing, to the CM any delays in the schedule and what items will require completion prior to the TAB work.
10. The Contractor shall conduct independent verification of 10% of air and water end-devices for acceptance after the TAB contractor states in writing that they are complete with Testing & Balancing. The TAB contractor shall provide a mechanic to assist the Contractor in this verification and shall include this in the scope and price of the Work.
11. The TAB agent shall submit the TAB report to the Engineer for his review and comment. A minimum of ten percent of the airflow readings shall be verified by the Contractor using his own equipment. All selection points shall be random. Total airflow shall be verified on all mains in the supply and the exhaust ducts.

1.5. CONTROL CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

A. The controls commissioning supervisor shall be responsible for scheduling, supervising, and coordinating the startup, testing and commissioning activities as specified herein with the

Mechanical Contractor. Specific requirements of the controls contractor and associated subcontractors are identified in this Section and in other Sections of this Division.

B. Controls commissioning shall take place in three phases. Commissioning requirements for each phase are as follows:

1. Construction Phase

a. Contractor shall attend a Commissioning Scope meeting and additional commissioning meetings as required throughout the commissioning process. These commissioning meetings will be monthly during early construction and increase in frequency to weekly during the start-up, pre-functional and functional testing phases. Contractor shall assure that all subcontractors who have commissioning responsibilities attend the Commissioning Scope meeting and other commissioning meetings, as appropriate, during the construction process.
b. Contractor shall report, in writing, as often as commissioning meetings concerning the status of his activities as they affect the commissioning process, the status of each discrepancy identified, the pre-functional and functional testing process, explanations of any disagreements with the identified deficiencies, and proposed resolution and schedule.
c. Contractor shall develop pre-functional and functional performance testing procedures, prior to normal O&M manual submittals. This documentation shall include detailed manufacturer installation, start-up, operating, troubleshooting and maintenance procedures; full details of any owner-contracted tests; points listing; full factory testing reports, if any; and full warranty information, including all responsibilities of the Owner to keep the warranty in force clearly identified.
d. The Contractor shall develop a complete startup and initial checkout plan using manufacturer’s start-up procedures.
e. The Contractor shall generate the pre-functional check-sheets and sign-off on the appropriate areas when complete.
f. Contractor shall provide a copy of the O&M manuals and submittals of commissioned equipment, through normal channels, to the Owner for record.
g. Contractor shall assist in clarifying the proposed operation and control of commissioned equipment in areas where the specifications, control drawings or equipment documentation is not sufficient for writing detailed testing procedures.
h. The Contractor shall prepare for the specific functional test procedures as specified herein. The Engineer shall review the proposed functional performance test procedures to ensure feasibility, safety and equipment protection and provide necessary written alarm limits to be used during the tests.
i. Controls contractor shall prepare a preliminary schedule for their commissioning activities, to include wiring, instrument installation, calibration, point-to-point verification, sequence of operation testing and emergency operating procedural testing for use by the Mechanical Contractor and shall update the schedule as appropriate. The Contractor shall update the commissioning activities and notify any delays in the progress meetings. Contractor shall notify the Owner/CM during the commissioning meetings when commissioning activities not yet performed or not yet scheduled will delay construction.

j. Controls instrument and equipment start-up shall not be initiated until the complete sign-off of the pre-functional check-sheets as specified in other Sections of Division 23.
k. Contractor shall provide startup testing for all HVAC equipment, including the building automation control system and shall execute the mechanical/controls-related portions of the pre-functional checklists for all commissioned equipment during the startup and initial checkout process.
l. Contractor shall perform and clearly document all completed startup and system operational checkout procedures.
m. Contractor shall correct current A/E punch list and deficiency items before functional performance testing can begin. Point-to-point verification shall be completed with discrepancies and problems remedied before functional testing of the respective controls related systems.
n. The Mechanical Contractor shall generate the functional testing procedure and provide to the controls contractor. The controls contractor shall review and provide support to the functional testing process. Controls contractor shall aid in operating boilers, pumps, etc., and systems in accordance with the testing requirements, turn on and off normal and emergency power requirements as directed by the functional testing procedures.
o. Contractor shall report, in writing, as often as commissioning meetings concerning the status of each outstanding discrepancy identified during commissioning, pre-functional and functional performance testing. Report shall include description of the identified discrepancy, explanations of any disagreements, and proposals and schedule for correction of the discrepancy.

2. Acceptance Phase. Contractor shall conduct the commissioning process by:

a. Putting all HVAC equipment and systems into operation and continuing the operation during each working day of the test and balance and commissioning effort, as required.
b. For a given area, have all required, pre-functional checklists, calibrations, startup and selected functional tests of the mechanical system and associated controls completed prior to beginning the test and balance process.
c. Provide a qualified technician to operate the controls as required to assist the TAB contractor in performing TAB, or provide sufficient training for TAB to operate the system without assistance.
d. Provide a controls representative to assist the Mechanical Contractor on conducting a random 10% check of the air and water distribution requirements.
e. Providing skilled technicians to execute starting and operation of equipment.
f. The Mechanical Contractor will conduct functional performance testing by a skilled technician.
g. The Mechanical Contractor will require full and part load performance verifications as well as seasonal and simulated testing requirements. The Controls Contractor shall be prepared to operate different components of various systems (example, chilled water and hot water systems to generate loading strategies) during the functional testing.
h. Correct deficiencies (differences between specified and observed performance) as interpreted by the Mechanical Contractor and A/E.

i. Prepare O&M manuals according to the Contract Documents, including clarifying and updating the original sequence of operation to as-built conditions.
j. Maintain on site redline as built drawings and produce final "As-built" drawings for all project drawings and contractor-generated coordination drawings. List and clearly identify on the as-built drawings the locations of all airflow stations and sensor installations that are not equipment mounted.
k. Provide specified training of the Owner's operating personnel.
l. Coordinate with equipment manufacturers to determine specific requirements to maintain the validity of the warranty.
m. Provide a detailed marked up drawings of all the instruments and their installed location (P&ID) for instruments and components.

3. Warranty Period. During the warranty period, the Contractor shall:

a. Be available during seasonal or deferred functional performance testing conducted by the Mechanical Contractor, according to the specifications.
b. Correct deficiencies and make necessary adjustments to O&M manuals and as-built drawings for applicable issues identified in any seasonal testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEMS TO BE COMMISSIONED

A. The systems to be commissioned include the following (100% primary systems and 20% sampling of secondary systems):

1. Air Handling Units
2. Pumps
3. Existing Hot Water System
4. Existing Chilled Water System
5. Building Automation System
6. Testing, Adjusting and Balancing

2.2. TEST EQUIPMENT

A. All standard testing equipment required for the mechanical portion startup, initial checkout shall be provided by the Contractor responsible for the equipment or system being tested. This includes TAB and controls verification.

B. All testing equipment associated with functional performance verification and point-to-point required by the Contractor shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. All testing equipment associated with the control's contractor point-to-point verification shall be the responsibility of the control's contractor.

C. Special equipment, tools and instruments (only available from vendor or specific to a piece of equipment) required for the functional testing of that equipment, according to the requirements of the contract documents and the functional test procedures shall be provided to the Mechanical Contractor by the installing contractor and shall become the property of the Owner at project completion as indicated in the specification.

D. Proprietary test equipment and software required by any manufacturer for programming and/or start-up, whether specified or not, shall be provided by the manufacturer of the equipment. Manufacturer shall provide test equipment, demonstrate its use and assist in the commissioning process as needed. Proprietary test equipment (and software) shall become the property of the Owner upon successful completion of the commissioning process as required in the specifications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1. SUBMITTALS

A. Division 23 shall provide submittal documentation relative to commissioning as required in this Section Part 1.

3.2 STARTUP PLAN AND PREFUNCTIONAL TESTING

A. The mechanical contractor and associated subcontractors shall be responsible for the installation of complete systems and sub-systems, fully functional, meeting the design objectives of the Contract Documents. Contractor shall follow the approved start-up, initial checkout, and pre-functional testing procedures. The commissioning procedures and functional testing do not relieve or lessen this responsibility or shift that responsibility to the A/E or Owner.

B. Pre-functional testing as directed and performed by the contractor shall be required for each piece of equipment to ensure that the equipment and systems are properly installed and ready for operation, so that functional performance testing to may proceed without delays. Sampling strategies shall not be used for pre-functional testing. The pre-functional testing for all equipment and subsystems of a given system shall be successfully completed and documented prior to functional performance testing of the system. The mechanical contractor and sub-contractors shall sign off on the pre-functional test sheets that they are complete and the system is ready. The Mechanical Contractor will verify and conduct their own independent verification and start-up in parallel to any sub-contractor's verification. Any deficiencies identified during this process shall be noted and reviewed by the Contractors. Start-up and functional testing shall not proceed until all the deficiencies are corrected and verified by the Mechanical Contractor.

C. The following procedures shall apply to all equipment and systems to be commissioned.

1. Start-up and Initial Checkout Plan. The contractor shall develop the detailed start-up and pre-functional testing plans for all equipment to be reviewed by the Engineer. The primary role of the Mechanical Contractor in this process shall be to review the installation for construction completeness and ensure that all components have been installed as per the design documents. Only when pre-functional testing is complete and signed off by all Contractors, shall the Contractor start-up the equipment. Equipment and systems to be commissioned are identified in this Section Part 2.
2. The start-up and initial checkout plan shall consist of the following as a minimum:

a. The manufacturer's standard written start-up and checkout procedures copied from the installation manuals and manufacturer's normally used field checkout sheets. The plan shall include checklists and procedures with specific boxes or lines for recording and documenting the checking and inspections of each procedure and a summary statement with a signature block at the end of the plan.
b. First-run checklist for equipment, to include:

1) Equipment properly set.
2) Alignment of shafts and couplings.
3) Adjustment of vibration isolators.
4) Piping and equipment properly connected.
5) Completion of initial lubrication procedures.
6) Clean filters in place, as appropriate.
7) Wiring properly connected.
8) Electrical overload relays appropriate for load.
9) Electrical accessories properly installed and adjusted.
10) Controls, safeties, and time switches properly calibrated and set-up.
11) Verification of direction of motor rotation after final electrical connections by jogging motor.
12) Measurements of ampere draw of electric motors and comparison with nameplate rating and with overload heater ratings.

3. The Contractor shall submit the start-up reports to the Engineer for review.

D. Two weeks prior to startup, the Contractor shall schedule start-up and checkout with the Owner and CM. The execution of the start-up and checkout shall be directed and performed by the Contractor, in accordance with manufacturer's published procedures and with the approved procedures.

E. Sensor Calibration. Calibration of all sensors shall be included as part of the pre-functional testing and listed on the appropriate test checklists and reports, according to the specified procedures and accuracies for the devices and systems being tested.

F. All contractor responsible start-up, checkout forms shall be completed, verified and submitted to the Owner for record.

3.3 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE TESTS

A. Functional Performance Verification (FPV) is the dynamic testing of systems (rather than just individual components) under full, part and seasonal requirements. Systems are tested under various loads and control sequences, such as low cooling and heating loads, component failures, unoccupied modes, fire alarm, etc. The systems are run through all the control sequences of operation and components are verified to be responding as the design intent and documents. FPV shall include; testing all sequences of operations, verification of system capacity, generating simulated signals to simulate sensor values, conducting simulated conditions to tests all loads and verify system performance during all conditions of operation and verifying design intent. In addition, each system shall be tested through all modes of operation (seasonal, occupied, unoccupied, warm-up, cool-down, part and full load). Proper

responses such as power failures, freeze conditions, low-oil pressures, equipment failures, etc. shall also be tested. The Mechanical Contractor develops the functional test sheets and procedures in sequential written form, coordinates the testing, conducts the testing and documents the testing. Each sub-contractor is required is supply personnel to assist during the functional performance testing where applicable.

B. No system, equipment or component thereof shall be tested until the Contractor and the CM has certified, in writing, that the system, equipment and / or components are complete, have been tested, adjusted and balanced and are ready for validating and performance testing. FPV is scheduled by the Mechanical Contractor after the pre-functional testing requirements are complete and signed-off by the CM and the Mechanical Contractor. FPV will not be conducted until a written notice of completion by the CM confirming that the system is ready for FPV. The air balancing and water balancing must be complete and the controls must be debugged prior to the performance verification.

C. Functional testing shall be conducted by the Mechanical Contractor. Functional testing may not proceed until the systems have been properly installed, started-up and all deficiencies have been corrected.

D. Functional testing is intended to begin upon completion of a system. Functional testing may proceed prior to the completion of systems or sub-systems at the discretion of the Mechanical Contractor and CM. Beginning system testing before full completion shall not relieve the Contractor from fully completing the system, including all pre-functional checklists.

E. The Sub-Contractor(s) shall provide personnel to operate the systems while functional performance testing is commencing. This shall include but not be limited to; starting and stopping of systems, opening and closing valves to create false loads on the system (with the capabilities of the existing system) and allowing the Mechanical Contractor to manipulate the building automation systems to modulate the system requirements.

F. After functional testing commences, the Contractor shall sign the functional test record and provide the Owner and the Engineer a copy to review. All deficiencies either corrected in the field or outstanding shall be documented on the functional test forms for review by all parties.

G. All functional testing must be completed and approved by the A/E and the Owner before the project will be considered substantially complete.

3.4 DEFERRED TESTING

A. Deferred Testing. The Contractor shall be available to assist in seasonal testing (Summer, Winter and Intermediate), tests delayed until weather or other conditions until building construction is completed, required building occupancy or loading, or other conditions are suitable for the demonstration of equipment or system's performance, as specified. These deferred tests shall be conducted in the same manner as the seasonal tests as soon as possible. Deferred testing shall be executed, documented and deficiencies corrected as specified herein for functional performance testing. Any adjustments or corrections to the O&M manuals and "As built" documents required by the results of the testing shall be made before the seasonal testing process is considered complete.

3.5 TESTING DOCUMENTATION, NON-CONFORMANCE AND APPROVALS

A. The Mechanical Contractor shall clearly list any outstanding items of the initial start-up and pre-functional procedures that were not completed successfully. The testing form and any outstanding deficiencies shall be provided to the CM/Owner within two days of test completion. The Mechanical Contractor shall work with other sub-contractors as necessary, to correct and retest deficiencies or uncompleted items. The Contractor shall correct all areas that are deficient or incomplete in the checklists and tests in a timely manner, and shall resubmit an updated start-up report with a Statement of Correction on the original non-compliance report. When all requirements are satisfactorily completed, the Mechanical Contractor shall recommend approval of the startup and pre-functional testing of each system and schedule the functional testing of the equipment or system.

B. As functional performance testing progresses and a deficiency is identified, the Mechanical Contractor shall discuss the issue with the executing contractor and the commissioning team.

1. When there is no dispute of the deficiency and the Contractor accepts responsibility for correcting it, the Mechanical Contractor shall document the deficiency and the Contractor's response and intentions and the testing shall proceed, if possible. Corrections of minor deficiencies identified may be made by the Contractor during the functional performance testing, at the discretion of the Mechanical Contractor. Every effort shall be made or expedite the testing process and minimize unnecessary delays, while not compromising the integrity of the commissioning effort.
2. When the identified deficiency is corrected, the Contractor shall sign the statement of correction at the bottom of the non-compliance form, certifying that the equipment is ready to be retested, and schedule the retest of the equipment or system involved.
3. If there is a dispute about an identified deficiency, every attempt shall be made to resolve the dispute at the lowest management level possible. When the dispute resolution has been decided, the appropriate party corrects the deficiency, the Mechanical Contractor shall schedule the retest of the equipment or system involved. Final interpretive authority shall be the A/E. Final acceptance authority shall be the Owner.

C. Cost of Retesting

1. The cost for Mechanical Contractor and/or Owner personnel to conduct the retesting of a functional performance testing requirements necessitated because a specific pre-functional or start-up test item, reported to have been successfully completed, but found to be incomplete or faulty, shall be the responsibility of the Mechanical Contractor.
2. For a deficiency identified during the functional testing, not related to any pre-functional checklist or start-up fault, the Mechanical Contractor and Owner shall direct the retesting of the equipment once at "no charge" for their time. However, all costs for any subsequent retesting shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.
3. Items left incomplete, which later cause deficiencies or delays during functional testing may result in back-charges to the responsible party.

3.6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE (O&M) MANUALS

A. The following O&M manual requirements do not replace O&M manual documentation requirements elsewhere in these specifications.

B. Division 23 shall compile and prepare documentation for all equipment and systems covered in Division 23 and deliver this documentation to the CM for inclusion in the O&M manuals, according to this section, prior to the training of owner personnel.

C. Operation and maintenance documentation, in hardback 3-ring loose-leaf binders except full size drawings and diskettes, shall cover all mechanical systems. Documentation shall include the following: operations and maintenance documentation directory; emergency information; operating manual; emergency information; maintenance manual; test reports; and construction documents.

D. The operation and maintenance documentation package shall be submitted as one comprehensive package to the Owner before systems start-up and commissioning, and shall be updated, revised and completed during, and at completion of, commissioning.

3.7 TRAINING OF OWNER PERSONNEL

A. The mechanical commissioning supervisor shall be responsible for training coordination and scheduling of required training and for ensuring that all required training is completed. The Mechanical Contractor shall oversee the content and adequacy of the training of Owner personnel.

B. Prepare and submit a syllabus describing an overview of the program, describing how the program will be conducted, when and where meetings are to be held, names and company affiliations of lecturers, description of contents and outline for each lecture, and recommended reference material and outside reading. Obtain direction from the Owner on which operating personnel shall be instructed in each system.

C. Mechanical Contractor. The mechanical contractor shall have the following training responsibilities:

1. Provide the Owner with training plan one week before the planned training.
2. Provide designated Owner personnel with comprehensive orientation and training in the understanding of the systems and the operation and maintenance of each piece of equipment.
3. Training shall normally start with classroom sessions followed by hands-on training on each piece of equipment.
4. During any demonstration, should the system fail to perform in accordance with the requirements of the O&M manual or sequence of operations, the system will be repaired or adjusted as necessary and the demonstration repeated.
5. The appropriate trade or manufacturer’s representative shall provide the instructions on each major piece of equipment. This person may be the start-up technician for the piece of equipment, the installing contractor or manufacturer’s representative. Practical building operating expertise, as well as in-depth knowledge of all modes of operation of the specific piece of equipment, is required. More than one party may be required to execute the training.
6. The controls contractor shall attend sessions other than the controls training, for each type of equipment controlled by the BAS, to discuss the interaction of the BAS as it relates to the equipment being discussed.

7. The training sessions shall follow the outline in the Table of Contents of the operation and maintenance manual and illustrate whenever possible the use of the O&M manuals for reference.

END OF SECTION 230800

SECTION 230993.11 - SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes control sequences for DDC for HVAC systems, subsystems, and equipment.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 255000 "Integrated Automation Facility Controls" for control equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Analog Output: Proportional output signal (zero- to 10-V dc, 4 to 20 mA).

B. Binary Output: On/off output signal or contact closure.

C. DDC: Direct digital control.

D. Digital Output: Data output that must be interpreted digitally.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. An instrumentation list for each controlled system. Label each element of the controlled system in table format. Show, in the table element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and control device product data sheet number.
2. A complete description of the operation of the control system, including sequences of operation. Include and reference a schematic diagram of the controlled system.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Riser diagrams showing control network layout, communication protocol, and wire types.
2. Schematic diagram of each controlled system. Include all control points labeled with point names shown or listed. Show the location of control elements in the system.
3. Wiring diagram for each controlled system. Show all control elements labels. Where a control element is the same as that shown on the control system schematic, label with the same name. Label all terminals.

1.5 RTU-9 SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS

A. Air-Handling Unit Time Schedule:

1. Unit controls to be provided with 7 week programmable schedule where Occupied/Unoccupied mode can be set in hours.
   a. Base settings (can be adjusted by operator):
      1) Occupied mode: Summer – 75°F; Winter – 70°F. Fan on.
      2) Unoccupied mode: Summer – 80°F; Winter – 65°F. Fan off, cycled when thermostat calls for heating/cooling.

B. Start and Stop Supply Fan(s):

1. Supply fan will run continuously in constant volume mode and be interlocked with exhaust fans serving the kitchen (EF-9A, EF-9B, EF-9C, EF-9D).
   a. Fan starting sequence will have a low temperature limit switch upstream of the cooling coil which will prevent the fan from starting if the temperature is read to be below 35 deg F (adjustable).
2. If all safeties are met, outdoor air intake damper will be commanded to open, upon receiving the end switch signal that the damper is open the fan VFD will be allowed to start the fan.
3. To stop fan, if interlocks are met, the fan will cycle off and then the damper will be given the signal to close.
4. Unit will be provided with fan shutdown relay to connect to the existing Fire Alarm system as well as a duct mounted smoke detector.

C. Filters:

1. Filter bank(s) will have a Differential Pressure switch which will monitor the pressure drop across the filters and generate an alarm once the pressure reaches the preset value for high pressure drop. High pressure drop setting to be set by balancer or as recommended by filter manufacturer.

D. Hydronic Heating Coil:

1. Heating Hot Water heating coil's control valve shall modulate to maintain a preset Supply-Air Temperature. Upon call from thermostat for heating, control valve shall modulate to provide Supply Air that is 15°F higher (adjustable) than space set point. A coupled booster pump (HHWP) will run continuously as long as unit is providing heat through the heating coil.

2. Control Valves shall be normally closed when unit is shut down. Associated booster pump (HHWP) will be stopped when unit is shut down.

3. Freeze protection: if Freeze stat is activated at 37°F (adjustable), internally installed unit heater shall be activated to raise the temperature to 40°F (adjustable).

E. Hydronic Cooling Coil with Face-and-Bypass Dampers:

1. Cooling Coil will operate to maintain preset Supply-Air Temperature by modulating the control valve. Upon call from thermostat for cooling, control valve shall modulate to provide Supply Air that is 8°F lower (adjustable) than the space set point. A coupled booster pump (CHWP) will run continuously while the unit is providing cooling via chilled water coil.

2. Control Valves shall be normally closed when unit is shut down. Associated booster pump (CHWP) will be stopped when the unit is shut down.

3. Face-and-bypass dampers functionality is intended to provide reheat functionality without the use of a traditional reheat coil.
   a. During summer operation when outdoor humidity would exceed indoor recommended maximum 60%RH (adj) the bypass damper shall modulate to allow a portion of the outdoor air to bypass the cooling coil and mix with the cooling coil discharge air thus reheating the unit supply air to maintain correct supply air temperature.
   b. During face-and-bypass operation the cooling coil control valve shall modulate to maximize cooling to ensure maximum dehumidification for the portion of air going through the cooling coil.

4. Freeze protection: if Freeze stat is activated at 37°F (adjustable), the internally installed unit heater shall be activated to raise the temperature to 40°F (adjustable).

F. Coordination of Air-Handling Unit Sequences: Ensure that heating-coil and cooling-coil controls have common inputs and do not overlap in function.

G. Indicate the following on the operator's workstation display terminal:

1. DDC system graphic.
2. DDC system on-off indication (operating or not operating).
3. DDC system occupied/unoccupied mode.
4. Outdoor-air-temperature indication.
5. Supply-fan on-off indication (operating or not operating).
6. Supply duct static-pressure indication.
7. Supply duct static-pressure set point.
8. Supply-fan airflow rate.
9. Supply-fan speed.
10. Heating-coil air-temperature indication.
11. Heating-coil air-temperature set point.
12. Heating-coil pump on-off indication (operating or not operating).
13. Heating-coil control-valve position.
14. Filter air-pressure-drop indication.
15. Filter low-air-pressure drop set point.
16. Filter high-air-pressure drop set point.
17. Supply-air-temperature indication.
18. Supply-air-temperature set point.
19. Cooling-coil leaving-air-temperature indication.
20. Cooling-coil leaving-air-temperature set point.
21. Cooling-coil control-valve position.
22. Space temperature indication.

23. Space temperature set point.

1.6 EF-10D OPERATING SEQUENCE

A. Exhaust fan shall operate in constant volume mode and operation shall be interlocked with EC-10 operation and outdoor air intake damper. EF-10D will functionally replace EF-10A in the controls scheme for EC-10.

B. Start/stop sequence – motorized damper shall be proved open before motor start; motorized damper shall be instructed to close after motor stop.

1.7 TERMINAL UNIT OPERATING SEQUENCE

A. Unit Heater, Electric: remote thermostat cycles fan and heating coil.

1. Space Temperature:

a. Input:

1) Device: Electric single-stage thermostat.
2) Location: Space.

b. Output:

1) Device: Hard wired.
2) Location: Unit control panel.
3) Transference: Electric single-stage contactors.

c. Action: Activate electric coil to provide heating to 45 deg F (adjustable) space temperature.

B. Unit Ventilator:

1. This section provides a general overview of controls functionality of the Unit Ventilators. For more detailed description refer to Section 238220 “Unit Ventilators.”

2. New Unit Ventilators shall be operated in stand-alone mode through built-in digital controller and thermostats. UVs to be provided with capability of BACnet connection for future integration.

3. Unit shall have Scheduling capability to specify Occupied/Unoccupied states.

4. Space Temperature Settings (adj.):

a. Occupied Cooling Temperature: 75 deg F.
b. Occupied Heating Temperature: 70 deg F.
c. Unoccupied Cooling Temperature: 85 deg F.
d. Unoccupied Heating Temperature: 65 deg F.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230993.11

SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:

1. Copper tube and fittings.
2. Steel pipe and fittings.
3. Joining materials.
4. Transition fittings.
5. Dielectric fittings.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Pipe.
2. Fittings.
3. Joining materials.

B. Piping Schedule: Indicate pipe, fitting, and joint types for each piping system.

C. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Other building services.
3. Structural members.

D. Qualification Data: For Installer.

E. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:

1. Heating Hot-Water Piping: 100 psig at 200 deg F.
2. Chilled-Water Piping: 150 psig at 73 deg F.
3. Dual-Temperature Heating and Cooling Water Piping: 100 psig at 180 deg F.
4. Condensate-Drain Piping: 180 deg F.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.

B. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type M.

C. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K.

D. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.

G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

1. Material Group: 1.1.
2. End Connections: Butt welding.
3. Facings: Raised face.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.

1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.

    a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.

B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

E. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

1. Brass or copper end, solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material, rubber gasket, and threaded union.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    b. Central Plastics Company.
    c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
    d. Jomar International Ltd.
    e. Matco-Norca, Inc.
    f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.

2. Description:

    a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    b. Central Plastics Company.
    c. Matco-Norca, Inc.
    d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    e. Wilkins; a Zurn company.

2. Description:

    a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
    c. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    b. Calpico, Inc.
    c. Central Plastics Company.
    d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

2. Description:

    a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
    b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
    d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
    e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Elster Perfection.
    b. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
    c. Matco-Norca, Inc.
    d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    e. Victaulic Company.

2. Description:

    a. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
    b. Electroplated steel nipple, complying with ASTM F 1545.

c. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
d. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
e. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Heating hot-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

B. Heating hot-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be the following:

1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.

C. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

D. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be the following:

1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.

E. Dual-temperature water piping, aboveground – follow specification for heating hot-water piping.

F. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type M, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints or Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.

L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.

M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.

N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.

O. Install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.

P. Install valves according to the following:

1. Section 230523 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping."

Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.

S. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.

T. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.

U. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.

B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples.

C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric nipples.

D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.

B. Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.

C. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet.
3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet.
4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet.
5. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet.
6. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 12 feet.

D. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
7. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

E. Plastic Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.

F. Fiberglass Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.

G. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.

G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.

B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.

C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.

D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply with requirements in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:

1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:

1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

SECTION 232116 - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes special-duty valves and specialties for the following:

1. Hydronic specialty valves.
2. Strainers.
3. Connectors.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for expansion fittings and loops.
2. Section 230523 "General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping" for specification and installation requirements for globe valves common to most piping systems.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Hydronic Specialty Valves: Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
2. Air-control devices.
3. Strainers.
4. Connectors.

B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

C. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HYDRONIC SPECIALTY VALVES

A. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
   b. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
   c. HCI; Hydronics Components Inc.
   d. Taco, Inc.

2. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Plug: Resin.
5. Seat: PTFE.
6. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.
11. Size: 2” and smaller.

B. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
   b. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
   c. HCI; Hydronics Components Inc.
   d. Taco, Inc.

2. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
6. Seat: PTFE.
7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
10. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.
12. Size: 2-1/2” and larger.

C. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Flowcon Americas LLC.
    b. HCI; Hydronics Components Inc.
    c. NuTech Hydronic Specialty Products.
    d. Oventrop Corporation.
    e. Turnstall Corporation.

2. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
3. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel, tamper proof, self-cleaning, and removable.
4. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
5. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
6. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
7. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
8. Minimum CWP Rating: 300 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.2 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AMTROL, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
    d. NuTech Hydronic Specialty Products.
    e. Taco, Inc.

2. Body: Bronze.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AMTROL, Inc.
    b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
    c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
    d. NuTech Hydronic Specialty Products.

e. Taco, Inc.

2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4.
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

2.3 STRAINERS

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, **20**-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

2.4 CONNECTORS

A. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

B. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
2. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
3. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.

B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves at each branch connection to return main.

C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.

D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.

E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.

B. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.

C. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.

D. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

END OF SECTION 232116

SECTION 232123 - HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.

B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of pump. Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.

B. Shop Drawings: For each pump.

1. Show pump layout and connections.
2. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Mechanical Seals: One mechanical seal for each pump.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLOSE-COUPLED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. TACO Incorporated
2. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
3. Grundfos Pumps Corporation
4. Bell & Gossett;

B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically.

C. Pump Construction:

1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, replaceable bronze wear rings, and threaded companion-flange connections.
2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For constant-speed pumps, trim impeller to match specified performance.
3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
4. Seal: Packing seal consisting of stuffing box with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
5. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.

D. Motor: Single or variable speed (refer to drawings); and rigidly mounted to pump casing.

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.2 AUTOMATIC CONDENSATE PUMP UNITS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Little Giant Pump Co.
2. Grundfos Pumps Corporation
3. Diversitech

B. Description: Packaged units with corrosion-resistant pump, plastic tank with cover, and automatic controls. Include factory- or field-installed check valve and a 72-inch minimum, electrical power cord with plug.

2.3 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

A. Suction Diffuser:

1. Angle pattern, 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting.
2. Bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers.
3. Bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes.
4. Drain plug.
5. Factory-fabricated support.

B. Triple-Duty Valve:

1. Angle or straight pattern.
2. 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body, pump-discharge fitting.
3. Drain plug and bronze-fitted shutoff, balancing, and check valve features.
4. Brass gage port**s** with integral check valve and orifice for flow measurement.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Comply with HI 1.4.

B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.

C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.

D. Automatic Condensate Pump Units: Install units for collecting condensate and extend to open drain.

E. Equipment Mounting: Install in-line pumps with continuous-thread hanger rods and vibration isolation hangers of size required to support weight of in-line pumps.

1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.3 ALIGNMENT

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform alignment service.

B. Comply with requirements in Hydronics Institute standards for alignment of pump and motor shaft. Add shims to the motor feet and bolt motor to base frame. Do not use grout between motor feet and base frame.

C. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.

D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where installing piping adjacent to pump, allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.

D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.

E. Install balancing valve, check valve, and shutoff valve on discharge side of pumps.

F. Install Y-type strainer and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.

G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.

H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge or at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple-input selector valve.

I. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.

J. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

K. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Check piping connections for tightness.
3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:

    a. Verify bearing lubrication.
    b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
    c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.

5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
6. Start motor.
7. Open discharge valve slowly.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps.

END OF SECTION 232123

SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealants and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section “Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment”
2. Division 23 Section “Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment”
3. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC"
4. Division 23 Section “HVAC Insulation”
5. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories"

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible Retain paragraph below to comply with LEED Prerequisite IEQ 1.

C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.
3. Seismic-restraint devices.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

D. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:

    a. Lighting fixtures.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Sprinklers.
    e. Access panels.

f. Perimeter moldings.

E. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Lindab Inc.
b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
c. SEMCO Incorporated.
d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
e. Or approved equal.

B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).

C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches (1524 mm) in Diameter: Flanged.

D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches (2286 mm) in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches (1830 mm) in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).
2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

C. PVC-Coated, Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).

2. Minimum Thickness for Factory-Applied PVC Coating: 4 mils (0.10 mm) thick on sheet metal surface of ducts and fittings exposed to corrosive conditions, and minimum 1 mil (0.025 mm) thick on opposite surface.
3. Coating Materials: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on ducts listed and labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 181, Class 1.

D. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

E. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

2.4 DUCT LINER

A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
    b. Johns Manville.
    c. Knauf Insulation.
    d. Owens Corning.

2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
3. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.

    a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Aeroflex USA Inc.
    b. Armacell LLC.
    c. Rubatex International, LLC

2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) or 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick galvanized steel, aluminum, or stainless steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.

D. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm (12.7 m/s).
7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches (100 mm) from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches (300 mm) transversely; at 3 inches (75 mm) from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches (450 mm) longitudinally.
8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:

   a. Fan discharges.
   b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
   c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm (12.7 m/s) or where indicated.

9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.

   a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch (2.4-mm) diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.

10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other

buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:

1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
2. Tape Width: 3 inches (76 mm).
3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg (0.14 L/s per sq. m at 250 Pa) and shall be rated for 10-inch wg (2500-Pa) static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.

E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.

F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:

1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations.

Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.

B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install round and flat-oval ducts in maximum practical lengths.

D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.

E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch (25 mm), plus allowance for insulation thickness.

I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.

J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).

K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.

B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.

D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 DUCT SEALING

A. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":

1. All Ducts: Seal Class A (All Transverse joints, longitudinal seams, and duct wall penetrations)
2. Seal Class is intentionally more stringent than standard SMACNA duct sealing requirements.
3. The maximum leakage allowed in cfm/sf is to be referenced against the seal class listed above and the definitions of seal class from Table 4-1 of the SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual.

Seal Class	**Leakage Class Allowed**
A	6
B	12
C	24
Round Duct, all classes	3

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.

1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.

C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches (610 mm) of each elbow and within 48 inches (1200 mm) of each branch intersection.

D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet (5 m).

F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.6 PAINTING

A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Leakage Tests:

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
2. Test the following systems:

    a. Indoor ducts with a pressure class higher than 3-Inch wg, ducts in risers, and supply ducts upstream of terminal units (e.g. VAV boxes, reheat coils, etc.):
        1) Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
        2) If any of the representative duct sections fail leak testing, then an additional representative duct section totaling no less that 25 percent of total installed duct area shall be tested.
        3) If any section of the second 25 percent fails, then the entire system shall be leak tested.
    b. Outdoor ducts, product-conveying exhaust ducts, and pressurization-critical exhaust ducts:
        1) Test 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.

c. Leakage test requirements are intentionally more stringent that standard SMACNA requirements.

3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:

1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."

a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.

D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.8 DUCT CLEANING

A. Clean new and existing duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.

1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:

1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).

2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.9 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Duct Pressure Class Schedule:

Air System	**Pressure Class**
Ducts Connected to Unit Ventilators	2-inch wg
Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units	2-inch wg
Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:	2-inch wg
Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above	2-inch wg

B. Intermediate Reinforcement:

1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.

C. Liner:

1. Exhaust Air Ducts: Flexible elastomeric, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

D. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."

   a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
   b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
   c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."

   a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
      1) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.

   b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches (305 mm) and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
   c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches (356 mm) and Larger in Diameter: Welded.

E. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."

   a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
   b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.

2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.

   a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 90-degree tap.
   b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): Conical tap.
   c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 233113

SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Barometric relief dampers.
3. Manual volume dampers.
4. Control dampers.
5. Fire dampers.
6. Smoke dampers.
7. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
8. Flange connectors.
9. Duct silencers.
10. Turning vanes.
11. Duct-mounted access doors.
12. Flexible connectors.
13. Flexible ducts.
14. Duct accessory hardware.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 28 Section "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings. Demonstrate compliance with ASTM E477-13.

B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:

a. Special fittings.
b. Manual volume damper installations.
c. Control-damper installations.
d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
e. Duct security bars.
f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.

1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a 2D finish for concealed ducts and 2B finish for exposed ducts.

C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.

D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063, Temper T6.

E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.

F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
4. Nailor Industries Inc.
5. Pottorff.
6. Ruskin Company.
7. Vent Products Company, Inc.

B. Description: Gravity balanced.

C. Maximum Air Velocity: 3000 fpm.

D. Maximum System Pressure: 4-inch wg.

E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 20 gage roll-formed galvanized steel or 0.125-inch extruded aluminum, with welded corners and mounting flange.

F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, maximum 6-inch width, 28 gage roll-formed galvanized steel or 0.070-inch extruded aluminum with sealed edges.

G. Blade Action: Parallel.

H. Blade Seals: Extruded vinyl, mechanically locked.

I. Blade Axles:

1. Material: Nonmetallic or plated steel.

J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum or Galvanized steel.

K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

L. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.

M. Accessories:

1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
3. Electric actuators.
4. Chain pulls.
5. Screen Mounting for open installations:
   a. Front mounted in sleeve.
      1) Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage minimum.
      2) Sleeve Length: 6 inches minimum.
   b. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
   c. Screen Material: Galvanized steel or Aluminum.
   d. Screen Type: Insect.
6. 90-degree stops.

2.4 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Manual Volume Dampers

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
   b. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
   c. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
   d. Nailor Industries Inc.
   e. Pottorff.
   f. Ruskin Company.
   g. Vent Products Company, Inc.

2. Performance
   a. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
   b. Pressures to 4.0 in wg.
   c. Velocities to 2000 fpm.
   d. Temperatures to 180 degF.

3. Linkage outside airstream and concealed in jamb.
4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
5. Frames:

   a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- thick galvanized sheet steel, 0.10-inch- thick aluminum sheet channels, or 0.05-inch- thick stainless steel to match material of connecting ductwork.
   b. Mitered and welded corners.
   c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.

6. Blades:

   a. 6” wide.

b. Multiple blade.
c. Opposed-blade design.
d. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
e. Galvanized-steel, extruded aluminum, or stainless-steel to match frame material.

7. Blade Axles: Plated steel.
8. Bearings:

a. Molded synthetic.
b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

9. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel or aluminum to match frame material.

B. Jackshaft:

1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

C. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.5 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Ruskin CD60 Low Leakage Control Damper or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Ruskin Company.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.

B. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream and concealed in frame, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
1. Leakage shall be less than 3 cfm/sq ft at 1-inch of static pressure.
2. AMCA licensed as a Class 1A damper.

C. Frames:

1. Hat shaped.
2. 16 gage galvanized steel or 0.125-inch thick aluminum to match material of connecting ductwork
3. Mitered and welded corners.

D. Blades:

1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches.
2. Opposed-blade design.
3. Galvanized-steel with double skin construction or Extruded Aluminum to match frame material.
4. Airfoil shaped.
5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.

E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- diameter; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.

1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 72 to plus 275 deg F.

2. Removable control shaft extends 6 inches beyond frame

F. Bearings:

1. Stainless-steel sleeve.
2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.6 DYNAMIC FIRE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ruskin Company.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Pottorff.
4. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
5. Nailor Industries Inc.

B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.

C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.

D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours, as required by the Building Code to match allowable resistance for each penetrated construction’s fire rating.

E. Integral Sleeve Frame:
1. Material: 20 gage roll formed galvanized steel.
2. Frame and sleeve are roll formed together as one-piece integral sleeve frame.
3. Length: 16 inches.

F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.

G. Blades:

1. Style: Curtain type, out of airstream.
2. Action: Spring or gravity closure upon fusible link release.
3. Material: 24 gage roll formed, galvanized steel.

H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.

I. Heat-Responsive Device: UL listed, Replaceable, 165 deg F (74 deg C) rated, fusible links.

2.7 SMOKE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ruskin Company.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Pottorff.
4. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
5. Nailor Industries Inc.

B. General Requirements: Label according to UL 555S by an NRTL.

C. Leakage: Class I.

D. Frame: 5 inches thick, 16 gage roll formed, galvanized steel hat-shaped channel, reinforced at corners.
1. Style: Airfoil-shaped, single piece, double skin.
2. Action: Opposed.
3. Orientation: Horizontal.
4. Material: Minimum 14 gage equivalent thickness, galvanized steel.
5. Width: Maximum 6 inches.

E. Bearings: Self-lubricating stainless steel sleeve, turning in extruded hole in frame.

F. Seals:
1. Blade: Inflatable silicone fiberglass material to maintain smoke leakage rating to a minimum of 450 degF.
2. Jamb: Stainless steel, flexible metal compression type.

G. Linkage: Concealed in frame.

H. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.

I. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 20 gage galvanized sheet steel; minimum 12 inches long.

J. Master control panel for use in dynamic smoke-management systems.

K. Damper Motors: Open/close action.

L. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and Division 26 Sections.
3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.

M. Accessories:

1. Auxiliary switches for position indication.
2. Test and reset switches, remote mounted

2.8 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ruskin Company.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
3. Pottorff.
4. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
5. Nailor Industries Inc.

B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.

C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm velocity.

D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 and 3 hours, as required by the Building Code to match allowable resistance for each penetrated construction’s fire rating.

E. Leakage: Class I.

F. Frame: 5 inches thick, 16 gage roll formed, galvanized steel hat-shaped channel, reinforced at corners.

G. Heat-Responsive Device:
   1. Fire stat: UL classified dual temperature device allows the damper to be re-opened after initial closure from high heat.
      a. Electrically and mechanically locks damper in closed position when duct temperatures exceed 165 degrees F.
      b. Allow damper to remain operable through a high limit temperature sensor for smoke management purposes while temperature is below 250 degrees F or 350 degrees F.
      c. Blade position indicator switches: Two position indicator switches linked directly to damper blade in order to allow remote indication of damper blade position.

H. Blades:
   1. Style: Airfoil-shaped, single piece, double skin.
   2. Action: Opposed.
   3. Material: Minimum 14 gage equivalent thickness, galvanized steel.
   4. Width: Maximum 6 inches.

I. Bearings: Self-lubricating stainless steel sleeve, turning in extruded hole in frame.

J. Seals:
   1. Blade: Inflatable silicone fiberglass material to maintain smoke leakage rating to a minimum of 450 degF.
   2. Jamb: Stainless steel, flexible metal compression type.

K. Linkage: Concealed in frame.

L. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.

M. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 20 gage galvanized sheet steel; minimum 12 inches long.

N. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.
   1. Type: photoelectronic, outside of sleeve with sensing tube in air stream
   2. Mounting: Factory mounted.

O. Actuator:
   1. Type: Electric 120 V, 60 Hz, two-position, fail close.
   2. Mounting: External or internal as required for access.

P. Master control panel for use in dynamic smoke-management systems.

Q. Damper Motors: Modulating action.

R. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

   1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and Division 26 Sections.
3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf.
5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F.
6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft., size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf.
7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.

S. Accessories:

1. Auxiliary switches for position indication.
2. Test and reset switches, remote mounted.

2.9 FLANGE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Nexus PDQ; Division of Shilco Holdings Inc.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.

C. Material: Galvanized steel.

D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.10 DUCT SILENCERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Vibro-Acoustics (Basis of Design)
2. Industrial Acoustics Company.
3. Pottorf.
4. Price.
5. Ruskin.

B. General Requirements:

1. Factory fabricated. Silencers shall be of the size, configuration, capacity and acoustic performance as scheduled on the drawings.

2. Silencer inlet and outlet connection dimensions must be equal to the duct sizes shown on the drawings. Duct transitions at silencers are not permitted unless shown on the contract drawings.

3. Silencers shall be constructed in accordance with ASHRAE and SMACNA standards for the pressure and velocity classification specified for the air distribution system in which it is installed. Material gauges noted in other sections are minimums. Material gauges shall be increased as required for the system pressure and velocity classification. The silencers shall not fail structurally when subjected to a differential air pressure of 8 inches water gauge.

4. All casing seams and joints shall be lock-formed and sealed or stitch welded and sealed except as noted in Section E below, to provide leakage-resistant construction. Airtight construction shall be achieved by use of a duct-sealing compound supplied and installed by the contractor at the jobsite.

5. All perforated steel shall be adequately stiffened to insure flatness and form. All spot welds shall be painted.

6. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, packing materials, and accessory materials shall have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84, NFPA 255 or UL 723.

7. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

C. Shape:
1. Rectangular elbow with splitters or baffles.

D. Rectangular Silencer Outer Casing: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90, galvanized sheet steel, 18 gauge thick.

E. Inner Casing and Baffles: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90, galvanized sheet metal, 22 gauge, and with 1/8-inch-diameter perforations. All acoustical splitters shall be internally radiused and aerodynamically designed for efficient turning of the air. Half and full splitters are required as necessary to achieve the scheduled insertion loss. All elbow silencers with a turning cross-section dimension greater than 48” shall have at least two half splitters and one full splitter.

F. Special Construction:

1. Suitable for outdoor use.

G. Connection Sizes: Match connecting ductwork unless otherwise indicated.

H. Principal Sound-Absorbing Mechanism:

1. Dissipative type with fill material.

    a. Fill Material: Media shall be of acoustic quality, shot-free glass fiber insulation with long, resilient fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Glass fiber density and compression shall be as required to ensure conformance with laboratory test data. Glass fiber shall be packed with a minimum of 15% compression during silencer assembly. Media shall be resilient such that it will not crumble or break, and conform to irregular surfaces. Media shall not cause or accelerate corrosion of aluminum or steel. Mineral wool will not be permitted as a substitute for glass fiber.

I. Fabricate silencers to form rigid units that will not pulsate, vibrate, rattle, or otherwise react to system pressure variations. Do not use mechanical fasteners for unit assemblies.

1. Joints: Lock formed and sealed or stitch welded and sealed.
2. Suspended Units: Factory-installed suspension hooks or lugs attached to frame in quantities and spaced to prevent deflection or distortion.
3. Reinforcement: Cross or trapeze angles for rigid suspension.

J. Accessories:
1. Factory-installed end caps to prevent contamination during shipping.

K. Source Quality Control: Test according to ASTM E 477.
1. Record acoustic ratings, including dynamic insertion loss and generated-noise power levels with an airflow of at least 2000-fpm face velocity.
2. Leak Test: Test units for airtightness at 200 percent of associated fan static pressure or 6-inch wg static pressure, whichever is greater.

L. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. See duct silencer performance schedule on mechanical drawings.

2.11 TURNING VANES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Elgen Manufacturing.
4. METALAIRE, Inc.
5. SEMCO Incorporated.
6. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

E. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches (1200 mm) wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.12 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
3. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
4. Elgen Manufacturing.
5. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
6. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
7. McGill AirFlow LLC.
8. Nailor Industries Inc.
9. Pottorff.
10. Ventfabrics, Inc.
11. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."

1. Door:

a. Double wall, rectangular.
b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
c. Vision panel.
d. Hinges and Latches: Continuous piano hinge and cam latches.
e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.

2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
3. Number of Hinges and Locks:

a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Continuous and two sash locks.
c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

2.13 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Flame Gard, Inc.
3. 3M.

B. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.

C. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch carbon or 0.0428-inch stainless steel.

D. Fasteners: Carbon or Stainless steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.

E. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.

F. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

2.14 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Duro Dyne Inc.
3. Elgen Manufacturing.
4. Ventfabrics, Inc.
5. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.

C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 5-3/4 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- wide, 0.028-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.

E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.

1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.

1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd..

2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.
3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F.

G. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.

1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch movement at start and stop.

2.15 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following

1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
2. Thermaflex.
3. Hart & Cooley, Inc.
4. Casco.

B. Uninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.

1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.

C. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.
4. Insulation R-Value: R-4.2 minimum at 75 degF.

D. Flexible Duct Connectors:

1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.
2. Non-Clamp Connectors: Liquid adhesive plus type.

2.16 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.

B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.

C. Install back-draft dampers on exhaust discharges and outside air intakes. Coordinate with fan specification to determine if backdraft dampers are already provided at the fan unit.

D. Install control dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.

1. All outdoor air intake and exhaust systems shall be equipped with motorized dampers that will automatically shut when the systems or spaces served are not in use.

E. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.

1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.

F. Provide concealed remote volume damper operators for all volume dampers in inaccessible locations. Operator shall be installed within the ceiling or wall such that the unit is flush with the finished surface. Operators for diffusers shall not be located in active supply portions of the diffuser, but may be installed in blank-off locations and/or return diffusers. Coordinate location of operator with the Engineer.

G. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

H. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.

I. Provide fire and smoke dampers, fire dampers at locations where ducts and outlets pass through fire rated components taking into account the matching of fire area to that of the adjacent duct. Install with required perimeter mounting angles, sleeves, breakaway duct connections, corrosion resistant springs, bearings, bushings and hinges.
   1. Install fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.
   2. Install all dampers in accordance with SMACNA fire damper guide and manufacturer's instructions.
   3. Install smoke dampers and combination smoke and fire dampers in accordance with NFPA 92A.
   4. Install dampers square and free from racking with blades running horizontally.
   5. Do not compress or stretch damper frame into duct or opening.
   6. Handle damper using sleeve or frame. Do not lift damper using blades, actuator, or jack shaft.
   7. Install bracing for multiple section assemblies to support assembly weight and to hold against system pressure. Install bracing as needed.

J. Install duct silencers in strict accordance to manufacturer's written installation instructions.

K. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:

   1. On both sides of duct coils.
   2. Upstream and downstream from duct filters.
   3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
   4. At drain pans and seals.
   5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
   6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
   7. Control devices requiring inspection.
   8. Elsewhere as indicated.

L. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

M. Access Door Sizes:

   1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
   2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
   3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
   4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
   5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
   6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.

N. Label access doors according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.

O. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

P. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.

Q. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

R. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

S. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.

T. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

U. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) movement during start and stop of fans.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.
6. Ensure duct silencers are installed with airflow arrows in direction of airflow.

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 233400 - HVAC FANS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Centrifugal roof exhaust fans.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

   1. Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each fan.
   2. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
   3. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
   4. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
   5. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
   6. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
   7. Roof curbs/rails.
   8. Fan speed controllers.

B. Shop Drawings:

   1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
   2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
   4. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and wind restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
   5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, and base weights.

C. Coordination Drawings: Show fan layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate and certify field measurements.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For centrifugal fans to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design equipment isolation base to comply with wind performance requirements, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Equipment Isolation Base with Restrained Spring Isolators shall be designed to provide static equipment support, 90% dampening efficiency vibration isolation and adequate win restraint. Isolation base to be installed to provide 30-inch clearance above roof surface by use of roof equipment curb or rooftop equipment rails.

C. Wind-Restraint Loading:
1. Basic Wind Speed: **98 mph**.
2. Wind Importance Factor **1.15**.
3. Wind Exposure Category: **C**.
4. Building Classification Category: **III**.

D. Unit shall withstand the effects wind loading criteria per 2015 IBC for continuous load path requirements and ASCE 7 2010 SEI/ASCE 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the forces specified."

E. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof curb/rails to roof structure and fan’s isolation base to roof curb/rails. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

C. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Belts: **One** set for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF EXHAUST FANS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Greenheck (Basis-of-Design)
2. Loren Cook Company
3. PennBarry
4. Twin City Fan & Blowers

B. Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.

1. Upblast Units: Provide spun-aluminum discharge baffle to direct discharge air upward, with rain and snow drains.
2. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.

C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.

D. Belt Drives:

1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
4. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
5. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.

E. Accessories:
1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
2. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.

3. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.

F. Vibration Isolation Base with Restrained Spring Isolators:

1. Provide with factory-fabricated steel base with restrained spring isolators for exterior installation.
2. Galvanized steel; Size as required to suit fan base.
3. Restrained Spring Isolators sized with minimum 90% dampening efficiency and able to withstand the wind loads thru restraints.
4. For further requirements refer to Section 230548 “Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC.”

G. Overall Height Clearance above Roof surface: 30 inches.

1. Provide rooftop equipment rails to support and securely mount the vibration isolation base.
2. Equipment rails to be securely fastened to the roof structure to withstand the wind loads.

2.2 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

B. Fan Performance Ratings: Establish flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests and ratings according to AMCA 210/ASHRAE 51, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Certified Aerodynamic Performance Rating."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install fans level and plumb.

B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to the final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.

D. Equipment Mounting:

1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

E. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.

F. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and hangers. Vibration-control devices are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

G. Curb Support: Install roof curb on roof structure, level and secure, according to "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual," Low-Slope Membrane Roofing Construction Details Section, Illustration "Raised Curb Detail for Rooftop Air Handling Units and Ducts." Install and secure centrifugal fans on curbs, and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction. Secure units to curb support with anchor bolts.

H. Unit Support: Install fans level on structural curbs or pilings. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure units to structural support with anchor bolts.

I. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

J. Label fans according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Install ducts adjacent to fans to allow service and maintenance.

C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
5. Adjust belt tension.
6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
9. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
10. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

D. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Controls and equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fans.

END OF SECTION 233416

SECTION 234100 – HVAC AIR CLEANING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pleated panel filters.
2. Filter gages.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions; operating characteristics; required clearances and access; rated flow capacity, including initial and final pressure drop at rated airflow; efficiency and test method; fire classification; furnished specialties; and accessories for each model indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: For air filters. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Show filter rack assembly, dimensions, materials, and methods of assembly of components.
2. Include setting drawings, templates, and requirements for installing anchor bolts and anchorages.
3. Include diagram for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of filter and rack to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Provide one (1) complete set of filters for each filter bank.

1.5 QUALITY INSURANCE

A. ASHRAE Compliance:
   1. Comply with ASHRAE 52.2 for MERV for methods of testing and rating air-filter units.

B. Comply with UL 900.

C. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PLEATED PANEL FILTERS (PRE-FILTERS)

A. Description: Factory-fabricated, self-supported, extended-surface, pleated, panel-type, disposable air filters with holding frames.

   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

      a. Camfil-Farr.
      b. Filtration Group.
      c. Tri-Dim Filter Corporation.
      d. AAF International.

B. Media: Cotton and synthetic fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive.

   1. Media shall be coated with an antimicrobial agent.
   2. Separators shall be bonded to the media to maintain pleat configuration.
   3. Welded-wire grid shall be on downstream side to maintain pleat.
   4. Media shall be bonded to frame to prevent air bypass.
   5. Support members on upstream and downstream sides to maintain pleat spacing.

C. Filter-Media Frame: Cardboard frame with perforated metal retainer sealed or bonded to the media.

D. Mounting Frames: Welded galvanized steel, with gaskets and fasteners; suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.
   1. MERV Rating: 6 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2.

2.2 RIGID CELL BOX FILTERS

A. Description: Factory-fabricated, adhesive-coated, disposable, packaged air filters with media perpendicular to airflow, and with holding frames.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Camfil-Farr.
    b. Filtration Group.
    c. Tri-Dim Filter Corporation.
    d. AAF International.

B. Media: Fibrous material constructed so individual pleats are maintained in tapered form under rated-airflow conditions by flexible internal supports.

1. Media shall be coated with an antimicrobial agent.

C. Filter-Media Frames: Hard polyurethane foam.

D. Mounting Frames: Welded galvanized steel, with gaskets and fasteners; suitable for bolting together into built-up filter banks.
1. MERV Rating: 14 when tested according to ASHRAE 52.2.

2.3 FILTER GAGES

A. Diaphragm-type gage with dial and pointer in metal case, vent valves, black figures on white background, and front recalibration adjustment.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
    b. Airguard.

2. Diameter: 4-1/2 inches.

3. Scale range for filter media having a recommended final resistance of:

    a. 0.5-inch wg or less: 0- to 0.5-inch wg.
    b. 0.5- to 1.0-inch wg or less: 0- to 1.0-inch wg.
    c. 1.0- to 2.0-inch wg or less: 0- to 2.0-inch wg.
    d. 2.0- to 3.0-inch wg or less: 0- to 3.0-inch wg.
    e. 3.0- to 4.0-inch wg or less: 0- to 4.0-inch wg.

B. Manometer-Type Filter Gage: Molded plastic, with epoxy-coated aluminum scale and logarithmic-curve tube gage with integral leveling gage, graduated to read from 0- to 4.0-inch wg, and accurate within 3 percent of the full-scale range.

C. Accessories: Static-pressure tips, tubing, gage connections, and mounting bracket.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Position each filter unit with clearance for normal service and maintenance. Anchor filter holding frames to substrate.

B. Install filters in position to prevent passage of unfiltered air.

C. Install filter gage for each filter bank.

D. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.

E. Install filter-gage, static-pressure taps upstream and downstream from filters. Install filter gages on filter banks with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream from filters. Mount filter gages on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in an accessible position. Adjust and level inclined gages.

F. Coordinate filter installations with duct and air-handling-unit installations.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Test for leakage of unfiltered air while system is operating.
2. HEPA Filters: Pressurize housing to a minimum of 3.0-inch wg or to designed operating pressure, whichever is higher; and test housing joints, door seals, and sealing edges of filter for air leaks according to pressure-decay method in ASME N510.

D. Air filter will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.3 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing of air-handling and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filter media.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed products and accessories from damage during construction.

END OF SECTION 234100

SECTION 235413 – ELECTRIC UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Electric unit heaters and accessories complete with controls.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Modine Manufacturing Co.

B. Marley Engineered Products, LLC

C. INDEECO Heating Solutions

2.2 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

A. Standards

1. Units shall be UL and C-UL listed for safe operation, construction, and performance. Units shall be listed for use in both the U.S. and Canada for commercial and industrial installations. (Models HER, VE, and PTE)
2. Explosion proof units, model HEX4 shall be UL listed and CSA certified for use in the following hazardous areas:
3. Class I, Divisions 1 & 2, Groups C & D
4. Class II, Division 1, Groups E, F & G
5. Class II, Division 2, Groups F & G
6. Class I, Zones 1 & 2, Group IIA & IIB
7. Units shall be rated for National Electrical Code and Canadian Electrical Code Temperature Code T3B 165°C (329°F).

B. Mechanical Configuration
1. Heater shall be a Modine model HER horizontal air delivery electric unit heater of the size, capacity, and voltage as listed in the equipment schedule.
2. Heater shall be a Modine Power-Throw™ model PTE horizontal air delivery electric unit heater of the size, capacity, and voltage as listed in the equipment schedule.
3. Heater shall be a Modine model VE vertical air delivery electric unit heater of the size, capacity, and voltage as listed in the equipment schedule.
4. Heater shall be a Modine model HEX4 horizontal air delivery electric unit heater of the size, capacity, and voltage as listed in the equipment schedule.

C. Unit Casing
1. Unit shall have a steel casing that is treated for corrosion resistance and painted with an electrostatically applied, baked on, gray-green polyester powder coat paint finish. (Models HER, VE, and PTE)
2. Model HER unit shall have a squared corner casing and the top shall have two threaded holes (3/8" - 16 TAP) for threaded rod suspension. The bottom of casing shall have a hinged panel for service access to wiring and controls.
3. Model PTE unit shall consist of two circular steel covers bolted together with the heating element supports. The air discharge side cover shall have a die-formed fan venturi. The back cover shall have a depression for motor mounting with openings for cooling-air circulation for the motor. Four hanging brackets shall be provided for use with 5/8” diameter suspension rods.
4. Model VE unit shall consist of two circular steel covers bolted together with the heating element supports. The bottom cover shall have a die-formed fan venturi. The top cover shall include an inner cone for motor mounting and to provide a heat shield from radiant and convective heat from the heating elements.
5. Model HEX4 shall be fabricated from 14 gauge steel with a baked epoxy powder coating over a 5-stage
6. pretreatment including iron phosphate, for protection from corrosive atmospheres. The cabinet shall include two (2) 9/16” mounting holes located on the top.

D. Heating Elements
1. Elements shall consist of a nickel-chromium resistance wire surrounded with magnesium oxide and sheathed in steel spiral-finned tubes. Elements shall have kilowatt rating as listed in the equipment schedule. (Models HER, VE, and PTE)
2. The elements shall consist of high-quality resistance wire embedded in a compacted magnesium oxide refractory and sheathed in metal tubing. The heater is to be protected by

a snap-action bimetal temperature high-limit, which shall not be affected by altitude or changes in atmospheric pressure. The high-limit shall be an automatic reset type and will shut off the heater if the exchanger temperature rises due to a lack of heat dissipation.

E. Motor and Propeller Fan
1. Each unit shall have a single 208-230V/60Hz/1ph motor. The motor shall be totally enclosed, continuous-duty, with automatic resetting, thermal-overload protection. Propeller fan shall be directly connected to the motor shaft and be statically balanced. The motor shall be mounted to the unit with rubber vibration absorbing material. (Models HER, VE, and PTE)
2. Each unit shall have a ball bearing, permanently lubricated, thermally protected explosion-proof motor rated for continuous duty. The fan blades shall be aluminum to prevent sparking. Propeller fan shall be directly connected to the motor shaft and be statically balanced. The fan shall be shielded with a heavy-duty epoxy coated guard of two piece construction to provide easy maintenance and cleaning of the fan and motor. The guard shall not allow a 1/4" or larger probe to enter. (Model HEX4 only)

F. Electrical
1. All units shall have built-in contactors and control circuit transformers (where required) to provide single-source power connection.
2. Models VE and PTE, sizes 300 through 500 shall have two sets of contactors to provide for two-stage operation.
3. Model HEX4 shall have a contactor coil that is encapsulated severe duty and separately fuse-protected.
4. Fuse blocks and factory-supplied fuses shall be installed on all models except HER 30, 50, and 75 with 208 volt or 230-volt single or 3-phase power supply. A wiring diagram and grounding lug shall be included in each control compartment.
5. Transformers shall be factory installed on all models with 460 volt, 3 phase power supply to permit 230 volt motor operation. (Models HER, VE, and PTE)
6. Transformers shall be factory installed on all HEX4 models with the primary voltage being the same as the heater voltage and the secondary being 120V grounded circuit.
7. Electrical control components shall be safely enclosed in a separate junction box. A wiring diagram and a grounding lug shall be included in each power junction box.
8. The Model HEX4 control center shall be enclosed in an explosion-proof control enclosure with a large threaded cover for easy access. The control center shall include a printed circuit board with a terminal block for room thermostat connection and in-line fuse protection, with both an operating fuse and a spare fuse.
9. (opt) The HEX4 heater shall be supplied with a built-in explosion-proof room thermostat mounted on the control enclosure side of the heater.

G. Air Deflectors
1. Adjustable horizontal air deflectors shall be furnished. (Models HER and PTE)
2. Louvers shall be individually adjustable and made of anodized extruded aluminum. (Model HEX4)

2.3 THERMOSTATS

A. Controls shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, "Controls."

B. Temperature Controller used as a remote control thermostat for individual circuits requiring a weatherproof device.
   1. Thermostat uses a temperature-sensitive bi-metal disc in an epoxy-sealed housing. Upon reaching the non-adjustable calibrated setpoint, the disc activates a plunger, causing the heavy duty switch contacts to open.
   2. Thermostat is normally used as an across-the-line switch but may be used to operate contactor coils and other similar devices. Heating-Only Thermostat -Opens on a temperature rise.

C. Single-Stage, Heating-Cooling Thermostat: Adjustable, heating-cooling, wall-mounted unit with fan on-automatic selector.

D. Control Wiring: Plenum Rated 18/2 Security Cable Stranded CMP - Alarm, Audio, Signal, Control Wire - In Wall CL2, CMR, and CMP

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Suspended Units: Suspend from structure using threaded rods, spring hangers, and building attachments. Secure rods to unit hanger attachments. Adjust hangers so unit is level and plumb.

B. Base-Mounted Units: Secure units to substrate. Provide optional bottom closure base if required by installation conditions.

C. Controls: Install thermostats as indicated on the drawings.

D. Wiring Method: Install control wiring in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal control wiring except in unfinished spaces.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

   1. Perform electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection.
   2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation, product capability, and compliance with requirements.
   3. Verify that fan wheel is rotating in the correct direction and is not vibrating or binding.
   4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.

END OF SECTION 235413

SECTION 237416– PACKAGED ROOF TOP UNIT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Section Includes:

A. Semi-custom Packaged Rooftop Air Conditioners

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Indicate assembly, unit dimensions, weight loading, required clearances, construction details, field connection details, electrical characteristics and connection requirements.

B. Product Data:
1. Provide literature that indicates dimensions, weights, capacities, ratings, and electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
2. Provide data on filter media, filter performance, filter assembly, and filter frames.
3. Provide computer generated fan curves with specified operating point clearly plotted.

1.3 OPERATION AND MAINTANENCE DATA

A. Maintenance Data: Provide instructions for installation, maintenance and service

1.4 WARRANTY

A. The manufacturer shall provide 12 month parts only warranty. Defective parts will be repaired or replaced during the warranty period at no charge. The warranty period shall commence at start up, or 6 months after shipment, whichever occurs first.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience, who issues complete catalog data on total product.

B. Startup must be done by trained personnel experienced with rooftop equipment.

C. Do not operate units for any purpose, temporary or permanent, until ductwork is clean, filters and remote controls are in place, bearings lubricated, and manufacturers' installation instructions have been followed.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, protect and handle products to site.

B. Handle carefully to avoid damage to components, enclosures, and finish

C. Store in a clean, dry place to protect from weather and construction traffic.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis of Design: Daikin Applied

B. Manufacturers that will be considered providing that they comply with contract documents: Mammoth, Governaire

2.2 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

A. Furnish as shown on plans, RoofPak Singlezone Heating and Cooling Unit(s) . Unit performance and electrical characteristics shall be per the job schedule.

B. Configuration: Fabricate as detailed on prints and drawings.

C. The complete unit shall be ETL listed.

D. Each unit shall be specifically designed for outdoor rooftop application and include a weatherproof cabinet. Units shall be of a modular design with factory installed access sections available to provide maximum design flexibility.

E. Unit shall be completely factory assembled and shipped in one piece.

F. Unit to be shipped
1. The unit shall undergo a complete factory run test prior to shipment. The factory test shall include final balancing of all fan assemblies, a refrigeration circuit runtest, a unit control system operations checkout, a unit refrigerant leak test, and a final unit inspection.

G. All units shall have decals and tags to indicate caution areas and aid unit service. Unit nameplates shall be fixed to the main control panel door. Electrical wiring diagrams shall be attached to the control panels. Installation, operating and maintenance bulletins and start-up forms shall be supplied with each unit.

H. Performance: All scheduled capacities and face areas are the minimum accepted value. All scheduled amps, KW, and HP are maximum accepted values that allow scheduled capacity to be met.

2.3 CABINET

A. Unit cabinet shall be designed to operate at total static pressures up to 6.5 inches w.g.

B. Exterior surfaces shall be constructed of pre-painted galvanized steel for aesthetics and long term durability. Paint finish to include a base primer with a high quality, polyester resin topcoat of a neutral beige color. Finished surface to withstand a minimum 750-hour salt spray test in accordance with ASTM B117 standard for salt spray resistance.

C. Service doors shall be provided on both sides of each section in order to provide user access to all unit components. Service doors shall be constructed of heavy gauge galvanized steel with galvanized steel interior liners. All service doors shall be mounted on multiple, stainless steel hinges and shall be secured by a stainless steel latch system that is operated by a single handle. The latch system shall feature a staggered engagement for ease of operation and a safety catch shall protect the user from injury in case a positive pressure door is opened while the fan is operating. Removable panels, or doors secured by multiple, mechanical fasteners are not acceptable.

D. The unit base frame shall be constructed of 13 gauge pre-painted galvanized steel.

E. The unit base shall overhang the roof curb for positive water runoff and shall have a formed recess that seats on the roof curb gasket to provide a positive, weathertight seal. Lifting brackets shall be provided on the unit base with lifting holes to accept cable or chain hooks.

2.4 FANS

A. All fan assemblies shall be statically and dynamically balanced at the factory, including a final trim balance, prior to shipment. All fan assemblies shall employ solid steel fan shafts. Heavy-duty pillow block type, self-aligning, grease lubricated ball bearings shall be used. Bearings shall be sized to provide an L-50 life at 200,000 hours. The entire fan assembly shall be isolated from the fan bulkhead and mounted on spring isolators with seismic restraints. pitch V-belt drives with matching belts shall be provided. V-belt drives shall be selected at the manufacturers standard service factor.

B. Fan motors shall be heavy-duty 1800 rpm premium efficiency. Fan motors to have grease lubricated ball bearings. Motors shall be mounted on an adjustable base that provides for proper alignment and belt tension adjustment.

C. Motor shall be Open Drip proof.

2.5 VARIABLE AIR VOLUME CONTROL

A. Separate electronic variable frequency drives shall be provided for each fan. Drives shall be independent. Drives shall be cooled by the filtered mixed air stream. The completed unit assembly shall be listed by a recognized safety agency, such as ETL. Drives are to be accessible through a hinged door assembly complete with a single handle latch mechanism. Mounting arrangements that expose drives to high temperature, unfiltered ambient air are not acceptable. The unit manufacturer shall install all power and control wiring.

B. A manual bypass contactor arrangement shall be provided. The bypass arrangement will allow fan operation at full design CFM, even if the drive has been removed for service.

C. The drive output shall be controlled by the factory installed main unit control system and drive status and operating speed shall be monitored and displayed at the main unit control panel. The supply and return/exhaust fan drive outputs shall be independently controlled in order to provide the control needed to maintain building pressure control. Supply and return/exhaust air fan drives that are slaved off a common control output are not acceptable.

D. All drives shall be factory run tested prior to unit shipment.

2.6 ELECTRICAL

A. Unit wiring shall comply with NEC requirements and with all applicable UL standards. All electrical components shall be UL recognized where applicable. All wiring and electrical components provided with unit shall be number and color coded and labeled according to the electrical diagram provided for easy identification.

B. The unit shall be provided with a factory wired weatherproof control panel. Unit shall have a power terminal block for main power connection. A terminal board shall be provided for low voltage control wiring. Branch circuit short circuit protection, 115 volt control circuit transformer and fuse, system switches, and a high temperature sensor. Each compressor and condenser fan motor shall be furnished with contactors and inherent thermal overload protection. Supply and return fan motors shall have contactors and external overload protection. Knockouts shall be provided in the of the main control panels for field wiring entrance.

C. All 115-600 volt internal and external wiring between control boxes and components shall be protected from damage by raceways or liquid tight conduit.

D. The receptacle shall be powered by a field supplied 115V source.

E. Single non-fused disconnect swtich shall be provided for connecting electrical power at the unit. Disconnect switches shall be mounted internal to the control panel and operated by an externally mounted handle. Externally mounted handle is designed to prohibit opening of the control panel door without the use of a service tool.

F. Unit SCCR rating to be 15 kAIC.

G. Phase failure and under voltage protection shall be provided to prevent damage from single phasing, phase reversal, and low voltage conditions.

H. Smoke detectors to be ionization type, which responds to invisible products of combustion without requiring the sensing of heat, flame or visible smoke. Upon sensing smoke, the unit shall provide a control output for use by building management system such that the building management system can issue the required safety commands.

I. Factory mounted smoke detectors shall be installed in the supply and return air opening.

2.7 HEATING AND COOLING SECTIONS

A. The cooling coil section shall be installed in a draw through configuration, upstream of the supply air fan. The coil section shall be complete with factory piped cooling coil and sloped drain pan. Hinged access doors on both sides of the section shall provide convenient access to the cooling coil and drain pan for inspection and cleaning.

B. All coils are fabricated of seamless 5/8" diameter copper tubing that is mechanically expanded into high efficiency aluminum plate fins. Coils shall be multi-row, staggered tube design per the job schedule. All coils shall be factory leak tested with high-pressure air under water. All coils shall be ARI certified.

C. Chilled water coils shall have copper headers complete with supply, return and threaded vent connections. Chilled water coils shall also include threaded drain connections. Glycol shall be used to the water circuit to protect against coil freeze-up.

D. Hot water coils shall have copper headers complete with supply, return, and threaded vent connections. Glycol shall be used to the water circuit to protect against coil freeze-up.

E. A painted galvanized steel, positively sloped drain pan shall be provided with the cooling coil. The drain pan shall extend beyond the leaving side of the coil and underneath the cooling coil connections. The drain pan shall have a minimum slope of 1/8" per foot to provide positive draining. The drain pan shall be connected to a threaded drain connection extending through the unit base. Units with stacked cooling coils shall be provided with a secondary drain pan piped to the primary drain pan.

F. Coils shall be factory leak tested with high pressure air under water.

2.8 FILTERS

A. Unit shall be provided with a draw-through filter section. The filter section shall be supplied complete with the filter rack as an integral part of the unit. The draw-through filter section shall be provided with panel filters.

B. 2" thick American Air Filter 30% efficient MERV 8 pleated panel filters shall be provided. Filters shall be frame mounted and shall slide into galvanized steel racks contained within the unit. Filters shall be installed in an angular arrangement to maximize filter area and minimize filter face velocity. Filters shall be accessible from both sides of the filter section.

2.9 OUTDOOR/RETURN AIR SECTION

A. Unit shall be provided with an outdoor air economizer section. The 0 to 100% outside air economizer section shall include outdoor, return, and exhaust air dampers. Outdoor air shall enter from both sides of the economizer section through horizontal, louvered intake panels complete with rain lip and bird screen. The floor of the outdoor air intakes shall provide for water drainage. The economizer section shall allow return air to enter from the bottom of the unit. The outside and return air dampers shall be sized to handle 100% of the supply air volume. The dampers shall

be opposed sets of parallel blades, arranged vertically to converge the return air and outdoor air streams in multiple, circular mixing patterns.

B. Daikin Applied UltraSeal low leak dampers shall be provided on outdoor or return dampers. Damper blades shall be fully gasketed and side sealed and arranged horizontally in the hood. Damper leakage shall be less than1.5 CFM/Sq. Ft. of damper area at 1.0 inch static pressure differential. Leakage rate to be tested in accordance with AMCA Standard 500. Damper blades shall be operated from multiple sets of linkages mounted on the leaving face of the dampers.

C. A barometric exhaust damper shall be provided to exhaust air out of the back of the unit. A bird screen shall be provided to prevent infiltration of foreign materials. Exhaust damper blades shall be lined with urethane gasketing on contact edges.

D. Control of the outdoor or return dampers shall be by a factory installed actuator. Damper actuator shall be of the modulating, spring return type. If outdoor air is suitable for “free” cooling, the outdoor air dampers shall modulate in response to the unit’s temperature control system. An adjustable enthalpy control shall be provided to sense the dry-bulb temperature and relative humidity of the outdoor air stream to determine if outdoor air is suitable for “free” cooling

2.10 DISCHARGE PLENUM OPTIONS

A. A supply air discharge plenum shall be provided. The plenum section shall have a discharge opening.

B. Isolation dampers shall be provided in the plenum wall opening. A two-position actuator shall be provided to close the dampers when the fans are not running.

2.11 CONDENSING SECTION

A. Not applicable

2.12 CONTROLS

A. Each unit shall be equipped with a complete MicroTech® III microprocessor based control system. The unit control system shall include all required temperature and pressure sensors, input/output boards, main microprocessor and operator interface. All boards shall be individually replaceable for ease of service. All microprocessors, boards, and sensors shall be factory mounted, wired and tested.

B. Supply air fan to be controlled by duct static pressure. Return fan to be controlled via fan tracking

C. The microprocessor shall be a stand-alone DDC controller not dependent on communications with any on-site or remote PC or master control panel. The microprocessor shall maintain existing set points and operate stand alone if the unit loses either direct connect or network communications. The microprocessor memory shall be protected from voltage fluctuations as well as any extended power failures. All factory and user set schedules and control points shall

be maintained in nonvolatile memory. No settings shall be lost, even during extended power shutdowns.

D. The main microprocessor shall support an RS-232 direct connection to a product service tool or a modem. A BACnet® MSTP communications module shall be provided for direct communication into the BAS network.

E. All digital inputs and outputs shall be protected against damage from transients or wrong voltages. Each digital input and digital output shall be equipped with an LED for ease of service. All field wiring shall be terminated at a separate, clearly marked terminal strip.

F. The microprocessor memory shall be protected from all voltage fluctuations as well as any extended power failures. The microprocessor shall support an RS-232 direct connect from an IBM PC or 100% true compatible using MicroTech software. The microprocessor shall maintain existing set points and operate stand alone if the rooftop loses either direct connect or network communications.

G. The microprocessor shall have a built-in time schedule. The schedule shall be programmable from the unit keypad interface. The schedule shall be maintained in nonvolatile memory to insure that it is not lost during a power failure. There shall be one start/stop per day and a separate holiday schedule. The controller shall accept up to sixteen holidays each with up to a 5-day duration. Each unit shall also have the ability to accept a time schedule via BAS network communications.

H. If the unit is to be programmed with a night setback or setup function, an optional space sensor shall be provided. Space sensors shall be available to support field selectable features. Sensor options shall include Zone sensor with tenant override switch, or Zone sensor with tenent override switch and heating/cooling set point adjustment.

I. User Interface (UI)
   1. The keypad/display character format shall be 20 characters x 4 lines. The character font shall be a 5 x 8 dot matrix. The display shall be a super twist liquid crystal display (LCD) with black characters on yellow background providing high visibility. The display form shall be in plain English coded formats. Lookup tables are not acceptable.
   2. The keypad shall be equipped with 8 individual touch-sensitive membrane key switches. All control settings shall be password protected from changes by unauthorized personnel.
   3. Both a unit-mounted and remote-mounted UI shall be provided. One remote UI can communicate with up to 8 separate units. Both the unit-mounted and remote-mounted UI are always active. The control contractor is responsible for wiring between the unit and the remote UI. The maximum wiring distance to the remote UI is 2100 feet. The remote UI shall have an 8 line x 30 character display. The remote UI shall be provided with the same “push and roll” navigational tool and have identical functionality to the unit-mounted UI.
   4. The display shall provide the following information:
      a. Supply, return, outdoor and space air temperature.
      b. Duct and building static pressure- the control contractor is responsible for providing and installing sensing tubes.
      c. Fan status and airflow verification.
      d. Fan VFD speed.
      e. Outside air damper position and economizer mode.
      f. Cooling, heating and changeover status.

g. Occupied, unoccupied, and dirty filter status.
h. Date and time schedules.
i. Up to 4 current alarms and 8 previous alarms with time and date.

5. The keypad shall provide the following set points as a minimum:
   a. Six control modes including off manual, auto, heat/cool, cool only, heat only and fan only.
   b. Four occupancy modes including auto, occupied, unoccupied and bypass (tenant override with adjustable duration).
   c. Control changeover based on return air temperature, outdoor air temperaute, or space temperature.
   d. Primary cooling and heating set point temperature based on supply or space temperature.
   e. Night setback and setup space temp.
   f. Cooling and heating control differential (or dead band).
   g. Cooling and heating supply temperature reset options based on one of the following: Return air temperature, outdoor air temperature, space temperature, Airflow, or external (1-5VDC) signal.
   h. Reset schedule temperature.
   i. High supply, low supply and high return air temperature alarm limits.
   j. Ambient compressor and heat lockout temperatures.
   k. Auto or manual lead lag method on compressors.
   l. Compressor interstage timers duration.
   m. Duct static pressure.
   n. Minimum outdoor airflow reset based on external reset (1-5 VDC), percent of CFM capacity, and fixed outdoor damper position.
   o. Economizer changeover based on enthalpy, dry bulb or network signal.
   p. Current time and date.
   q. Occupied/unoccupied time schedules with allowances for holiday/ event dates and duration.
   r. Three types of service modes including timers normal (all time delays,) timers fast (all time delays 20 seconds,) and normal.

J. Open Communications Protocol – The unit control system shall have the ability to communicate to an independent Building Management System (BMS) through a direct BACnet MSTP It shall use only standard BACnet objects. Proprietary BACnet objects shall not be allowed. BACnet communications shall conform to the BACnet protocol (ANSI/ASHRAE 135-2001.) A BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) shall be provided. Multiple units may be connected in a common communications network.

K. The independent BMS system shall have access to 50 “read only’ variables and 30 “read & and write” variables. Communications shall not require field mounting of any additional sensors or devices at the unit. The BMS system shall be capable of interacting with the individual rooftop controllers in the following ways
   1. Monitor controller inputs, outputs, set points, parameters and alarms.
   2. Set controller set points and parameters.
   3. Clear alarms.
   4. Reset the cooling and heating discharge air temperature set point.
   5. Reset the duct static pressure set point (VAV units).
   6. Set the heat/cool changeover temperature (VAV and CAV-DTC units).
   7. Set the representative zone temperature (CAV-ZTC units).

L. It will be the responsibility of the Systems Integrating Contractor to integrate the rooftop data into the BMS control logic and interface stations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

A. Install in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

B. Installation shall be witnessed by the manufacturer’s factory engineer, the architect, engineer and the owner

3.2 Examination

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of

3.3 RTUs.

A. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.

B. Examine roof for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.4 Equipment Installation

A. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure, level and secure, according to NRCA's "Low-Slope Membrane Roofing Construction Details Manual," Illustration "Raised Curb Detail for Rooftop Air Handling Units and Ducts" and AHRI Guideline B. Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in other Sections.

B. Secure RTUs to upper curb rail according to manufacturer’s guidelines and using manufacturer supplied anchoring devices to make air and rain tight connection.

C. Install wind and seismic restraints according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Install prominent external tags/decals showing unit number.

3.5 Connections

A. Install condensate drain per IMC, with trap and indirect connection to nearest roof drain or area drain, or other location as indicated on the drawings.

B. Install piping adjacent to RTUs to allow service and maintenance.
   1. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 Section "Facility Natural-Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service. Do not block access to any of the unit panels with the gas piping. Install all factory grommets so that all unit piping penetrations are watertight.

C. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
   1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb with a 1-inch minimum duct flange secured to the top of the curb. All duct connections for drop-box diffusers shall be made using bolted transverse connectors. A threaded rod shall be installed from each supporting clip located on each corner of 4-way diffusers and double-nut secured to the bracing supports installed according to the details shown on the Drawings.
   2. The curb shall be installed directly to the joist and the roof decking will be installed by others to be attached to the curb flange.

3.6 Field Quality Control

A. Provide customer selectable option for Manufacturer's Field Service: A factory-authorized service representative shall be included in all equipment pricing to the Owner and shall be present when requested to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing startup. Factory-authorized service reps shall be competent technicians prepared to use refrigerant gauges to report unit performance. Report all results in writing.

B. Tests and Inspections by installing contractor prior to engaging factory-authorized service rep.
   1. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
   2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
   3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

D. Install 2-inch pleated Replacement Filter Set: Minimum 90 percent arrestance provided to contractor for installation immediately prior to Building Commissioning.

3.7 Startup & Commissioning Service

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service. The factory technician shall be fully engaged and prepared to record refrigerant pressures and shall coordinate all activity and take direction from the Owner’s commissioning agents.

B. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and do the following:
   1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
   2. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.

3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
4. Inspect internal insulation.
5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
8. Verify that filters are installed.
9. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
10. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
11. Connect and purge gas line.
12. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
13. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
14. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
15. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
16. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
17. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    a. Start refrigeration system.
    b. Check for proper rotation direction of the compressors
    c. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
    d. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
18. Enable the DDC unit controller’s automated self-check sequence to provide the following diagnostic checks as a start-up commissioning function:
    a. Low Evaporator Air Flow
    b. High Refrigerant Charge
    c. Low Refrigerant Charge
    d. Sensor Failure/Fault (including drifting out of calibration)
    e. Equipment Short Cycling
    f. Dirty Filter
    g. Efficiency does not meet unit rating
    h. Capacity does not meet unit rating
    i. Economizer Faults
        1) Damper not modulating (stuck damper)
        2) Not economizing when it should
        3) Excess outdoor air
        4) Low ventilation
19. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
20. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
21. Calibrate thermostats and temperature sensors
22. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
23. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
24. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when outdoor ambient is a minimum of 15 deg. F (8 deg. C) above return-air temperature (If outdoor air temperature is too cold, a return trip shall be coordinated to perform these tests at a later date, but proceed with startup without measurements):
    a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
    d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.
25. Inspect controls for correct setpoints, scheduling, sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.

26. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
    a. Supply-air volume.
    b. Return-air volume.
    c. Relief-air volume.
    d. Outdoor-air intake volume.
27. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
    a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
28. Check Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.

END OF SECTION 237416

SECTION 238220 – VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL UNIT VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. The contractor shall furnish and install packaged unit ventilator systems, of the capacities, performance, and configuration, as indicated in the unit schedule on drawings. Each unit shall be complete with factory furnished components and accessories as shown in the plans and as specified herein.

B. Electrical work required as an integral part of the temperature control work is indicated on the mechanical drawings, and is the responsibility of the HVAC contractor to hire the services of a temperature control contractor and/or system integrator contractor to provide a complete system to perform the sequence of operation shown, or as described in this specification. The full sequence of operation must be provided and installed by this contractor for all trades.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit schedule for all types, sizes and accessories. Schedule shall include certified performance data, room locations and all operating data.

B. Submit shop drawings for all units including all dimensional information, construction details, installation details, required opening sizes, roughing locations for piping and electrical work and accessory equipment. Equipment must meet specifications. Where deviations from the specifications exist, they must be identified.

C. Provide field wiring diagrams for all electrical power and temperature control field-wiring connections.

D. Submittals shall also include complete operating and maintenance instruction manuals and unit specific replacement parts lists.

E. The submittals shall highlight the actual equipment and components being provided.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Unit ventilators shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (U.L.) for the United States and Canada.

B. Motors shall conform to the latest applicable requirements of NEMA, IEEE, ANSI, and NEC standards.

C. The unit ventilation rate to be certified and tested per Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute (ARI) standard 840.

D. Unit to be certified and labeled compliant with the seismic design provisions of the International Building Code (IBC) Chapter 16 and independent test agency requirements of Chapter 17.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 UNIT VENTILATORS

A. Cabinet and Chassis:

1. Internal sheet metal parts shall be constructed of galvanized steel to inhibit corrosion.

2. Exterior cabinet panels shall be fabricated from furniture grade steel of not less than 18 gauge steel with no sharp edges and shall receive an electrostatically applied powder paint, and be oven baked with thermosetting urethane powder finish. Finish color shall be as selected by Architect from manufacturer’s standard colors.

3. The interior areas of the unit ventilator shall be insulated for sound attenuation and to provide protection against condensation of moisture on or within the unit. The unit shall be provided with an ultra-quiet sound package consisting of acoustically matched low speed fans to fan housing, sound barrier insulation material (non-fiberglass) adhered to the bottom underside of the unit top panel, sides of the fan section and sound absorbing insulation (non-fiberglass) material applied to the unit front panel.

4. Each unit shall be provided with a non-fused power interrupt switch that disconnects the main power to the unit for servicing or when the unit is to be shut down for an extended period of time. The fan motor and controls shall have the hot line(s) protected by factory installed cartridge type fuse(s).

5. The manufacturer shall have published cataloged sound data available for the engineer's review. Sound data shall have been conducted using a qualified reverberant room per ANSI S1.31 and ANSI S12.32. Sound test data shall be based on standard cfm at standard air (fixed density of air at 70F) in accordance with ARI procedures based upon ARI 350.

B. Floor Units:

1. Floor mounted units shall have an integral pipe tunnel for convenient crossover of piping and a built-in metal wire raceway from right end compartment to left end compartment to contain any line voltage electrical wiring separate from the air stream. Line voltage wiring shall not be touchable in the air stream of the unit during normal maintenance procedures of oiling bearings or motors. Unit shall come standard with a factory installed and wired disconnect switch.

2. Unit top surface shall be supplied with a charcoal bronze textured finish, to resist scuffing, reduce glare and help hide fingerprints. Unit top shall have two access doors, one at each end (for access to motor and bearings for easy servicing). The front and ends shall be available in a selection of architecturally pleasing colors by the manufacturer, for selection by the Architect.

3. Unit discharge grille shall be constructed of continuous rounded edge steel bars to provide 10 degree vertical deflection. A 1/4" painted, galvanized mesh screen shall be provided beneath the discharge grille to protect against objects being dropped through the discharge grille.

4. The unit top and grille shall be of a modular construction so that it is removable for service and maintenance.

5. The unit front surface shall be comprised of three separate removable panels. The controls and piping shall be accessible without removing the entire front panel. Panels shall be secured to the unit with recessed, tamper resistant, Allen head fasteners. Slots for flat head screwdrivers shall not be acceptable as tamper resistant.

6. An extended cabinet depth unit, shall incorporate a full adapter back with full rear panel and closed pipe tunnel with the same features of the standard cabinet depth units with the additional capability of bringing in fresh air from 1” to 28” from the floor. A full rear panel shall be screwed and sealed to the unit rear with insulation attached to the rear panel in the outdoor section. The unit top, back and vertical adapter back partitions shall be insulated to form a thermal barrier. A compressible gasket shall be provided to form an airtight seal between the wall and the contractor cut fresh air opening in the unit full rear panel.

C. Ceiling Units (Ceiling units shall be similar in construction to floor units, with the following additional features):

1. Three bottom panels, two of which are hinged, shall be provided for ease of service access and handling. Retainer chains shall be provided to prevent sudden release of the hinged bottom panels. End panels shall be secured to the unit with recessed, tamper resistant, Allen head fasteners. Slots for flat head screwdrivers shall not be acceptable as tamper resistant.

2. Ceiling mounted units shall have a built-in metal wire raceway from right end compartment to left end compartment to contain any line voltage electrical wiring separate from the air stream. Line voltage wiring shall not be touchable in the air stream of the unit during normal maintenance procedures of oiling bearings or motors.

3. The discharge opening of the unit shall be fitted with an adjustable four-way deflection grille with the outer blades horizontal.

4. A ceiling trim flange shall be provided for recessed units. The trim flange shall be 3-sided or 4-sided as required.

5. The centerline of the cooling condensate drain shall be a minimum of 4" above the bottom of the unit to allow for appropriate trapping of the condensate disposal line.

D. Coils:

1. Coil assembly shall be of a modular construction and removable from the front of the unit.

2. All coils shall be installed in a draw through position for the full-face area of the coil.

3. All heating and cooling coils shall be constructed with copper tubes and mechanically bonded aluminum corrugated plate type fins. All coils shall have aluminum individual unshared fin surfaces. An air break shall exist between coils.
   a. Where 2-pipe dual temperature system is used, the single unit coil shall be rated to accept different temperature fluids, performance and controls shall be capable of meeting the design requirements without additional field modifications or manual adjustments by building operator.

4. Water heating and cooling coils shall be furnished with a threaded drain plug at the lowest point and a manual air vent at the high point of the coil. A factory installed low temperature freezestat shall be provided on the leaving edge of the water heating coil in a wave-like configuration. The unit-mounted controls shall incorporate this device.

E. Drain Pan

1. All units (either heating only, heat/cool, cool only or reheat) shall come furnished with an insulated drain pan constructed of galvanized steel. A drain outlet shall be provided on both ends of the drain pan with one outlet capped. The drain hand of connection shall be easily field-reversed.

2. The drain pan shall be able to be sloped in either direction for proper condensate removal.

3. Drain shall be provided with a secondary, overflow drain connection on both ends of the pan.

F. Fans and Motor:

1. The fan and motor assembly shall be of a low speed design to assure maximum quietness and efficiency.

2. Fans shall be double-inlet, forward-curved, centrifugal type with offset aerodynamic blades. Fans and shaft shall be statically and dynamically balanced as an assembly in the unit before shipment.

3. Fan housings shall be constructed of galvanized steel. Fan and motor assembly shall be of the direct drive type. Belt drive fans shall not be allowed.

4. Motors shall be 115 volt, single phase, 60 Hz, NEMA permanent split capacitor (PSC), plug-in type with auto reset internal thermal overload device designed specifically for unit ventilator operation. Motors shall be located out of the conditioned air stream.

5. All components of the fan/motor assembly shall be removable from the top of floor-mounted units.

6. Units shall have sleeve type motor and fan shaft bearings , and shall not require oiling more than annually.

7. Motor speed shall be controlled by factory mounted multi-tap transformer for three (3) speeds, HIGH-MEDIUM-LOW-OFF (not accessible from the exterior of the unit). Fan motor and controls shall each have hot leg protected by a factory installed cartridge fuse.

G. Face & Bypass Damper:

1. Each unit shall be provided with a factory-installed face and by-pass damper, constructed of aluminum. The long sealing surfaces of the damper shall seal positively against stops fitted with extruded EPDM rubber seals. Face and bypass dampers without sealing edges shall not be acceptable. Plastic clip-on brush end seals shall not be acceptable as an end seal. The unit design shall incorporate the face and bypass damper to prevent coil surface wiping and be before the fan in a draw-thru configuration. The face and by-pass damper shall be arranged to have a dead air space to minimize heat pick-up in the by-pass position.

H. Outdoor & Room Dampers:

1. Each unit shall be provided with separate room air and outdoor air dampers.

2. The room air damper shall be two-piece, double-wall construction fabricated from aluminum, and be counterbalanced against backpressure to close by gusts of wind pressure, thereby preventing outdoor air from blowing directly into the room.

3. The outdoor air damper shall be two piece, double wall construction fabricated from galvanized steel, with ½" thick, 1½ lb. density glassfiber insulation. The outdoor air damper shall have additional foam insulation on the exterior surface damper blade and on the ends of the outdoor air chamber. A single blade damper, is not acceptable.

4. Dampers shall be fitted with blended mohair seals along all sealing edges. Pressure adhesive sponge neoprene or plastic clip-on brush type sealers for damper seals are not acceptable. Rubber type gasket using pressure adhesive for fastening to metal and exposed to the outside air is not acceptable.

5. Dampers shall use the turned-metal principle on long closing ends with no metal-to-metal contact for proper sealing.

6. The damper shaft shall be mechanically fastened to the blade, and shall operate in bearings made of nylon or other material which does not require lubrication.

I. Filter:

1. Each unit ventilator shall be equipped with a one-piece filter located to provide filtration of the return air/outdoor air mixture. The entire filter surface must be useable for filtration of 100% room air or 100% of outdoor air. The unit shall ship with a factory installed 1" thick fiberglass, single-use type.

2. Spare filters shall be 1" thick permanent metal frames with replaceable media.

J. Control Components:

1. Each unit ventilator shall be furnished with a factory installed and wired, microprocessor based DDC Unit Ventilator Controller (UVC), by the manufacturer of the unit ventilator, which is pre-programmed, factory pre-tested prior to shipment, and capable of complete, stand-alone unit control or incorporation into a building-wide network using a plug-in communication module. The UVC shall be preprogrammed with the application code required to operate the unit using ASHRAE Cycle II. The unit control system shall include all required temperature sensors, input/output boards, main microprocessor modules, wiring, 24 volt power and direct coupled damper actuators. The UVC shall support up to 6 analog inputs, 12 binary inputs, and 9 binary outputs.

2. All units shall be Face and Bypass damper control. The face and bypass damper actuator shall be direct coupled floating point actuator that is non-spring returned.

3. The Outdoor Air/Return Air Damper Actuator shall be direct coupled, proportional actuator that spring returns the outdoor air damper shut upon a loss of power.

4. The hot water heating coil shall use a factory selectable, field installed, modulating control valve to modulate the heating medium during the heating cycle. Upon a power failure, the modulating heating valve shall spring return to the normally open position for flow of water. Modulating valves without spring return to the normal position upon a power failure shall not be acceptable. The valves shall be as shown on the drawings.

5. The hot water heating coil shall use a factory selectable, field installed, end of cycle control valve to control the heating medium during the heating cycle. Upon a power failure, the heating valve shall spring return to the normally open position for flow of water. Valves without spring return to the normal position upon a power failure shall not be acceptable.

6. The chilled water cooling coil shall use a factory selectable, field installed, modulating control valve to modulate the chilled water during the cooling cycle. All cooling valves shall be normally closed. Modulating valves without spring return to the normal position upon a power failure shall not be acceptable.

7. The unit controller shall monitor room conditions, and automatically adjust unit operations (fan speed, temperatures, etc.) to maintain pre-programmed temperature setting selection ranges and ventilation requirements. The control sequence shall be on the basis of ASHRAE Cycle II for normal classroom locations, but shall have exhaust fan interlock for override to bring in full outside air for laboratory/science room applications. The fan speeds shall be high constant, medium constant, low constant and auto, which shall vary the air flow in direct relation to the room load. The fan shall not change speeds in less than ten minutes in any one mode. Two constant fan speed operation shall not be acceptable.

8. Each optional Local User Interface (LUI) Touch Pad shall have a Digital Display status/fault indication. Communication ports shall allow monitoring and adjustment from a portable IBM compatible PC using USB protocol for service or monitoring using the applicable software computer or future connection to a network control and monitoring system. When using this PC, the unit shall be capable of reacting to commands for changes in control sequence and set points.

9. All units shall come equipped with a factory mounted room temperature sensor located in a sampling chamber (front, center panel) where room air is continuously drawn through for fast response to temperature changes in the room. When using a remote wall-mounted temperature sensor the controller will automatically monitor the remote sensor and disregard the unit-mounted sensor.

10. A discharge air temperature sensor shall be factory located on the second fan from the right to constantly sense unit discharge air temperatures. The unit's discharge air temperature sensor shall work in conjunction with the room temperature sensor to provide for stable discharge air temperatures, even in the event of rapid changes in outdoor air quantities.

11. An outdoor air temperature sensor shall be factory located in the outside air prior to the outside air damper to continually sense outdoor air temperature.

12. A tenant override switch shall be factory mounted next to the Local User Interface (LUI) Touch Pad to provide a momentary contact closure that causes the unit to enter the "tenant override" operating mode for a set time period (adjustable) of 120 minutes. The tenant override switch shall cause a unit operating in the un-occupied mode (temperature set-back/set-up, and no outdoor ventilation) to return to the occupied mode for two hours (adjustable) and then the system shall automatically return to un-occupied mode. The room temperature sensor and override switch shall be a wall mounted temperature sensor with integral tenant over ride capability.

13. Night set-back/set-up control shall be provided by the internal time clock as described in the temperature control specification.

14. The unit shall have three (3) multi-pin External Signal Connection Plugs factory provided and pre-wired with short wire whips that are capped for field wiring of:
    a. A Remote Wall Mounted Temperature Sensor.
    b. External Output Options (by others): motorized water valve open/close, fault indication signal, pump restart, exhaust fan on/off or auxiliary heat signal.
    c. External Output Options (by others): Motorized water valve open/close, fault indication signal, pump restart, exhaust fan on/off or auxiliary heat signal.

15. A room humidity sensor shall be factory located in a sampling chamber (front, center panel) where room air is continuously drawn through for fast response to humidity changes in the room for units capable of passive dehumidification or for units using indoor/outdoor enthalpy type economizer.

K. Control Functions:

1. The Unit Ventilator Digital Controller (here after referred to as UVC) shall support ASHRAE Cycle II operation. The control cycle shall be used to maintain the required minimum amount of ventilation whenever possible, which can be increased during normal operation for economizer cooling, but can also be reduced to prevent excessively cold discharge air temperatures.

2. A discharge air temperature sensor shall be installed in all unit ventilators. The ASHRAE II control algorithm shall override room control and modify the heating, ventilating, and

cooling functions (as available) to prevent the discharge air temperature from falling below the Ventilation Cooling Low Limit (here after referred to as VCLL) setpoint.

3. Description of Operation
   a. The Unit Ventilator UVC shall use State Machine programming concepts to define and control unit ventilator operation. This shall eliminate the possibility of simultaneous heating and cooling, rapid cycling, etc. and simplify sequence verification during unit commissioning or troubleshooting.
   b. Super States shall group two or more related states into a single control function such as cooling, or heating, etc. States shall be where all the actual work takes place. Thus within each state the UVC shall enable logic sequences required to control unit ventilator operation within that particular state, while other functions not needed during that state may be disabled. Transitions shall be the logic paths used to determine which State should be made active. These shall be the "questions" the UVC will continually consider/determine for which path is followed and which state is active.
   c. The UVC States and Super States shall be used to define the "normal" unit modes, such as Off, Fan Only, Heat, Emergency Heat, Cool, Auto, Night Purge, and Dehumidification. The UVC shall support several "non-normal" unit modes such as Purge, Pressurize, De-pressurize, and Shutdown, which can be forced via a network connection and override typical UVC operation.

4. Modes of Operation
   a. The UVC shall provide several "normal" Modes of unit operation, these shall include Off, Fan Only, Heat, Emergency Heat, Cool, Heat and Cool, Auto, and Night Purge.

5. Off Mode
   a. An Off Mode shall be provided so that the UVC can be forced into a powered off condition. The Off mode shall be a "stop" state for the unit ventilator; it shall not be a power off state. The Local User Interface module or a network connection shall be able to force the unit into the Off mode.
   b. Non-normal unit modes (i.e. Purge, Pressurize, and De-pressurize modes) accessed via a network connection shall be able to force the UVC to perform "special" functions during which the UVC shall appear to be in the Off mode.
   c. When Off Mode becomes active, the UVC shall stop all normal heating, cooling, ventilation (OA damper shall be closed), and fan operation. The UVC shall continue to monitor space conditions, indicate faults, and provide network communications (if connected to a network) as long as power is maintained to the unit.

6. Fan Only Mode
   a. A Fan Only Mode shall be provided so that the UVC can be forced into a Fan Only operation. The LUI or a network connection shall be able to force the unit into the Fan Only Mode.

7. Heat Mode
   a. A Heat Mode shall be provided to force the UVC into Heat Only Operation. The Heat mode shall use primary heat (wet heat) as needed to maintain the effective heating setpoint. The optional LUI or a network connection shall be able to force the unit into the Heat mode.

b. When the Heat mode super state becomes active, the UVC shall automatically determine which UVC State to make active; Heat or Low Limit based upon the transitions for each of those states. The UVC shall remain in this super state until one of the transition out conditions become true.
c. The Heat State shall be the "normal" state that the UVC will go into when Heat mode is active. When the Heat State becomes active, the UVC shall maintain a Discharge Air Temperature Setpoint (here after referred to as DATS) required to maintain the effective heat setpoint (Space Temperature Setpoint). The DATS shall not be allowed to go above Discharge Air High Limit (here after referred to as DAHL). The face and bypass damper shall be positioned to maintain the classroom temperature setpoint. The UVC shall use primary heat (wet heat) as needed to maintain the current DATS. The UVC shall monitor the wet heat coil leaving air temperature thermostat (if provided) in order to prevent coil freezing conditions (see Wet Heat Coil Leaving Air Temperature Thermostat).
d. The Heat State shall be the "normal" state that the UVC will go into when Heat mode is active. When the Heat State becomes active, the UVC shall maintain a Discharge Air Temperature Setpoint (here after referred to as DATS) to maintain the effective heat setpoint (Space Temperature Setpoint). The calculated DATS shall not be allowed to go above Discharge Air High Limit (here after referred to as DAHL). The modulating valve shall be positioned to maintain the classroom temperature setpoint. The UVC shall use primary heat (wet heat) as needed to maintain the current DATS. The UVC shall monitor the wet heat coil leaving air temperature thermostat (if provided) in order to prevent coil freezing conditions (see Wet Heat Coil Leaving Air Temperature Thermostat).
e. A Low Limit Heat State shall be a "non-normal" state that shall become active if during Heat mode the unit reaches 100% heating and is unable to meet the current Discharge Air Temperature Setpoint required to maintain the effective heating setpoint.
f. The Cant Heat State shall be a "non-normal" state that the UVC can go into when Heat mode is active. Sensor faults, etc. during the Heat mode shall cause the UVC to make the Cant Heat State active. When the Cant Heat State becomes active, no heating or ventilation shall take place. The OA damper shall be closed. The UVC shall monitor the wet heat coil leaving air temperature thermostat (if provided) in order to prevent coil freezing conditions.

8. Cool Mode:
a. A Cool mode shall be provided to force the UVC into Cool Only operation. The Cool mode shall use primary cooling (economizer) and secondary cooling (mechanical type) as needed to maintain the effective cooling setpoint. The LUI or a network connection shall be able to compel the unit into the Cool mode. Additionally, the UVC when set to Auto mode shall automatically compel the unit into the Cool mode as needed. The modulating valve shall be positioned to maintain the classroom temperature setpoint.
b. When the Cool mode super state becomes active, the UVC shall automatically determine which UVC state to make active, Econ, Econ Comp/Water, Comp/Water, DA Heat, Low Limit, or Dehumid based upon the transitions for each of those states.
c. An Econ State shall be provided as a "normal" state that the UVC can go into when Cool mode is active. The Econ State shall be typically active in the Cool mode when primary cooling (economizer) is available and adequate to meet the cooling requirements. When the Econ State becomes active, the UVC shall use economizer

cooling as needed to maintain the effective cooling setpoint. The UVC shall monitor the DAT to ensure it does not fall below Ventilation Cooling Low Limit (here after referred to as VCLL) setpoint. The UVC shall monitor the wet heat coil leaving air temperature thermostat (if provided) in order to prevent coil freezing conditions.

d. An Econ Comp/Water State shall be provided as a "normal" state that the UVC can go into when Cool mode is active. The Econ Comp/Water state shall typically be active in the Cool mode when primary cooling (economizer) alone is not adequate to meet the cooling requirements and both primary cooling and secondary cooling are available. When the Econ Comp/Water State becomes active, the OA damper shall be set to 100% open, and the UVC shall use the unit's compressor or chilled water cooling capabilities as needed to maintain the effective cooling setpoint. The UVC shall monitor the DAT to ensure it does not fall below the Mechanical Cooling Low Limit (here after referred to as MCLL) setpoint. The UVC shall monitor the wet heat coil leaving air temperature thermostat (if provided) in order to prevent coil freezing conditions.

e. A Mech State shall be provided as a "normal" state that the UVC can go into when Cool mode is active. The Mech State shall be typically active in the Cool mode when primary cooling (economizer) is not available and secondary cooling is available. When the Mech State becomes active, the UVC shall use the unit's mechanical cooling capabilities as needed to maintain the effective cooling setpoint. The UVC shall monitor the DAT to ensure it does not fall below the Mechanical Cooling Low Limit (here after referred to as MCLL) setpoint. The UVC shall monitor the wet heat coil leaving air temperature thermostat (if provided) in order to prevent coil freezing conditions.

9. Auto Mode
   a. An Auto mode shall be provided so that the UVC can be set to automatically determine if heating, cooling or dehumidification is required. The Auto mode shall be the default start-up UVC mode. Auto mode shall be made up of the Heat, Cool and Dehumidify modes. With the UVC set to auto mode, the UVC shall determine which mode (Heat, Cool and Dehumidify) to use.

10. Emergency Heat Mode: Provide functionality.

11. Night Purge Mode
   a. A Night Purge mode shall be provided to quickly ventilate a space. Night purge shall be used to remove odor build up at the end of each day, or after cleaning, painting, or other odor generating operations occur within the space. Night Purge shall be full ventilation with exhaust mode, during which room comfort will be compromised. The LUI or a network connection shall be able to force the unit into the Night Purge mode.
   b. When Night Purge mode becomes active, the UVC shall stop all normal heating and cooling as any new energy used to treat the incoming air would be wasted in the purging process. In the Night Purge mode the unit classroom air fan shall be set to high speed, the OA damper will be set to 100% open, and the Exhaust Fan binary output shall be set to On. If not set to another mode within 1-hour, the UVC shall force itself into the Fan Only mode. If the space temperature drops below the EHS, and the Emergency Heat function is enabled, the UVC shall be forced into the Emergency Heat mode. The UVC shall continue to monitor the wet heat coil leaving air temperature thermostat (if provided) in order to prevent coil freezing conditions.

12. Non-Normal Unit Modes
    a. Additional UVC modes shall be provided that are considered non-normal unit modes. These shall include Pressurize, Depressurize, Purge, Shutdown and Energy Hold Off. These modes shall force the UVC to perform very specific and limited functions and shall be used with caution and only for short periods as needed. These modes shall be accessed through the LUI or via an optional network connection.
    b. In each of these non-normal UVC modes, if the space temperature drops below EHS, and the Emergency Heat function enables, the UVC shall be forced into the Emergency Heat Super State mode and then return once the Emergency Heat function is satisfied
    c. A Shutdown mode shall be provided that is the equivalent of the Off mode, but shall be an Off mode forced by a network connection. When in Shutdown mode the UVC shall stop all normal heating, cooling, ventilation (OA damper shall be closed), and fan operation. By default, emergency heat shall not be used during the shutdown mode, however, the UVC can be configured (Emergency Heat Shutdown Configuration) to allow emergency heat operation during shutdown mode if heating is available. The Shutdown mode shall be accessed via a network connection and a binary input to the UVC.
    d. The UVC shall support an Energy Hold Off state, which when active forces the UVC to stop all normal heating, cooling and ventilation. This shall typically be used by a network connection to force the UVC to cease heating, cooling and ventilation when conditions exist where heating, cooling and ventilation are not required or desired. Energy Hold Off mode shall be similar to Shutdown mode except that Energy Hold Off always allows Emergency Heat, if required and available. The Energy Hold Off mode shall be only accessed via a network connection.
    e. The UVC shall in the Purge mode use the unit Classroom or Indoor Air Fan (here after referred to as IAF), OAD, and exhaust output as needed to purge the space. The UVC shall stop all normal heating and cooling but allow Emergency Heat if required. The purge mode shall be only accessed via a network connection.
    f. The UVC shall in the Pressurize mode use the IAF, OAD, and exhaust output as needed to pressurize the space. The UVC shall stop all normal heating and cooling but shall allow Emergency Heat if required. The Pressurize Mode shall be accessed only via a network connection.
    g. The UVC shall in the Depressurize mode use the IAF, OAD, and exhaust output as needed to depressurize the space. The UVC shall stop all normal heating and cooling but does allow Emergency Heat if required. The Depressurize Mode shall only be accessed via a network connection.

13. Occupancy Modes
    a. The UVC shall be provided with four occupancy modes: Occupied, Standby, Unoccupied, and Bypass. The Occupancy mode shall effect which heating and cooling temperature setpoints shall be used, IAF operation, and OAD operation. The Occupancy Manual Command and Networked Occupancy Sensor network variables, along with the Unoccupied and Tenant Override binary inputs, shall be used to determine the Effective Occupancy.
    b. The Occupied mode shall be the normal daytime mode of UVC operation. During Occupied mode the UVC shall use the occupied heating and cooling setpoints, the OAD shall operate normally, and by default the IAF shall remain on. A Networked Occupancy Sensor shall be able to interface with the Occupancy Sensor Input

variable to select occupancy modes. When the Occupancy Sensor Input variable is used, it shall automatically override any hard-wired unoccupied binary input signal.

c. The Standby mode shall be a non-normal daytime mode of UVC operation. During Standby mode the UVC shall use the standby heating and cooling setpoints, the OAD shall remain closed, and by default the IAF shall remain on.

d. The Bypass mode (also called Tenant Override) shall be the equivalent of a temporary occupied mode. Once the Bypass mode is initiated it shall remain in effect for a set period of time (120-minutes default). During the Bypass mode the UVC shall use the occupied heating and cooling setpoints, the OAD shall operate normally, and by default the IAF shall remain on. The optional field-installed Remote Wall-mounted Sensors shall include a Tenant Override Switch. This Tenant Override Switch shall provide a momentary contact closure that can be used by room occupants to temporarily force the UVC into the Bypass Occupancy mode from Unoccupied mode. The optional field-installed Remote Wall-mounted Sensors shall each indicate a UVC status LED. This status LED shall aid in diagnostics by indicating the UVC Occupancy mode and Fault condition.

14. Space Temperature Setpoints
    a. The UVC shall use the six occupancy-based temperature setpoints for heating and cooling, Occupancy mode, and the value of the Network variables Space Temp Setpoint Input, Setpoint Offset Input and Setpoint Shift Input as the basis to determine the Effective Setpoint Output. The UVC shall calculate the effective setpoint based upon the unit mode, the occupancy mode, and the values of several network variables. The effective setpoint shall then be used as the temperature setpoint that the UVC will maintain.

15. LUI Setpoint Offset Adjustment
    a. The optional LUI shall be used to make adjustments to the value of the Setpoint Offset Input variable.

16. Remote Wall-Mounted Sensor with +/- 5F Adjustment
    a. When the optional Remote Wall-mounted Sensor with +/- 5OF adjustment dial is used, the UVC shall effectively write the value of the setpoint adjustment dial to the Setpoint Offset Input variable.

17. Remote Wall-Mounted Sensor with 55 degrees F to 95 degrees F Adjustment
    a. When the optional Remote Wall-mounted Sensor with 55 degrees F to 95 degrees F adjustment dial is used, the UVC shall effectively write the value of the setpoint dial to the Space Temp Setpoint Input variable.

18. Indoor Air Fan Operation
    a. The UVC shall support a three-speed IAF with Low, Medium, and High speed or a variable speed motor. The UVC will calculate the effective fan speed and operation based upon the unit mode, the occupancy mode, and the values of several network variables.

19. Outdoor Air Damper Operation
    a. The UVC shall be configured for an Outdoor Air Damper operated by a proportional actuator. The OA damper actuator shall contain a spring to ensure that the OA damper is closed upon loss of power. The OA damper shall be typically open to the

current minimum position during the Occupied and Bypass occupancy modes, and closed during the Unoccupied and Standby Occupancy modes.

b. The UVC shall be configured to maintain three Outdoor Air Damper minimum positions based upon the operation of the IAF. This shall allow the ability for each unit to be job site configured to provide the amount of fresh air required to the space at each of the three IAF speeds.

c. The Economizer function shall be used by the UVC to determine if the OA is adequate for economizer (primary) cooling. When both the economizer and mechanical cooling are available, the economizer shall be used as primary cooling and the UVC shall add mechanical cooling only if the economizer is not adequate to meet the current cooling load (i.e. the OA damper reaches 100% and cooling is still required). The UVC shall be configured to support the economizer type of Temperature Comparison Economizer (default) for which the UVC shall use two configuration variables for the Temperature Comparison Economizer: Economizer OA Temp Setpoint and Economizer Temp Differential. The Economizer Temperature Differential shall compare the classroom air temperature to the OA temperature. If the difference is greater than the economizer temperature differential and the Economizer OAT is below the temperature setpoint then the Economizer function shall be energized.

20. Face & Bypass Damper Control: The UVC shall be configured for a Face and Bypass damper operated by a floating-point actuator.

a. Actuator Auto-Zero, Overdrive and Sync
   1) The UVC at power-up shall auto-zero all actuators (OA damper, F&BP damper and Valve) before going into normal operation to ensure proper positioning, this may take as long as 150-seconds after power-up.
   2) The UVC shall be configured such that whenever an actuator is commanded to go to 0% or 100%, the UVC shall overdrive the actuator one full stroke period past the 0% or 100% position to ensure proper positioning
   3) Additionally: the UVC shall be configured to sync all actuators once every 12-hours of operation.

b. Water Coil Leaving Air Temperature Thermostat (Freezestat)
   1) A normally-closed Low Temperature Thermostat (Freezestat) shall be factory provided to detect low leaving air temperature conditions on the unit indoor air hot water coil. This thermostat shall be mounted on the discharge airside of the units hot water coil. The low temperature thermostat cutout shall be 38°F (38°C) +/-2 and the cut-in shall be 45°F (38°C) +/-2. When the low temperature thermostat detects low leaving air temperatures (contacts open) the following shall occur during Face and Bypass Heating operation: when the freezestat cuts-out the OAD shall close immediately, the heating EOC valve shall fully open immediately, any mechanical cooling shall be de-energized immediately. If heating is required, the Face and Bypass damper shall modulate, as needed, otherwise the Face and Bypass damper shall go to 100% bypass, auxiliary heat may be used as needed. When the Freezestat resets or cuts-in the UVC shall return to normal operation.

c. External Binary Inputs
   1) The UVC shall be provided with four(4) binary inputs that can provide the following functions. Two of these inputs each shall allow a single set of dry-

contacts (no voltage source) to be used as a signal to the UVC and two of the inputs shall allow a single 24VAC signal. Multiple units can be connected to a single set of dry-contacts.

2) The Unoccupied Input Signal shall allow a single set of dry-contacts to be used to signal the UVC to go into Unoccupied or Occupied mode. When the contacts close (Unoccupied) the UVC shall go into Unoccupied mode, when the contacts open (Occupied) the UVC shall go into Occupied mode.
3) The Remote Shutdown Input Signal shall allow a single set of dry-contacts to be used to signal the UVC to go into Shutdown mode. When the contacts close (Shutdown) the UVC shall go into Shutdown mode, when the contacts open the UVC shall return to Normal operation. See Non-Normal Unit Modes.
4) The Ventilation Lockout Input Signal shall allow a signal to the UVC to close the OA damper. When the contacts close (Ventilation Lockout Signal) the UVC shall close the OA damper, when the contacts open the UVC shall return to normal OA damper operation.
5) The Exhaust Interlock Input Signal shall signal to the UVC that an Exhaust Fan within the space has been energized, the UVC shall reposition the OA damper to a user adjustable minimum position (Exhaust Interlock OA Damper Min Position Setpoint). When the contacts close (Exhaust fan on signal) the UVC shall use the value defined by the Exhaust Interlock OA Damper Min Position Setpoint as the minimum OA damper position regardless of IAF speed, when the contacts open the UVC shall return to normal OA damper operation.
6) The unit shall be furnished equipped with communication card to interface with the Facility BMS system using BACKnet or other communication protocol at the facility.

L. Unit Ventilator Options / Accessories:

1. SD Card: An optional SD card shall be available as a factory installed option, to be used to collect trend data.

2. USB Port: A USB port shall allow monitoring and adjustment from a Windows PC using serial communications for service or monitoring using the applicable software. When using this PC, the unit shall be capable of reacting to commands for changes in control sequence and set points.

M. Basis of Design:

1. Magic Aire.

2. Acceptable Alternates: Trane, Carrier, and Daikin.
   a. With prior approval only. Submit detailed listing of all variations in form, fit, or function, in addition to specified submittal data for approval. Equipment or manufacturers not listed in this specification shall not be acceptable or approved for installation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install all equipment in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions and so as to be compatible with the intent of the respective system performance requirement.

B. The System Integrator/Controls contractor shall be responsible for the integration of all factory provided unit mounted controls and unit communications as required/specified for unit integration into the Building Automation System and proper unit operation.

C. Contractor shall clean each unit and accessory section of construction dust and debris, prior to turning systems over to the owner.

D. Contractor shall install clean filters in each unit at time of system commissioning, and shall deliver to the owner one complete set of spare filters, and one spare motor of each type used in the project.

E. System Integrator/Controls contractor shall be responsible for the integration of all factory provided unit mounted controls and unit communications as required/specified for unit integration into the Building Automation System and proper unit operation.

F. Installer shall engage the services of manufacturer's factory trained service technician to provide check, test, and start-up of each unit ventilator system.

G. Contractor shall provide one-year warranty for furnishing parts and labor for replacing any part of the unit ventilator or accessory sections, which becomes defective in operation. Unit ventilator manufacturer's representative shall maintain a local stock of replacement parts to support the systems specified herein.

H. Contractor shall submit a completed “Check Test and Start Sheet" for each Unit Ventilator installed for verification of proper installation and start up

END OF SECTION 230500

250100 – BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEM (BAS) SCOPE OF WORK

The purpose of this document is to outline scope of work for the System Integrator / Instrumentation and Controls Contractor to integrate into the existing Building Automation System all modifications of the HVAC System in conjunction with HVAC Upgrades Project.

1.1 The mechanical contractor shall include in their Base Bid all costs associated with altering and adding to the School's existing building HVAC controls operating system for control of new and modifications to existing HVAC equipment as documented on the HVAC and Electrical drawings. The Schools HVAC controls system is by Andover and the District's Andover representative is Energy Management of Facilities office number (914) 747-1007.

A. E-101
   1. Modifications to the existing EC-9 LCP (Local Control Panel)
   2. Removal of the existing I&C (Instrumentation & Controls) from the abandoned in place EC-9 with the purpose of reuse.
   3. Modifications to the existing EC-10 LCP in conjunction with the change in configuration.
   4. Salvaging existing I&C from the abandoned portion of EC-10 distribution.
      a. Salvaging includes bench testing of components for suitability to be reused.

B. E-201
   1. Interface proposed EC-10 VFD with the existing BMS utilizing Modbus RTU or Modbus/TCP adapter.
      a. Modify existing or provide new LCP for interface.
   2. Furnish and install new LCP for proposed Chilled Water Pumps 1-2 & Heating Hot water Pumps 1-2 system:
      a. Provide interface of the proposed CHWP-1&2 and HHWP-1&2 VFDs with existing BMS utilizing Modbus RTU or Modbus/TCP adapter.
      b. Furnish and install all required I&C for completely operational system.
   3. Interface proposed EF-10D VFD with the existing BMS utilizing Modbus RTU or Modbus/TCP adapter.
      a. Modify existing or provide new LCP for interface.

C. E-203
   1. Furnish and install new LCP for the proposed RTU-09
   2. Furnish and install all I&C, located on the 3-rd floor, for RTU-09

D. E-204
   1. Interface proposed RTU-09 with the existing BMS via Daikin MicroTech controller utilizing BACnet or LonWorks protocols.
   2. Interface 4(four) heat tracing thermostats utilizing digital I/O in RTU-09 LCP
   3. Interface proposed EUH in RTU-09 utilizing digital I/O in RTU-09 LCP.

E. Furnish and install all required software upgrades to the existing BMS to facilitate HVAC upgrades described above.

F. Provide assistance to other trades required for startup and balancing of the equipment within the scope of this project.

G. Controls contractor shall request approval for placement of BAS control panels and connecting power from nearest emergency power circuit.

END OF SECTION 250100

SECTION 255000 – INTEGRATED AUTOMATION FACILITY CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1 Related Documents

The General Provisions of the Contract, including General, Supplementary, and Special Conditions, and Division 1 - General Requirements, apply to work specified in this section. Subcontractor must familiarize himself with the terms of the above documents.

1 Qualifications of Bidder

1.1 All bidders must be building automation contractors in the business of installing direct digital control building automation systems for a minimum of 3 years.

1.2 All bidders must have a service and installation office in Westchester County, NY.

1.3 All bidders must be authorized Partners of the manufacturers specified.

1.4 All bidders must have a trained staff of application engineers, who have been certified by the manufacturer in the configuration, programming and service of the automation system.

1.5 The following bidders have been pre-qualified:

1. EMF (Energy Management of Facilities, Inc.)

2 Scope of Work

2.1 The Contractor shall furnish and install a complete building automation system including all necessary hardware and all operating and applications software necessary to perform the control sequences of operation as called for in this specification. All components of the system – workstations, application controllers, unitary controllers, etc. shall communicate using the BACnet protocol, as defined by ASHRAE Standard 135-2016, BACnet™. No gateways shall be used for communication to controllers furnished under this section. At a minimum, provide controls for the following:

1. Air handling units
2. Return air fans
3. Exhaust and supply fans
4. Chilled water system including pumps, chillers, and cooling towers
5. Boilers including hot water pumps
6. Computer room air handling units
7. Refrigerant leak detection system
8. Smoke evacuation sequence of AHUs and return fans including smoke control dampers and fire command override panel.
9. Finned tube radiation control
10. Variable volume and constant volume box control including interlocks with finned tube radiation.
11. Cabinet unit heater controls

12. Monitoring points for packaged equipment such as emergency generators, air compressors, electric meter, water meters, chiller (s)
13. Power wiring to DDC devices, smoke control dampers and BAS panels.

2.2 Except as otherwise noted, the control system shall consist of all Ethernet Network Controllers, Standalone Digital Control Units, workstations, software, sensors, transducers, relays, valves, dampers, damper operators, control panels, and other accessory equipment, along with a complete system of electrical interlocking wiring to fill the intent of the specification and provide for a complete and operable system. Except as otherwise specified, provide operators for equipment such as dampers if the equipment manufacturer does not provide these. Coordinate requirements with the various Contractors.

2.3 The BAS contractor shall review and study all HVAC drawings and the entire specification to familiarize himself with the equipment and system operation and to verify the quantities and types of dampers, operators, alarms, etc. to be provided.

2.4 All interlocking, wiring and installation of control devices associated with the equipment listed below shall be provided under this Contract. When the BAS system is fully installed and operational, the BAS Contractor and representatives of the Owner will review and check out the system. At that time, the BAS contractor shall demonstrate the operation of the system and prove that it complies with the intent of the drawings and specifications.

2.5 Provide services and manpower necessary for commissioning of system in coordination with the HVAC Contractor, Balancing Contractor and Owner's representative.

2.6 All work performed under this section of the specifications will comply with all codes, laws and governing bodies. If the drawings and/or specifications are in conflict with governing codes, the Contractor shall submit a proposal with appropriate modifications to the project to meet code restrictions. If this specification and associated drawings exceed governing code requirements, the specification will govern. The Contractor shall obtain and pay for all necessary construction permits and licenses.

3 Training

Provide a minimum of (40) hours of on-site training for (3) system operators. The training will be hands-on type at the owner's office. The training class will use the actual Operator's Manual that will be submitted for this project

4 System Description

The Building Automation System (BAS) shall be designed in strict accordance with ASHRAE's Standard 135-2016, BACnet™, to provide interoperability between different building subsystems. The system shall also provide a graphical, web-based operator interface that allows for instant access to any system through a standard browser.

The system shall use BACnet network types and protocols exclusively. Non-BACnet-based systems are not acceptable. The contractor must provide PC-based programming workstations, operator workstations and microcomputer controllers of modular design providing distributed processing capability and allowing future expansion of both input/output points and processing/control functions. Contractor must provide manufacturer's Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) for workstation software and every controller model that are installed.

For this project the system shall consist of the following components:

4.1 Administration and Programming Workstation(s).

Existing to be reused.

4.2 Web-Based Operator Workstations

Existing to be reused.

4.3 Ethernet-based Network Router and/or Controller(s).

The BAS Contractor shall furnish (2) Ethernet-based network controllers as described in Part 2 of the specification. These controllers will connect directly to the Operator Workstation over Ethernet, using the BACnet/IP protocol at a minimum of 100mbps, and provide communication to the Standalone Digital Control Units and/or other Input/Output Modules. Network Controllers shall conform to BACnet device profile B-BC. Network controllers that utilize RS232 serial communications or ARCNET to communicatee with the workstations will not be accepted.

Network Controllers shall be tested and certified by the BACnet Testing Laboratory (BTL) as Building Controllers (B-BC).

4.4 Standalone Digital Control Units (SDCUs).

Provide the necessary quantity and types of SDCUs to meet the requirements of the project for mechanical equipment control including air handlers, central plant control, and terminal unit control. Each SDCU will operate completely standalone, containing all of the I/O and programs to control its associated equipment. Each SDCU shall conform to the BACnet device profile B-AAC.

SDCUs shall be tested and certified by the BACnet Testing Laboratory (BTL) as Advanced Application Controllers (B-AAC).

5 Work by Others

5.1 The BAS Contractor shall cooperate with other contractors performing work on this project necessary to achieve a complete and neat installation. To that end, each contractor shall consult the drawings and specifications for all trades to determine the nature and extent of others' work.

5.2 The BAS Contractor shall furnish all control valves, sensor wells, flow meters and other similar equipment for installation by the Mechanical Contractor.

5.3 The BAS Contractor shall provide field supervision to the designated contractor for the installation of the following:

1. Automatic control dampers
2. Fire/smoke dampers
3. Blank-off plates for dampers that are smaller than duct size.
4. Sheet metal baffle plates to eliminate stratification.

5.4 The Electrical Contractor shall provide:

1. All power wiring to motors, heat trace, junction boxes for power to BAS panels.

2. Furnish smoke detectors and wire to the building fire alarm system. HVAC Contractor to mount devices. BAS Contractor to hardwire to fan shut down.
3. Auxiliary contact (pulse initiator) on the electric meter for central monitoring of kWH and KW. Electrical Contractor shall provide the pulse rate for remote readout to the BAS. BAS contractor to coordinate this with the electrical contractor.

5.5 The BAS Contractor shall provide:

1. All power wiring to all smoke damper actuators for smoke control sequence.

6 Code Compliance

6.1 Provide BAS components and ancillary equipment, which are UL-916 listed and labeled.

6.2 All equipment or piping used in conditioned air streams, spaces or return air plenums shall comply with NFPA 90A Flame/Smoke/Fuel contribution rating of 25/50/0 and all applicable building codes or requirements.

6.3 All wiring shall conform to the National Electrical Code.

6.4 All smoke dampers shall be rated in accordance with UL 555S.

6.5 Comply with FCC rules, Part 15 regarding Class A radiation for computing devices and low power communication equipment operating in commercial environments.

6.6 Comply with FCC, Part 68 rules for telephone modems and data sets.

7 Submittals

7.1 All shop drawings shall be prepared in Visio Professional or AutoCAD software. In addition to the drawings, the Contractor shall furnish a CD containing the identical information. Drawings shall be B size or larger.

7.2 Shop drawings shall include a riser diagram depicting locations of all controllers and workstations, with associated network wiring. Also included shall be individual schematics of each mechanical system showing all connected points with reference to their associated controller. Typical will be allowed where appropriate.

7.3 Submittal data shall contain manufacturer's data on all hardware and software products required by the specification. Valve, damper and air flow station schedules shall indicate size, configuration, capacity and location of all equipment.

7.4 Software submittals shall contain narrative descriptions of sequences of operation, program listings, point lists, and a complete description of the graphics, reports, alarms and configuration to be furnished with the workstation software. Information shall be bound or in a three-ring binder with an index and tabs.

7.3 Submit five (5) copies of submittal data and shop drawings to the Engineer for review prior to ordering or fabrication of the equipment. The Contractor prior to submitting shall check all documents for accuracy.

7.4 The Engineer will make corrections, if required, and return to the Contractor. The Contractor will then resubmit with the corrected or additional data. This procedure shall be repeated until all corrections are made to the satisfaction of the Engineer and the submittals are fully approved.

8 System Startup & Commissioning

8.1 Each point in the system shall be tested for both hardware and software functionality. In addition, each mechanical and electrical system under control of the BAS will be tested against the appropriate sequence of operation specified herein. Successful completion of the system test shall constitute the beginning of the warranty period. A written report will be submitted to the owner indicating that the installed system functions in accordance with the plans and specifications.

8.2 The BAS contractor shall commission and set in operating condition all major equipment and systems, such as the chilled water, hot water and all air handling systems, in the presence of the equipment manufacturer's representatives, as applicable, and the Owner and Architect's representatives.

8.3 The BAS Contractor shall provide all manpower and engineering services required to assist the HVAC Contractor and Balancing Contractor in testing, adjusting, and balancing all systems in the building. The BAS Contractor shall have a trained technician available on request during the balancing of the systems. The BAS Contractor shall coordinate all requirements to provide a complete air balance with the Balancing Contractor and shall include all labor and materials in his contract.

9 Training

The BAS Contractor shall provide both on-site and classroom training to the Owner's representative and maintenance personnel per the following description:

9.1 On-site training shall consist of a minimum of (40) hours of hands-on instruction geared at the operation and maintenance of the systems. The curriculum shall include

a. System Overview
b. System Software and Operation
    1) System access
    2) Software features overview
    3) Changing setpoints and other attributes
    4) Scheduling
    5) Editing programmed variables
    6) Displaying color graphics
    7) Running reports
    8) Workstation maintenance
    9) Application programming
c. Operational sequences including start-up, shutdown, adjusting and balancing.
d. Equipment maintenance.

10 Operating and Maintenance Manuals

10.1 The operation and maintenance manuals shall contain all information necessary for the operation, maintenance, replacement, installation, and parts procurement for the entire BAS. This documentation shall include specific part numbers and software versions and dates. A complete list

of recommended spare parts shall be included with the leadtime and expected frequency of use of each part clearly identified.

10.2 Following project completion and testing, the BAS contractor will submit as-built drawings reflecting the exact installation of the system. The as-built documentation shall also include a copy of all application software both in written form and on diskette.

11 Warranty

11.1 The BAS contractor shall warrant the system for 12 months after system acceptance and beneficial use by the owner. During the warranty period, the BAS contractor shall be responsible for all necessary revisions to the software as required to provide a complete and workable system consistent with the letter and intent of the Sequence of Operation section of the specification.

11.2 Updates to the manufacturer's software shall be provided at no charge during the warranty period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

1 System Architecture

1.1 General

The Building Automation System (BAS) shall consist of Network Router/Controllers (NRCs), a family of Standalone Digital Control Units (SDCUs), Administration and Programming Workstations (APWs), Web-based Operator Workstations (WOWs), and one File Server to support system configurations where more than three operator workstations are required. The BAS shall provide control, alarm detection, scheduling, reporting and information management for the entire facility, and Wide Area Network (WAN) if applicable, from a single ODBC-compliant database.

The system shall be designed with a top-level 10/100bT Ethernet network, using the BACnet/IP protocol. A sub-network using the BACnet MS/TP protocol, with a minimum of 76.8kb speed, shall connect the local, stand-alone controllers with Ethernet-level controller/routers. The use of ARCNET, LonWorks, RS-232 serial communications, or BACnet Ethernet for these controllers is prohibited.

1.2 Level 1 Network Description

Level 1, the main backbone of the system, shall be an Ethernet 10/100bT LAN/WAN, using BACnet/IP as the communications protocol. Network Router/Controllers, Operator Workstations, and the Central File Server shall connect directly to this network without the need for Gateway devices.

1.3 Level 2 Network Description

Level 2 of the system shall consist of one or more BACnet MS/TP field buses managed by the Network Router/Controllers. Minimum speed shall be 76.8kbps. The Level 2 field bus consists of an RS485, token passing bus that supports up to 127 Standalone Digital Control Units (SDCUs) for operation of HVAC equipment and lighting

1.4 BAS LAN Segmentation

The BAS shall be capable of being segmented, through software, into multiple local area networks (LANs) distributed over a wide area network (WAN), sharing a single file server. This enables workstations to manage a single LAN (or building), and/or the entire system with all devices being assured of being updated by and sharing the most current database. In the case of a single workstation system, the workstation shall contain the entire database – with no need for a separate file server.

1.5 Standard Network Support

All NRCs, Workstation(s) and File Server shall be capable of residing directly on the owner's Ethernet TCP/IP LAN/WAN with no required gateways. Furthermore, the NRC's, Workstation(s) and File Server shall be capable of using standard, commercially available, off-the-shelf Ethernet infrastructure components such as routers, switches and hubs. With this design the owner may utilize the investment of an existing or new enterprise network or structured cabling system. This also allows the option of the maintenance of the LAN/WAN to be performed by the owner's Information Systems Department as all devices utilize standard TCP/IP components.

1.6 System Expansion

The BAS system shall be scalable and expandable at all levels of the system using the same software interface, and the same Level 1 and Level 2 controllers. Systems that require replacement of either the

workstation software or field controllers in order to expand the system shall not be acceptable.

The BAS shall be expandable to include Security and Access Control functions at any time in the future with no additional workstations, front-end software or Level 1 controllers required. Ethernet-based security/card access controllers shall be able to be added to the existing Level 1 network, to perform security and card access applications. In this way, an owner's existing investment in wiring infrastructure may be leveraged and the cost and inconvenience of adding new field bus wiring will be minimized.

Additionally, an integrated video badging option must be able to be included with no additional workstations required. This photo ID option must share the same database as the BAS in order to eliminate the need for updating multiple databases.

Additional web-based operator licenses shall add in the field through an upgrade of the web server's security key, with no re-programming required.

The system shall use the same application programming language for all levels: Operator Workstation, Network Router/Controller, and Standalone Digital Control Unit. Furthermore, this single programming language shall be used for all applications: environmental control, card access control, intrusion detection and security, lighting control, leak detection / underground storage tank monitoring, and digital data communication interfaces to third party microprocessor-based devices.

1.7 Support for Open Systems Protocols

All hardware and software included under this section shall conform to BACnet standard 135-2001, to promote interoperability between building subsystems. Additionally, the BAS design must include solutions for the integration of the following "open systems" protocols: LonTalk™, Modbus, and digital data communication to third party microprocessors such as chiller controllers, fire panels and variable frequency drives (VFDs).

The system shall also provide the ability to program custom ASCII communication drivers, that will reside in a BACnet Gateway, for communication to third party systems and devices. These drivers will provide real time monitoring and control of the third-party systems. Once programmed, these data points shall be monitored and controlled in exactly the same manner as native BAS data points.

2 Network Router/Controllers (NRCs)

2.1 General

Network Router Controllers shall combine both network routing functions and control functions into a single unit. NRC's shall route communications between the BACnet/IP network and the BACnet MS/TP field network. They shall also be responsible for monitoring and controlling their own HVAC equipment such as an AHU or boiler. A sufficient number of NRCs shall be supplied to fully meet the requirements of this specification and the attached point list.

Each NRC shall be classified as a "native" BACnet device, supporting the BACnet Building Controller (B-BC) profile. Controllers that support a lesser profile such as B-SA are not acceptable. NRCs shall be tested and certified by the BACnet Testing Laboratory (BTL) as Advanced Application Controllers (B-BC).

2.2 Hardware Specifications

1.1.1 Memory:

Both the operating system of the controller, plus the application program for the controller, shall be stored in non-volatile, FLASH memory. Controllers shall contain enough memory for the current application, plus required history logging, plus a minimum of 20% additional free memory.

1.1.2 Communication Ports:

Each NRC shall provide communication to both the Workstation(s) and the field buses. An on-board 10/100bT Ethernet port shall be provided, as well as a RS-485 port for communications to a maximum of 127 MS/TP devices.

1.1.3 Modular Expandability:

The system shall employ a modular I/O design to allow easy expansion. Input and output capacity are to be provided through plug-in modules of various types. It shall be possible to combine I/O modules as desired to meet the I/O requirements for individual control applications.

1.1.4 Hardware Override Switches:

All digital outputs shall include three position manual override switches to allow selection of the ON, OFF, or AUTO output state. These switches shall be built into the unit and shall provide feedback to the controller so that the position of the override switch can be obtained through software. In addition, each analog output shall be equipped with an override potentiometer to allow manual adjustment of the analog output signal over its full range, when the 3-position manual override switch is placed in the ON position.

1.1.5 Local Status Indicator Lamps:

Provide as a minimum LED indication of CPU status, Ethernet LAN status, and field bus status. For each output, provide LED indication of the value of the output (On/Off). For each output module provide an LED which gives a visual indication of whether any outputs on the module are manually overridden.

1.1.6 Real Time Clock (RTC):

Each NRC shall include a battery-backed, real time clock, accurate to 10 seconds per day. The RTC shall provide the following: time of day, day, month, year, and day of week. The system shall automatically correct for daylight savings time and leap years and be Year 2000 compliant.

1.1.7 Power Supply:

The power supply for the NRCs shall be auto sensing, 24Vac/10-40Vdc power, with a tolerance of +/- 20%. Line voltage below the operating range of the system shall be considered outages. The controller shall contain over voltage surge protection and require no additional AC power signal conditioning.

1.1.8 Automatic Restart After Power Failure:

Upon restoration of power after an outage, the NRC shall automatically and without human intervention: update all monitored functions; resume operation based on current, synchronized time

and status, and implement special start-up strategies as required.

1.1.9 Battery backup:

The NRC shall include an on-board battery to back up the controller's RAM memory. The battery shall provide accumulated backup of all RAM and clock functions for at least 30 days. In the case of a power failure, the NRC shall first try to restart from the RAM memory. If that memory is corrupted or unusable, then the NRC shall restart itself from its application program stored in its FLASH memory.

2.3 Software Specifications

1.1.1 General.

The NRC shall contain FLASH memory to store both the resident operating system AND the application software. There will be no restrictions placed on the type of application programs in the system. Each NRC shall be capable of parallel processing, executing all control programs simultaneously. Any program may affect the operation of any other program. Each program shall have the full access of all I/O facilities of the processor. This execution of control function shall not be interrupted due to normal user communications including interrogation, program entry, printout of the program for storage, etc.

1.1.2 User Programming Language:

The application software shall be user programmable. This includes all strategies, sequences of operation, control algorithms, parameters, and setpoints. The source program shall be English language-based and programmable by the user. The language shall be structured to allow for the easy configuration of control programs, schedules, alarms, reports, telecommunications, local displays, mathematical calculations, passwords, and histories. The language shall be self-documenting. Users shall be able to place comments anywhere in the body of a program. Program listings shall be configurable by the user in logical groupings.

Controllers that use a "canned" program method will not be accepted.

2.4 Control Software:

The NRC shall have the ability to perform the following pre-tested control algorithms:

a. Proportional, Integral plus Derivative Control (PID)
b. Self Tuning PID
c. Two Position Control
d. Digital Filter
e. Ratio Calculator
f. Equipment Cycling Protection

1.1.1 Mathematical Functions:

Each controller shall be capable of performing basic mathematical functions (+, -, *, /), squares, square roots, exponential, logarithms, Boolean logic statements, or combinations of both. The controllers shall be capable of performing complex logical statements including operators such as >, <, =, and, or, exclusive or, etc. These must be able to be used in the same equations with the mathematical operators and nested up to five parentheses deep.

1.1.2 Energy Management Applications:

NRCs shall have the ability to perform any or all of the following energy management routines:

a. Time of Day Scheduling
b. Calendar Based Scheduling
c. Holiday Scheduling
d. Temporary Schedule Overrides
e. Optimal Start
f. Optimal Stop
g. Night Setback Control
h. Enthalpy Switchover (Economizer)
i. Peak Demand Limiting
j. Temperature Compensated Duty Cycling
k. CFM Tracking
l. Heating/Cooling Interlock
m. Hot/Cold Deck Reset
n. Free Cooling
o. Hot Water Reset
p. Chilled Water Reset
q. Condenser Water Reset
r. Chiller Sequencing

1.1.3 History Logging:

Each controller shall be capable of LOCALLY logging any input, output, calculated value or other system variable over user defined time intervals ranging from 1 second to 1440 minutes. Any system can be logged in history. A minimum of 1000 values shall be stored in each log. Each log can record either the instantaneous, average, minimum or maximum value of the point. Logged data shall be downloadable to the Operator Workstation for long term archiving based upon user-defined time intervals, or manual command.

1.1.4 Alarm Management:

For each system point, alarms can be created based on high/low limits or conditional expressions. All alarms will be tested each scan of the NRC and can result in the display of one or more alarm messages or reports.

Up to 8 alarms can be configured for each point in the controller.

Alarms will be generated based on their priority. A minimum of 255 priority levels shall be provided.

If communication with the Operator Workstation is temporarily interrupted, the alarm will be time-stamped and buffered in the NRC. When communications return, the alarm will be transmitted to the Operator Workstation if the point is still in the alarm. condition.

Alarms must be capable of being routed to any BACnet workstation that conforms to the B-OWS

device profile and uses the BACnet/IP protocol.

2.4.6 Embedded Web Server

Each NRC must have the ability to serve out customized web pages containing any desired I/O values from the entire BAS.

3 Standalone Digital Control Units (SDCUs)

3.1 General:

Standalone Digital Control Units shall provide control of HVAC and lighting, including air handling units, rooftop units, variable air volume boxes, unit ventilators, and other mechanical equipment. Each controller shall be fully programmable, contain its own control programs and will continue to operate in the event of a failure or communication loss to its associated NRC. Each SDCU provided must be a "native" BACnet device, supporting the BACnet Advanced Application Controller (B-AAC) profile. Controllers that support a lesser profile such as B-SA are not acceptable. SDCUs shall be tested and certified by the BACnet Testing Laboratory (BTL) as Advanced Application Controllers (B-AAC).

3.2 Memory:

Both the operating system of the controller, plus the application program for the controller, shall be stored in non-volatile, FLASH memory. Controllers shall contain enough memory for the current application, plus required history logging, plus a minimum of 20% additional free memory.

3.3 Communication Ports:

SDCUs shall have a RS-485 communication port to the BACnet MS/TP field bus, operating at a speed of at least 76.8kbps.

3.4 Input/Output:

Each SDCU shall have enough inputs and outputs to meet the application's required point count. Each SDCU shall support universal inputs, whereas any input may be software-defined as:

a. Digital Inputs for status/alarm contacts
b. Counter Inputs for summing pulses from meters.
c. Thermistor Inputs for measuring temperatures in space, ducts and thermowells.
d. Analog inputs for pressure, humidity, flow and position measurements.
e. SDCU's must support both digital and analog output types:
f. Digital Outputs for on/off equipment control.
g. Analog Outputs for valve and damper position control, and capacity control of primary equipment.

3.5 Expandability:

For larger controllers (16 base inputs and up), provide input and output expansion through the use of plug-in modules. At least two I/O modules must be capable of being added to the base SDCU.

3.6 Hardware Override Switches:

All digital outputs on air handling unit controllers shall include three position manual override switches to allow selection of the ON, OFF, or AUTO output state. These switches shall be built into the unit and shall provide feedback to the controller so that the position of the override switch can be

obtained through software. In addition, each analog output on air handling unit controllers shall be equipped with an override potentiometer to allow manual adjustment of the analog output signal over its full range, when the 3-position manual override switch is placed in the ON position.

3.7 Room Sensor Support:

The SDCU shall support a basic room thermistor in plain plastic cover; a room sensor with override and setpoint adjust slider; and, a sensor with a one-line display and 6-button keypad. The display sensor shall be able to display the current temperature, setpoint, outside air temperature, relative humidity and setpoint, occupancy mode, and CFM of the individual zone.

3.8 Networking:

Each SDCU will be able to exchange information on a peer to peer basis with other Standalone Digital Control Units, according to the BACnet MS/TP protocol. Each SDCU shall be capable of storing and referencing global variables (on the LAN) with or without any workstations online. Each SDCU shall be able to have its program viewed and/or enabled/disabled through a workstation connected to an NRC.

3.9 Indicator Lamps:

SDCUs will have as a minimum, LED indication of CPU status, and field bus status.

3.10 Real Time Clock (RTC):

All SDCUs shall have a real time clock in either hardware or software. The accuracy shall be within 10 seconds per day. The RTC shall provide the following information: time of day, day, month, year, and day of week. Each SDCU shall receive a signal, every hour, over the network from the NRC, which synchronizes all SDCU real time clocks.

3.11 Automatic Restart After Power Failure:

Upon restoration of power, the SDCU shall automatically and without human intervention, update all monitored functions, resume operation based on current, synchronized time and status, and implement special start-up strategies as required.

3.12 Battery Back Up:

All SDCUs shall store all programming in non-volatile FLASH memory. All SDCUs except terminal controllers shall include an on-board lithium battery to back up the controller’s RAM memory. The battery shall have a shelf life of over 10 years and provide accumulated backup of all RAM and clock functions for at least 3 years. In the case of a power failure, the SDCU shall first try to restart from the RAM memory. If that memory is corrupted or unusable, then the SDCU shall restart itself from its application program stored in its FLASH memory.

3.13 Software - General.

The SDCU shall contain FLASH memory to store both the resident operating system AND the application software. There will be no restrictions placed on the type of application programs in the system. Each SDCU shall be capable of parallel processing, executing all control programs simultaneously. Any program may affect the operation of any other program. Each program shall have the full access of all I/O facilities of the processor. This execution of control function shall not be interrupted due to normal user communications including interrogation, program entry, printout of the program for storage, etc.

3.14 User Programming Language:

The application software shall be user programmable, using the same language as that defined for Network Router/Controllers. Controllers that use a “canned” program method will not be accepted.

Control Software, Mathematical Functions, and Energy Management Applications must be identical to that which is provided with the Network Router/Controller.

3.15 History Logging:

Each controller shall be capable of LOCALLY logging any input, output, calculated value or other system variable over user defined time intervals ranging from 1 second to 1440 minutes. Any system can be logged in history. A minimum of 1000 values shall be stored in each log. Each log can record either the instantaneous, average, minimum or maximum value of the point. Logged data shall be downloadable to the Operator Workstation for long term archiving based upon user-defined time intervals, or manual command.

3.16 Alarm Management:

For each system point, alarms can be created based on high/low limits or conditional expressions. All alarms will be tested each scan of the SDCU and can result in the display of one or more alarm messages or reports.

Up to 8 alarms can be configured for each point in the controller.

Alarms will be generated based on their priority. A minimum of 255 priority levels shall be provided.

If communication with the Operator Workstation is temporarily interrupted, the alarm will be time-stamped and buffered in the controller. When communications return, the alarm will be transmitted to the Operator Workstation if the point is still in the alarm condition.

Alarms must be capable of being routed to any BACnet workstation that conforms to the B-OWS device profile and uses the BACnet/IP protocol.

3.17 Air Handler Controllers

AHU Controllers shall conform to the BACnet Advanced Application Controller (B-AAC) device profile.

AHU Controllers shall be capable of meeting the requirements of the sequence of operation found in the Execution portion of this specification and for future expansion.

AHU Controllers shall support all the necessary point inputs and outputs as required by the sequence and operate in a standalone fashion.

AHU Controllers shall be fully user programmable to allow for modification of the application software.

A manual override switch shall be provided for all digital and analog outputs on the AHU Controller. The position of the switch shall be monitored in software and available for operator displays and alarm notification.

1.1.1 Local Keypad/Display:

For each air handler SDCU, provide a local display of at least 4 lines, providing current display of all critical inputs and outputs that the SDCU is controlling. Provide a keypad such that an operator can

log on, scroll through point values, and change setpoints that are changeable. The keypad/display must be capable of being mounted either on the controller, or on a control panel door.

3.18 VAV Terminal Unit Controllers

VAV Controllers shall conform to the BACnet Advanced Application Controller (B-AAC) device profile.

VAV Terminal Unit Controllers shall support, but not be limited to the control of the following configurations of VAV boxes to address current requirements as described in the Execution portion of this specification, and for future expansion:

a. Single Duct Cooling Only
b. Single Duct Cooling with Reheat (Electric or Hot Water)
c. Fan Powered (Parallel or Series)
d. Dual Duct (Constant or Variable Volume)
e. Supply/Exhaust

VAV Controllers for single duct applications will come equipped with a built-in actuator for modulation of the air damper. The actuator shall have a minimum torque rating of 35 in.-lb. and contain an override mechanism for manual positioning of the damper during startup and service.

VAV Controllers shall contain an integral velocity sensor accurate to +/- 5% of the full range of the box's CFM rating.

Each controller shall perform the sequence of operation described in Part 3 of this specification and have the capability for local time of day scheduling, occupancy mode control, after hours operation, lighting control, alarming, and trending.

VAV Controllers shall be able to communicate with any other Standalone Digital Control Unit on the same MS/TP field bus.

3.19 Unitary Controllers

Unitary Controllers shall conform to the BACnet Advanced Application Controller (B-AAC) device profile.

Unitary Controllers shall support, but not be limited to, the control of the following systems as described in the Execution portion of this specification, and for future expansion:

a. Unit Ventilators
b. Heat Pumps (Air to Air, Water to Water)
c. Packaged Rooftops
d. Fan Coils (2 or 4 Pipe)

The I/O of each Unitary Controller shall contain the sufficient quantity and types as required to meet the sequence of operation found in the Execution portion of this specification. In addition, each controller shall have the capability for local time of day scheduling, occupancy mode control, after hour operation, lighting control, alarming, and trending.

Unitary Controllers shall be able to communicate with any other Standalone Digital Control Unit on the same MS/TP field bus.

4 BACnet Gateway to Third-Party Devices

4.1 General:

Where required, provide a BACnet Gateway to interface to non-BACnet systems that use the Modbus protocol, LonWorks protocol, or other proprietary protocol. The Gateway shall communicate directly over Ethernet TCP/IP and shall use the BACnet/IP protocol to communicate with a BACnet Workstation (B-OWS).

4.2 Communication Ports:

In addition to its on-board Ethernet port, the Gateway shall have at least two serial communications ports for interfaces to third-party systems.

4.3 Memory:

The Gateway shall have enough RAM memory to store all point configuration data, plus required history logging and alarm buffering. Minimum RAM shall be 8MB. The operating system of the gateway must be stored in FLASH non-volatile memory.

4.4 User Programming Language:

The Gateway shall employ the same user programmable application software that NRCs and SDCUs use. Control Software, Mathematical Functions, and Energy Management Applications must be identical to that which is provided with the Network Router/Controller. Gateways that do not have an application programming language will not be accepted.

4.5 History Logging:

Each Gateway shall be capable of LOCALLY logging any input, output, calculated value or other system variable over user defined time intervals ranging from 1 second to 1440 minutes. Any system can be logged in history. A minimum of 1000 values shall be stored in each log. Each log can record either the instantaneous, average, minimum or maximum value of the point. Logged data shall be downloadable to the Operator Workstation for long term archiving based upon user-defined time intervals, or manual command.

5 Operator Workstation Requirements

5.1 General.

Existing to be reused.

5.2 Web-Based Operator PC Requirements

Existing to be reused

5.3 Printer

Existing to be reused.

5.4 Administration and Programming Workstation Software

Existing to be reused

1.1.1 System Database

The files server database engine must be Microsoft SQL Server, or another ODBC-compliant, relational database program. This ODBC (**O**pen **D**ata**b**ase **C**onnectivity)-compliant database engine allows for an owner to write custom applications and/or reports which communicate directly with the database avoiding data transfer routines to update other applications. The system database shall contain all point configurations and programs in each of the controllers that have been assigned to the network. In addition, the database will contain all workstation files including color graphic, alarm reports, text reports, historical data logs, schedules, and polling records.

1.1.2 User Interface

The BAS workstation software shall allow the creation of a custom, browser-style interface linked to the user that has logged into the workstation software. This interface shall support the creation of "hot-spots" that the user may link to view/edit any object in the system or run any object editor or configuration tool contained in the software. Furthermore, this interface must be able to be configured to become a user's "PC Desktop" – with all the links that a user needs to run other applications. This, along with the Windows XP user security capabilities, will enable a system administrator to setup workstation accounts that not only limit the capabilities of the user within the BAS software but may also limit what a user can do on the PC and/or LAN/WAN. This might be used to ensure, for example, that the user of an alarm monitoring workstation is unable to shut down the active alarm viewer and/or unable to load software onto the PC.

1.1.3 User Security

The software shall be designed so that each user of the software can have a unique username and password. This username/password combination shall be linked to a set of capabilities within the software, set by and editable only by, a system administrator. The sets of capabilities shall range from View only, Acknowledge alarms, Enable/disable and change values, Program, and Administer. The system shall allow the above capabilities to be applied independently to each and every class of object in the system. The system must allow a minimum of 256 users to be configured per workstation. There shall be an inactivity timer adjustable in software that automatically logs off the current operator after the timer has expired.

1.1.4 Configuration Interface

The workstation software shall use a familiar Windows Explorer™-style interface for an operator or programmer to view and/or edit any object (controller, point, alarm, report, schedule, etc.) in the entire system. In addition, this interface shall present a "network map" of all controllers and their associated points, programs, graphics, alarms, and reports in an easy to understand structure. All object names shall be alphanumeric and use Windows long filename conventions.

The configuration interface shall also include support for template objects. These template objects shall be used as building blocks for the creation of the BAS database. The types of template objects supported shall include all data point types (input, output, string variables, setpoints, etc.), alarm algorithms, alarm notification objects, reports, graphics displays, schedules, and programs. Groups of template object types shall be able to be set up as template subsystems and systems. The template system shall prompt for data entry if necessary. The template system shall maintain a link to all

"child" objects created by each template. If a user wishes to make a change to a template object, the software shall ask the user if he/she wants to update all of the child objects with the change. This template system shall facilitate configuration and programming consistency and afford the user a fast and simple method to make global changes to the BAS.

1.1.5 Color Graphic Displays

The system shall allow for the creation of user defined, color graphic displays for the viewing of mechanical and electrical systems or building schematics. These graphics shall contain point information from the database including any attributes associated with the point (engineering units, etc.). In addition, operators shall be able to command equipment or change setpoints from a graphic through the use of the mouse. Requirements of the color graphic subsystem include:

a. SVGA, bit-mapped displays. The user shall have the ability to import AutoCAD generated picture files as background displays.
b. A built-in library of animated objects such as dampers, fans, pumps, buttons, knobs, gauges, ad graphs which can be "dropped" on a graphic through the use of a software configuration "wizard". These objects shall enable operators to interact with the graphic displays in a manner that mimics their mechanical equivalents found on field installed control panels. Using the mouse, operators shall be able to adjust setpoints, start or stop equipment, modify PID loop parameters, or change schedules.
c. Status changes or alarm conditions must be able to be highlighted by objects changing screen location, size, color, text, blinking or changing from one display to another.
d. Ability to link graphic displays through user defined objects, alarm testing, or the result of a mathematical expression. Operators must be able to change from one graphic to another by selecting an object with a mouse - no menus will be required.
e. If separate, provide a copy of the full graphic editing software on each workstation.

1.1.6 Automatic monitoring

The software shall allow for the automatic collection of data and reports from any controller through either a hardwire or modem communication link. The frequency of data collection shall be completely user-configurable.

1.1.7 Alarm Management

The software shall be capable of accepting alarms directly from controllers, or generating alarms based on evaluation of data in controllers and comparing to limits or conditional equations configured through the software. Any alarm (regardless of its origination) will be integrated into the overall alarm management system and will appear in all standard alarm reports, be available for operator acknowledgment, and have the option for displaying graphics, or reports.

Alarm management features shall include:

a. A minimum of 255 alarm notification levels. Each notification level will establish a unique set of parameters for controlling alarm display, acknowledgment, keyboard annunciation, alarm printout and record keeping.
b. Automatic logging in the database of the alarm message, point name, point value, connected controller, timestamp, username and time of acknowledgement, username and time of alarm silence (soft acknowledgement)
c. Automatic printing of the alarm information or alarm report to an alarm printer or report printer.

d. Playing an audible beep or audio (wav) file on alarm initiation or return to normal.
e. Sending an email or alphanumeric page to anyone listed in a workstation's email account address list on either the initial occurrence of an alarm and/or if the alarm is repeated because an operator has not acknowledged the alarm within a user-configurable timeframe. The ability to utilize email and alphanumeric paging of alarms shall be a standard feature of the software integrated with the operating system's mail application interface (MAPI). No special software interfaces shall be required.
f. Individual alarms shall be able to be re-routed to a workstation or workstations at user-specified times and dates. For example, a critical high temp alarm can be configured to be routed to a Facilities Dept. workstation during normal working hours (7am-6pm, Mon-Fri) and to a Central Alarming workstation at all other times.
g. An active alarm viewer shall be included which can be customized for each user or user type to hide or display any alarm attributes.
h. The font type and color, and background color for each alarm notification level as seen in the active alarm viewer shall be customizable to allow easy identification of certain alarm types or alarm states.
i. The active alarm viewer can be configured such that an operator must type in text in an alarm entry and/or pick from a drop-down list of user actions for certain alarms. This ensures accountability (audit trail) for the response to critical alarms.

1.1.8 Custom Report Generation

The software will contain a built-in custom report generator, featuring word processing tools for the creation of custom reports. These custom reports shall be able to be set up to automatically run or be generated on demand. Each workstation shall be able to associate reports with any word processing or spreadsheet program loaded on the machine. When the report is displayed, it will automatically spawn the associated report editor such as MS Word™.

a. Reports can be of any length and contain any point attributes from any controller on the network.
b. The report generator will have access to the user programming language in order to perform mathematical calculations inside the body of the report, control the display output of the report, or prompt the user for additional information needed by the report.
c. It shall be possible to run other executable programs whenever a report is initiated.
d. Report Generator activity can be tied to the alarm management system, so that any of the configured reports can be displayed in response to an alarm condition.
e. Standard reports shall include:
    1) Points in each controller.
    2) Points in alarm
    3) Disabled points
    4) Overridden points
    5) Operator activity report
    6) Alarm history log.
    7) Program listing by controller with status.
    8) Network status of each controller

1.1.9 Spreadsheet-style reports

The software shall allow the simple configuration of row/column (spreadsheet-style) reports on any class of object in the system. These reports shall be user-configurable and shall be able to extract live (controller) data and/or data from the database. The user shall be able to set up each report to display

in any text font, color and background color. In addition, the report shall be able to be configured to filter data, sort data and highlight data which meets user-defined criteria.

1.1.10 HTML Reporting

The above spreadsheet-style reports shall be able to be run to an HTML template file. This feature will create an HTML "results" file in the directory of the HTML template. This directory can be shared with other computer users, which will allow those users with access to the directory to "point" their web browser at the file and view the report.

1.1.11 Scheduling

It shall be possible to configure and download from the workstation schedules for any of the controllers on the network.

a. Time of day schedules shall be in a calendar style and shall be programmable for a minimum of one year in advance. Each standard day of the week and user-defined day types shall be able to be associated with a color so that when the schedule is viewed it is very easy, at-a-glance, to determine the schedule for a particular day even from the yearly view. To change the schedule for a particular day, a user shall simply click on the day and then click on the day type.
b. Each schedule will appear on the screen viewable as the entire year, monthly, week and day. A simple mouse click shall allow switching between views. It shall also be possible to scroll from one month to the next and view or alter any of the schedule times.
c. Schedules will be assigned to specific controllers and stored in their local RAM memory. Any changes made at the workstation will be automatically updated to the corresponding schedule in the controller.

1.1.12 Programmer's Environment

The programmer's environment will include access to a superset of the same programming language supported in the controllers. Here the programmer will be able to configure application software off-line (if desired) for custom program development, write global control programs, system reports, wide area networking data collection routines, and custom alarm management software. On the same screen as the program editor, the programming environment shall include dockable debug and watch bars for program debugging and viewing updated values and point attributes during programming. In addition, a wizard tool shall be available for loading programs from a library file in the program editor.

1.1.13 Saving/Reloading

The workstation software shall have an application to save and restore field controller memory files. This application shall not be limited to saving and reloading an entire controller – it must also be able to save/reload individual objects in the controller. This allows off-line debugging of control programs, for example, and then reloading of just the modified information.

1.1.14 Data Logging

The workstation software shall have the capability to easily configure groups of data points with trend logs and display the trend log data. A group of data points shall be created by drag-and-drop method of the points into a folder. The trend log data shall be displayed through a simple menu selection, or from a hot spot on a graphic display. This data shall be able to be saved to file and/or printed.

1.1.15 Audit Trail

The workstation software shall automatically log and timestamp every operation that a user performs at a workstation, from logging on and off a workstation to changing a point value, modifying a program, enabling/disabling an object, viewing a graphic display, running a report, modifying a schedule, etc.

1.1.16 Fault Tolerant File Server Operation

The system shall provide the option to provide fault tolerant operation in the event of the loss of the CPU, disk drives, or other hardware required to maintain the operational integrity of the system. Operational integrity includes all user interfaces, monitoring of alarm points and access points, and executing access control functions.

The switchover mechanism provided shall be automatic. Should the failure be caused by hardware, then the system shall immediately switch to the Backup computer. Should the system failure be caused by software (instruction or data), the system shall not pass the faulted code to the Backup computer, otherwise the Backup shall fail in the same manner of the Primary computer.

Switchover to the Backup computer shall be initiated and effective (complete) in a manner and time frame that precludes the loss of event data, and shall be transparent to the system users, except for an advisory alarm message indicating that the switchover has occurred.

When the system fails-over from the Primary to the Backup computer, no alarm or other event shall be lost, and the Backup computer shall take control of all system functions.

A single component failure in the system shall not cause the entire system to fail. All system users shall be informed of any detectable component failure via an alarm event. System users shall not be logged off as a result of a system failure or switchover.

The Primary computer shall provide continual indication that the Backup computer is unavailable until such time that the fault has been purged.

5.5 Web-based Operator Software

Day-to-day operation of the system shall be accessible through a standard web browser interface, allowing technicians and operators to view any part of the system from anywhere on the network. Access to the system must be available from a dial-in connection over the Internet.

1.1.1 Graphic Displays

The browser-based interface must share the same graphical displays as the Administration and Programming Workstations, presenting dynamic data on site layouts, floor plans, and equipment graphics. The browser’s graphics shall support commands to change setpoints, enable/disable equipment and start/stop equipment.

Through the browser interface, operators must be able to navigate through the entire system and change the value or status of any point in any controller. Changes are effective immediately to the controller, with a copy stored in the system database.

1.1.2 Alarm Management

Through the browser interface, a live alarm viewer identical to the alarm viewer on the

Administration and Programming workstation shall be presented, if the user's password allows it. Users must be able to receive alarms, silence alarms, and acknowledge alarms through a browser. If desired, specific operator text must be able to be added to the alarm record before acknowledgement.

1.1.3 Groups and Schedules

Through the browser interface, operators must be able to view pre-defined groups of points, with their values updated automatically.

Through the browser interface, operators must be able to change schedules – change start and stop times and add new times to a schedule.

1.1.4 User Accounts and Audit Trail

The same user accounts shall be used for the browser interface and for the operator workstations. Operators must not be forced to memorize multiple passwords.

All commands and user activity through the browser interface shall be recorded in the system's activity log, which can be later searched and retrieved by user, date, or both.

6 DDC Sensors and Point Hardware

6.1 Temperature Sensors

a. All temperature devices shall use precision thermistors accurate to +/- 1-degree F over a range of –30 to 230 degrees F. Space temperature sensors shall be accurate to +/- .5 degrees F over a range of 40 to 100 degrees F.
b. Standard space sensors shall be available in an off-white enclosure for mounting on a standard electrical box.
c. Where manual overrides are required, the sensor housing shall feature both an optional sliding mechanism for adjusting the space temperature setpoint, as well as a push button for selecting after hours operation.
d. Where a local display is specified, the sensor shall incorporate either an LED or LCD display for viewing the space temperature, setpoint and other operator selectable parameters. Using built in buttons, operators shall be able to adjust setpoints directly from the sensor.
e. Duct temperature sensors shall incorporate a thermistor bead embedded at the tip of a stainless-steel tube. Probe style duct sensors are useable in air handling applications where the coil or duct area is less than 14 square feet.
f. Averaging sensors shall be employed in ducts which are larger than 14 square feet. The averaging sensor tube must contain at least one thermistor for every 3 feet, with a minimum tube length of 12 feet.
g. Immersion sensors shall be employed for measurement of temperature in all chilled and hot water applications as well as refrigerant applications. Thermal wells shall be brass or stainless steel for non-corrosive fluids below 250 degrees F and 300 series stainless steel for all other applications.
h. A pneumatic signal shall not be allowed for sensing temperature.

6.2 Humidity Sensors

a. Humidity devices shall be accurate to +/- 5% at full scale for space and +/- 3% for duct and outside air applications. Suppliers shall be able to demonstrate that accuracy is NIST traceable.

6.3 Pressure Sensors

a. Air pressure measurements in the range of 0 to 10" water column will be accurate to +/- 1% using a solid-state sensing element. Acceptable manufacturers include Modus Instruments and Mamac.
b. Differential pressure measurements of liquids or gases shall be accurate to =/- 0.5% of range. The housing shall be Nema 4 rated.

6.4 Current and KW Sensors

a. Current status switches shall be used to monitor fans, pumps, motors and electrical loads. Current switches shall be available in solid and split core models and offer either a digital or an analog signal to the automation system. Acceptable manufacturer is Veris or approved equal.
b. Measurement of three phase power shall be accomplished with a kW/kWH transducer. This device shall utilize direct current transformer inputs to calculate the instantaneous value (kW) and a pulsed output proportional to the energy usage (kWH). Provide Veris Model 6000 Power Transducer or approved equal.

6.5 Flow Sensors

a. Provide an insertion vortex flowmeter for measurement of liquid, gas or steam flows in pipe sizes above 3 inches.
b. Install the flow meter on an isolation valve to permit removal without process shutdown.
c. Sensors shall be manufactured by Schneider Electric or approved equal.

7 Control Valves

a. Provide automatic control valves suitable for the specified controlled media (steam, water or glycol). Provide valves which mate and match the material of the connected piping. Equip control valves with the actuators of required input power type and control signal type to accurately position the flow control element and provide sufficient force to achieve required leakage specification.
b. Control valves shall meet the heating and cooling loads specified, and close off against the differential pressure conditions within the application. Valves should be sized to operate accurately and with stability from 10 to 100% of the maximum design flow.
c. Trim material shall be stainless steel for steam and high differential pressure applications.
d. Electric actuation should be provided on all terminal unit reheat applications.
e. Manufactured by Belimo or approved equal.

8 Dampers

a. Automatic dampers furnished by the Building Automation Contractor shall be single or multiple blade as required. Dampers are to be installed by the HVAC Contractor under the supervision of the BAS Contractor. All blank-off plates and conversions necessary to install smaller than duct size dampers are the responsibility of the Sheet Metal Contractor.
b. Damper frames are to be constructed of 13-gauge galvanized sheet steel mechanically joined with linkage concealed in the side channel to eliminate noise as friction. Compressible spring stainless steel side seals, and acetal or bronze bearings shall also be provided.
c. Damper blade width shall not exceed eight inches. Seals and 3/8-inch square steel zinc plated pins are required. Blade rotation is to be parallel or opposed as shown on the schedules.
d. For high performance applications, control dampers will meet or exceed the UL Class I leakage rating.
e. Control and smoke dampers shall be Ruskin or approved equal.

f. Provide opposed blade dampers for modulating applications and parallel blade for two position control.

9 Damper Actuators

a. Manufactured by Belimo or approved equal.
b. Damper actuators shall be electronic, and shall be direct coupled over the shaft, without the need for connecting linkage. The actuator shall have electronic overload circuitry to prevent damage. For power-failure/safety applications, an internal mechanical, spring return mechanism shall be built into the actuator housing. Non-spring return actuators shall have an external manual gear release to allow positioning of the damper when the actuator is not powered.

10 Smoke Detectors

a. Air duct smoke detectors shall be by Air Products & Controls or approved equal. The detectors shall operate at air velocities from 300 feet per minute to 4000 feet per minute.
b. The smoke detector shall utilize a photoelectric detector head.
c. The housing shall permit mechanical installation without removal of the detector cover.
d. The detectors shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories and meet the requirements of UL 268A.

11 Airflow Measuring Stations

a. Provide a thermal anemometer using instrument grade self heated thermistor sensors with thermistor temperature sensors.
b. The flow station shall operate over a range of 0 to 5,000 feet/min with an accuracy of +/- 2% over 500 feet/min and +/- 10 ft/min for reading less than 500 feet/min.
c. The output signal shall be linear with field selectable ranges including 0-5 VDC, 0-10VDC and 4-20 mA.

PART 3 - – EXECUTION

1 Contractor Responsibilities

1.1 General

Installation of the building automation system shall be performed by the Contractor or a subcontractor. However, all installation shall be under the personal supervision of the Contractor. The Contractor shall certify all work as proper and complete. Under no circumstances shall the design, scheduling, coordination, programming, training, and warranty requirements for the project be delegated to a subcontractor.

1.2 Demolition

Remove controls which do not remain as part of the building automation system, all associated abandoned wiring and conduit, and all associated pneumatic tubing. The Owner will inform the Contractor of any equipment which is to be removed that will remain the property of the Owner. All other equipment which is removed will be disposed of by the Contractor.

1.3 Access to Site

Unless notified otherwise, entrance to building is restricted. No one will be permitted to enter the building unless their names have been cleared with the Owner or the Owner's Representative.

1.4 Code Compliance

All wiring shall be installed in accordance with all applicable electrical codes and will comply with equipment manufacturer's recommendations. Should any discrepancy be found between wiring specifications in Division 17 and Division 16, wiring requirements of Division 17 will prevail for work specified in Division 17.

1.5 Cleanup

At the completion of the work, all equipment pertinent to this contract shall be checked and thoroughly cleaned, and all other areas shall be cleaned around equipment provided under this contract.

2 Wiring, Conduit, and Cable

All wire will be copper and meet the minimum wire size and insulation class listed below:

Wire Class	Wire Size	Isolation Class
Power	12 Gauge	600 Volt
Class One	14 Gauge Std.	600 Volt
Class Two	18 Gauge Std.	300 Volt
Class Three	18 Gauge Std.	300 Volt
Communications	Per Mfr.	Per Mfr.

- Power and Class One wiring may be run in the same conduit. Class Two and Three wiring and communications wiring may be run in the same conduit.
- Where different wiring classes terminate within the same enclosure, maintain clearances and install barriers per the National Electric Code.

- Where wiring is required to be installed in conduit, EMT shall be used. Conduit shall be minimum 1/2-inch galvanized EMT. Set screw fittings are acceptable for dry interior locations. Watertight compression fittings shall be used for exterior locations and interior locations subject to moisture. Provide conduit sealoff fitting where exterior conduits enter the building or between areas of high temperature/moisture differential.
- Flexible metallic conduit (max. 3 feet) shall be used for connections to motors, actuators, controllers, and sensors mounted on vibration producing equipment. Liquid-tight flexible conduit shall be use in exterior locations and interior locations subject to moisture.
- Junction boxes shall be provided at all cable splices, equipment termination, and transitions from EMT to flexible conduit. Interior dry location J-boxes shall be galvanized pressed steel, nominal four-inch square with blank cover. Exterior and damp location JH-boxes shall be cast alloy FS boxes with threaded hubs and gasketed covers.
- Where the space above the ceiling is a supply or return air plenum, the wiring shall be plenum rated. Teflon wiring can be run without conduit above suspended ceilings. EXCEPTION: Any wire run in suspended ceilings that is used to control outside air dampers or to connect the system to the fire management system shall be in conduit.
- Fiber optic cable shall include the following sizes; 50/125, 62.5/125 or 100/140.
- Only glass fiber is acceptable, no plastic.
- Fiber optic cable shall only be installed and terminated by an experienced contractor. The BAS contractor shall submit to the Engineer the name of the intended contractor of the fiber optic cable with his submittal documents.

3 Hardware Installation

3.1 Installation Practices for Wiring

1. All controllers are to be mounted vertically and per the manufacturer's installation documentation.
2. The 120VAC power wiring to each Ethernet or Remote Site controller shall be a dedicated run, with a separate breaker. Each run will include a separate hot, neutral and ground wire. The ground wire will terminate at the breaker panel ground. This circuit will not feed any other circuit or device.
3. A true earth ground must be available in the building. Do not use a corroded or galvanized pipe, or structural steel.
4. Wires are to be attached to the building proper at regular intervals such that wiring does not droop. Wires are not to be affixed to or supported by pipes, conduit, etc.
5. Conduit in finished areas, will be concealed in ceiling cavity spaces, plenums, furred spaces and wall construction. Exception; metallic surface raceway may be used in finished areas on masonry walls. All surface raceway in finished areas must be color matched to the existing finish within the limitations of standard manufactured colors.
6. Conduit, in non-finished areas where possible, will be concealed in ceiling cavity spaces, plenums, furred spaces, and wall construction. Exposed conduit will run parallel to or at right angles to the building structure.
7. Wires are to be kept a minimum of three (3) inches from hot water, steam, or condensate piping.
8. Where sensor wires leave the conduit system, they are to be protected by a plastic insert.

9. Wire will not be allowed to run across telephone equipment areas.

3.2 Installation Practices for Field Devices

1. Well-mounted sensors will include thermal conducting compound within the well to insure good heat transfer to the sensor.
2. Actuators will be firmly mounted to give positive movement and linkage will be adjusted to give smooth continuous movement throughout 100 percent of the stroke.
3. Relay outputs will include transient suppression across all coils. Suppression devices shall limit transients to 150% of the rated coil voltage.
4. Water line mounted sensors shall be removable without shutting down the system in which they are installed.
5. For duct static pressure sensors, the high-pressure port shall be connected to a metal static pressure probe inserted into the duct pointing upstream. The low-pressure port shall be left open to the plenum area at the point that the high-pressure port is tapped into the ductwork.
6. For building static pressure sensors, the high-pressure port shall be inserted into the space via a metal tube. Pipe the low-pressure port to the outside of the building.

3.3 Enclosures

1. For all I/O requiring field interface devices, these devices where practical will be mounted in a field interface panel (FIP). The Contractor shall provide an enclosure which protects the device(s) from dust, moisture, conceals integral wiring and moving parts.
2. FIPs shall contain power supplies for sensors, interface relays and contactors, and safety circuits.
3. The FIP enclosure shall be of steel construction with baked enamel finish, NEMA 1 rated with a hinged door and keyed lock. The enclosure will be sized for twenty percent spare mounting space. All locks will be keyed identically.
4. All wiring to and from the FIP will be to screw type terminals. Analog or communications wiring may use the FIP as a raceway without terminating. The use of wire nuts within the FIP is prohibited.
5. All outside mounted enclosures shall meet the NEMA-4 rating.
6. The wiring within all enclosures shall be run in plastic track. Wiring within controllers shall be wrapped and secured.

3.4 Identification

1. Identify all control wires with labeling tape or sleeves using either words, letters, or numbers that can be exactly cross-referenced with as-built drawings.
2. All field enclosures, other than controllers, shall be identified with a bakelite nameplate. The lettering shall be in white against a black or blue background.
3. Junction box covers will be marked to indicate that they are a part of the BAS system.
4. All I/O field devices (except space sensors) that are not mounted within FIP's shall be identified with name plates.
5. All I/O field devices inside FIP's shall be labeled.

3.5 Existing Controls.

Existing controls which are to be reused must each be tested and calibrated for proper operation.

Existing controls which are to be reused and are found to be defective requiring replacement, will be noted to the Owner. The Owner will be responsible for all material and labor costs associated with their repair.

3.6 Control System Switch-over

1. Demolition of the existing control system will occur after the new temperature control system is in place including new sensors and new field interface devices.
2. Switch-over from the existing control system to the new system will be fully coordinated with the Owner. A representative of the Owner will be on site during switch-over.
3. The Contractor shall minimize control system downtime during switch-over. Sufficient installation mechanics will be on site so that the entire switch-over can be accomplished in a reasonable time frame.

3.7 Location

1. The location of sensors is per mechanical and architectural drawings.
2. Space humidity or temperature sensors will be mounted away from machinery generating heat, direct light and diffuser air streams.
3. Outdoor air sensors will be mounted on the north building face directly in the outside air. Install these sensors such that the effects of heat radiated from the building or sunlight is minimized.
4. Field enclosures shall be located immediately adjacent to the controller panel(s) to which it is being interfaced.

4 Software Installation

4.1 General.

The Contractor shall provide all labor necessary to install, initialize, start-up and debug all system software as described in this section. This includes any operating system software or other third-party software necessary for successful operation of the system.

4.2 Database Configuration.

The Contractor will provide all labor to configure those portions of the database that are required by the points list and sequence of operation.

4.3 Color Graphic Displays.

Unless otherwise directed by the owner, the Contractor will provide color graphic displays as depicted in the mechanical drawings for each system and floor plan. For each system or floor plan, the display shall contain the associated points identified in the point list and allow for setpoint changes as required by the owner.

4.4 Reports.

The Contractor will configure a minimum of 6 reports for the owner as listed below:

1. Central Plant Status Report
2. Air Handler Status Report
3. VAV Status Report

4. Energy Consumption Report
5. Space Temperature Report
6. Specialty Equipment Status Report

4.5 Documentation

As built software documentation will include the following:

1. Descriptive point lists
2. Application program listing
3. Application programs with comments.
4. Printouts of all reports.
5. Alarm list.
6. Printouts of all graphics

5 Commissioning and System Startup

5.1 Point to Point Checkout.

Each I/O device (both field mounted as well as those located in FIPs) shall be inspected and verified for proper installation and functionality. A checkout sheet itemizing each device shall be filled out, dated and approved by the Project Manager for submission to the owner or owner's representative.

5.2 Controller and Workstation Checkout.

A field checkout of all controllers and front-end equipment (computers, printers, modems, etc.) shall be conducted to verify proper operation of both hardware and software. A checkout sheet itemizing each device and a description of the associated tests shall be prepared and submitted to the owner or owner's representative by the completion of the project.

5.3 System Acceptance Testing

1. All application software will be verified and compared against the sequences of operation. Control loops will be exercised by inducing a setpoint shift of at least 10% and observing whether the system successfully returns the process variable to setpoint. Record all test results and attach to the Test Results Sheet.
2. Test each alarm in the system and validate that the system generates the appropriate alarm message, that the message appears at all prescribed destinations (workstations or printers), and that any other related actions occur as defined (i.e. graphic panels are invoked, reports are generated, etc.). Submit a Test Results Sheet to the owner.
3. Perform an operational test of each unique graphic display and report to verify that the item exists, that the appearance and content are correct, and that any special features work as intended. Submit a Test Results Sheet to the owner.
4. Perform an operational test of each third-party interface that has been included as part of the automation system. Verify that all points are properly polled, that alarms have been configured, and that any associated graphics and reports have been completed. If the interface involves a file transfer over Ethernet, test any logic that controls the transmission of the file, and verify the content of the specified information.

END OF SECTION 255000

SECTION 260500 – COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

GENERAL

1.01 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Under this contract, the Contractor shall, in general, furnish all necessary materials, labor and equipment and perform all electrical work as specified in Division 26, as shown on the drawings and as directed by the Engineer for Saunders HS HVAC Upgrades with the following:
   1. Demolishing existing motor starters and associated conduit and wiring.
   2. Modifying existing panelboards and providing a new panelboard.
   3. Installing new VFDs furnished by others.
   4. Furnishing and installing a heat tracing and electrical space heating equipment.
   5. Furnishing and installing conduit and wiring to equipment furnished and installed by others, as indicated in the drawings.
   6. Providing electrical rough-in for modifications to the existing Fire Alarm System.
   7. Providing all grounding and bonding in accordance with all applicable codes.
   8. All other miscellaneous electrical work necessary for a complete operating system in accordance with the design drawings, specifications and Engineering recommendations.

B. Provide the Underwriter Certificates for the work performed under this Contract.

C. The Contractor will be responsible for coordination of his work under this Contract with the work performed by other trades under Other Contracts:
   1. Coordination of demolition of old electrical equipment to be discarded and careful salvaging of old electrical equipment intended to be reused in the new construction shall be as specified in drawings and as directed by the Engineer.
      a. Electrical equipment intended to be salvaged for reuse in the new construction shall be initially inspected and tested to verify proper operation and sound condition.
      b. All testing and findings on the equipment intended to be salvaged for reuse shall be documented with detailed failures and shall be submitted to the Engineer.
      c. All equipment to be salvaged for reuse shall be stored by the Contractor in a clean dry location and protected from damage until installation into the new construction. The Contractor is responsible for the reused equipment to be in the same operating condition as when it was removed.

1.02 LOCATION OF WORK

A. Saunders Trades & Technical High School, a.k.a. Saunders is located at 183 Palmers Road, Yonkers, NY 10701.

1.03 MATERIALS

A. All materials and workmanship shall be of the best quality and subject to the approval of the Engineer. No deviations from the provisions of the detailed specifications, herein or shown in the plans, shall be made without written approval of the Engineer.

B. The omission of the phrase “the Contractor shall” from the detailed specifications shall not be construed as relieving the Contractor from full and complete performance of the work.

1.04 WORKMANSHIP

A. Only first-class work shall be performed, and all materials furnished in carrying out this contract shall be of quality required by the specifications and all applicable codes. Upon the completion of the contract, the entire work shall be delivered to the Owner in satisfactory working condition.

1.05 APPLICABLE CODES AND REGULATIONS

A. All work performed by the Contractor shall be in accordance with the following codes and regulations:
   1. Federal, State and Local Codes and Ordinances
   2. National Electrical Code (NEC)
   3. Local Power Authority Regulations for Electric Installations.

1.06 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS

A. Where reference is made in these specifications to the specifications of the American Society for Testing Materials (ASTM), The National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA), International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) or other societies, the portion referred to shall be read into and shall be a part of this contract and specifications. Materials, methods and equipment, not particularly specified, shall conform to the latest ASTM, NEMA or IEC specifications as they may relate to or govern the construction work.

1.07 PROTECTION OF EXISTING WORK

A. All existing structures, piping, utilities, fencing or materials stored shall be protected against damage. The Contractor shall be responsible for any damage to the existing or installed works and appurtenances during construction operations and such damage shall be corrected by replacing the items damaged to their original condition and position at no additional cost.

1.08 ACTUAL CONDITIONS AT SITES

A. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to verify the actual conditions of the site before bidding and no claim shall be allowed for extra work required to complete the contract either in connecting properly to existing facilities or under the existing conditions despite facilities or conditions being shown on the plans incorrectly or incompletely.

1.09 CLEANING UP

A. The Contractor shall keep site free from waste materials and rubbish during the progress of the work and shall make a thorough cleaning of the station, installed equipment and site when the work is completed.

1.10 CABLE TAGS

A. The Contractor shall identify all electric cable and wire in pull boxes and manholes by means of an engraved phenolic tag, indicating building or equipment served and voltage. Tags shall be color coded for the various voltages and shall be no less than 1 ¼- by 1/8-inch thick with a 5/32-inch hole. Tags shall be fastened to cable with nylon cord.

1.11 PHASING AND COLOR CODING

A. All wiring shall have insulation color coded as follows: All systems, phases and wiring shall be identified at all manholes, handholes, switchboards, motor control center, panelboards, enclosures, terminations, etc., by the following colors:

Item	208Y/120 V	480Y/277 V
Phase A	Blue	Brown
Phase B	Black	Orange
Phase C	Red	Yellow
Neutral	White	Gray
Ground	Green	Green

B. In 208Y/120 V system, the phases shall be identified by colored insulation when wiring is #10 AWG, or smaller. Wiring that is #8 AWG and larger may be black with colored tape bands nearest the termination to identify phases.

C. The building switchboards and panels shall be phased “A”, “B”, “C”, either top to bottom or left to right.

D. Transformers in all systems shall be connected such that:
1. A phase is terminated at H1 connection.
2. B phase is terminated at H2 connection.
3. C phase is terminated at H3 connection, then the
4. X1 connection shall be the A phase
5. X2 connection shall be the B phase, and
6. X3 connection shall be the C phase

E. After all terminations at any transformers, equipment, panels, enclosures, etc. are finished, they shall be proved by producing a 1.2.3 rotation on a phase sequence meter when connected A, B, and C.

1.12 CONTROL WIRE IDENTIFICATION

A. The Contractor shall identify both ends of all control wires by sequential numbering or other method approved by the Engineer. The wire numbers shall be included on wiring diagrams required under the Operators Instruction Manual Section of this Specification.

1.13 WATER AND ELECTRIC FOR CONSTRUCTION PURPOSES

A. Water for construction purposes will be furnished by the Yonkers Public Schools from existing hydrants or other available supply, without cost to the Contractor.

B. It is the Contractor's responsibility to provide his own temporary power for the duration of time when electrical power is not available due to the work performed by the Contractor.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 260500

SECTION 260511 - REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 DESCRIPTION

A. The guidelines and requirements of this section applies to all sections within Division 26.

B. Furnish and install electrical wiring, systems, equipment and accessories in accordance with the specifications and drawings. Capacities and ratings of motors, transformers, cable, switchboards, switchgear, panelboards, motor control centers, and other items and arrangements for the specified items are shown on drawings.

C. Electrical service entrance equipment (arrangements for temporary and permanent connections to the utility’s system) shall conform to the utility's requirements. Coordinate fuses, circuit breakers and relays with the utility’s system,

D. Wiring ampacities specified or shown on the drawings are based on copper conductors, with the conduit and raceways accordingly sized. Aluminum conductors are prohibited except as permitted for primary electric service.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

A. The Contract Documents are complementary; what is called for by one is as binding as if called for by all.

B. It is the Contractor’s responsibility for scheduling and coordinating the Work awarded with other contractors, subcontractors, suppliers, and other individuals or entities performing and/or furnishing any portion of this Contractor’s Work so as to provide a complete operating system.

1.03 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS

A. The following reference standards shall apply as the minimum installation requirements:
   1. National Electrical Code (NEC)
   2. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).
   3. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL)

B. Drawings and other specification sections shall govern in those instances where requirements are greater than those specified in the above standards.

1.04 TEST STANDARDS

A. All materials and equipment shall be listed, labeled or certified by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, to meet Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. standards, where test standards have been established. Equipment and materials which are not covered by UL Standards will

be accepted provided equipment and material is listed, labeled, certified or otherwise determined to meet safety requirements of a nationally recognized testing laboratory. Equipment of a class which no nationally recognized testing laboratory accepts, certifies, lists, labels, or determines to be safe, will be considered if inspected or tested in accordance with national industrial standards, such as NEMA, or ANSI. Evidence of compliance shall include certified test reports and definitive shop drawings.

B. Definitions:
   1. Listed: Equipment, materials, or services included in a list published by an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with evaluation of products or services, that maintains periodic inspection of production or listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services, and whose listing states the equipment, material, or services either meets appropriate designated standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.
   2. Labeled: Equipment or materials to which has been attached a label, symbol, or other identifying mark of an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with product evaluation, that maintains periodic inspection of production of labeled equipment or materials, and by whose labeling the manufacturer indicates compliance with appropriate standards or performance in a specified manner.
   3. Certified; equipment or product which:
      a. Has been tested and found by a nationally recognized testing laboratory to meet nationally recognized standards or to be safe for use in a specified manner.
      b. Production of equipment or product is periodically inspected by a nationally recognized testing laboratory.
      c. Bears a label, tag, or other record of certification.

1.05 QUALIFICATIONS (PRODUCTS AND SERVICES)

A. Manufacturers Qualifications: The manufacturer shall regularly and presently produce, as one of the manufacturer's principal products, the equipment and material specified for this project, and shall have manufactured the item for at least five years.

B. Product Qualification:
   1. Manufacturer's product shall have been in satisfactory operation, on three installations of similar size and type as this project, for approximately three (3) years as a minimum.
   2. The Owner reserves the right to require the Contractor to submit a list of installations where the products have been in operation before approval.

C. Service Qualifications: There shall be a permanent service organization maintained or trained by the manufacturer which will render satisfactory service to this installation within four hours of receipt of notification that service is needed. Submit name and address of service organizations for major items.

1.06 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

A. Applicable publications listed in all Sections of Division are the latest issue, unless otherwise noted.

1.07 MANUFACTURED PRODUCTS

A. Materials and equipment furnished shall be of current production by manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such items, for which replacement parts shall be available.

B. When more than one unit of the same class or type of equipment is required, such units shall be the product of a single manufacturer.

C. Equipment Assemblies and Components:
   1. Components of an assembled unit need not be products of the same manufacturer.
   2. Manufacturers of equipment assemblies, which include components made by others, shall assume complete responsibility for the final assembled unit.
   3. Components shall be compatible with each other and with the total assembly for the intended service.
   4. Constituent parts which are similar shall be the product of a single manufacturer.

D. Factory wiring shall be identified on the equipment being furnished and on all wiring diagrams.

E. When Factory Testing Is Specified:
   1. The Owner shall have the option of witnessing factory tests. The contractor shall notify the Engineer a minimum of 15 working days prior to the manufacturers making the factory tests.
   2. Four copies of certified test reports containing all test data shall be furnished to the Engineer prior to final inspection and not more than 30 days after completion of the tests.

1.08 EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS

A. Where variations from the contract requirements are requested in accordance with the General Conditions, submit details of the resulting changes to connecting work and related components. This shall include, but not be limited to additions or changes to branch circuits, circuit protective devices, conduits, wire, feeders, controls, panels and installation methods.

1.09 EQUIPMENT PROTECTION

A. Equipment and materials shall be protected during shipment and storage against physical damage, vermin, dirt, corrosive substances, fumes, moisture, cold and rain.
   1. Store equipment indoors in clean dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Equipment shall include but not be limited to switchgear, switchboards, panelboards, transformers, motor control centers, motor controllers, uninterruptible power systems, enclosures, controllers, circuit protective devices, cables, wire, light fixtures, electronic equipment, and accessories.

2. During installation, equipment shall be protected against entry of foreign matter; and be vacuum-cleaned both inside and outside before testing and operating. Compressed air shall not be used to clean equipment. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside equipment.
3. Damaged equipment, as determined by the Engineer, shall be restored to first class operating condition or be returned to the source of supply for repair or replacement.
4. Painted surfaces shall be protected with factory installed removable heavy craft paper, sheet vinyl or equal.
5. Damaged paint on equipment and materials shall be refinished with the same quality of paint and workmanship as used by the manufacturer so repaired areas are not obvious.

1.10 WORK PERFORMANCE

A. All electrical work must comply with the requirements of NFPA 70 (NEC), NFPA 70E, OSHA Part 1910 subpart S, OSHA Part 1910 subpart J, in addition to other references required by contract.

B. Job site safety and worker safety is the responsibility of the Contractor.

C. Electrical work shall be accomplished with all affected circuits or equipment de-energized. When an electrical outage cannot be accomplished in this manner for the required work, the following requirements are mandatory:
1. Electricians must use full protective equipment (i.e. certified and tested insulating material to cover exposed energized electrical components, certified and tested insulated tools, etc.) while working on energized systems in accordance with NFPA 70E.
2. Electricians must wear personal protective equipment while working on energized systems in accordance with NFPA 70E.

D. New work shall be installed and connected to existing work neatly, safely and professionally. Disturbed or damaged work shall be replaced or repaired to its prior conditions.

E. Coordinate location of equipment and conduit with other trades to minimize interferences.

1.11 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION AND REQUIREMENTS

A. Equipment location shall be as close as practical, and as permitted by applicable codes, to locations shown on the drawings.

B. Working spaces shall not be less than specified in the NEC for all voltages specified.

C. Inaccessible Equipment:
1. Where the Owner or Owner’s representative determines that the Contractor has installed equipment not conveniently accessible for operation and maintenance, the equipment shall be removed and reinstalled as directed at no additional cost to the Owner.

2. "Conveniently accessible" is defined as being capable of being reached quickly for operation, maintenance, or inspections without the use of ladders, or without climbing over or crawling under obstacles such as, but not limited to, motors, pumps, belt guards, transformers, piping, ductwork, conduit and raceways.

1.12 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of the General Conditions and Division 1.

B. The Engineer’s approval shall be obtained for all equipment and material before delivery to the job site. Delivery, storage or installation of equipment or material which has not had prior approval will not be permitted at the job site.

C. All submittals shall include adequate descriptive literature, catalog cuts, shop drawings and other data necessary for the Engineer to ascertain that the proposed equipment and materials comply with specification requirements. Catalog cuts submitted for approval shall be legible and clearly identify equipment being submitted.

D. Submittals for individual systems and equipment assemblies which consist of more than one item or component shall be made for the system or assembly as a whole. Partial submittals will not be considered for approval.
   1. Submittals shall be marked to show specification reference including the section and paragraph numbers.
   2. Submit each section separately.

E. The submittals shall include the following:
   1. Information that confirms compliance with contract requirements. Include the manufacturer's name, model or catalog numbers, catalog information, technical data sheets, shop drawings, pictures, nameplate data and test reports as required.
   2. Submittals are required for all equipment anchors and supports. Submittals shall include weights, dimensions, center of gravity, standard connections, manufacturer's recommendations and behavior problems (e.g., vibration, thermal expansion,) associated with equipment or piping so that the proposed installation can be properly reviewed
   3. Elementary and interconnection wiring diagrams for communication and signal systems, control systems and equipment assemblies. All terminal points and wiring shall be identified on wiring diagrams.
   4. Submit a Bill of Materials for all equipment that is made up of various discrete component parts; an example of such equipment is a Control Panel.
   5. Parts list which shall include those replacement parts recommended by the equipment manufacturer.

F. Manuals: Submit in accordance with requirements of the specific item of equipment:
   1. Maintenance and Operation Manuals: Submit as required for systems and equipment specified in the technical sections. Furnish our copies, bound in hardback binders, (manufacturer's standard binders) or an approved equivalent. Furnish one complete manual as specified in the technical section but in no case later than prior to

performance of systems or equipment test and furnish the remaining manuals prior to contract completion.

2. Inscribe the following identification on the cover: the words "MAINTENANCE AND OPERATION MANUAL," the name and location of the system, equipment, building, name of Contractor, and contract number. Include in the manual the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of each subcontractor installing the system or equipment and the local representatives for the system or equipment.
3. Provide a "Table of Contents" and assemble the manual to conform to the table of contents, with tab sheets placed before instructions covering the subject. The instructions shall be legible and easily read, with large sheets of drawings folded in.
4. The manuals shall include:
    a. Internal and interconnecting wiring and control diagrams with data to explain detailed operation and control of the equipment.
    b. A control sequence describing start-up, operation, and shutdown.
    c. Equipment.
    d. Installation instructions.
    e. Safety precautions for operation and maintenance.
    f. Diagrams and illustrations.
    g. Periodic maintenance and testing procedures and frequencies, including replacement parts numbers and replacement frequencies.
    h. Performance data.
    i. Pictorial "exploded" parts list with part numbers. Emphasis shall be placed on the use of special tools and instruments. The list shall indicate sources of supply, recommended spare parts, and name of servicing organization.
    j. List of factory approved or qualified permanent servicing organizations for equipment repair and periodic testing and maintenance, including addresses and factory certification qualifications.

G. Approvals will be based on complete submission of manuals together with shop drawings.

1.13 SINGULAR NUMBER

A. Where any device or part of equipment is referred to in these specifications in the singular number (e.g., "the switch"), this reference shall be deemed to apply to as many such devices as are required to complete the installation as shown on the drawings.

1.14 ACCEPTANCE CHECKS AND TESTS

A. The contractor shall furnish all instruments, materials and labor necessary for field tests.

1.15 TRAINING

A. Training shall be provided for the particular equipment or system as required in each associated specification.

B. Training schedule shall be developed and submitted by the contractor and approved by the Engineer at least 30 days prior to the planned training.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION 260511

SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper wire rated 600 V or less.
2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer's authorized service representative.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member Company of NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER WIRE

A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.

B. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Alcan Products Corporation; Alcan Cable Division.
2. American Insulated Wire Corp.; a Leviton Company.
3. General Cable Corporation.
4. Encore Wire Corporation.

5. Southwire Company.

C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.

E. Conductor Insulation:
1. Type THHW: Comply with UL 44.
2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

B. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
3. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
4. 3M; Electrical Products Division.
5. Tyco Electronics Corp.

C. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.

D. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.

1. Material: Copper.
2. Type: One hole with standard barrels.
3. Termination: Crimp.

E. Wire Connectors: Weatherproof, easy to apply, prefilled twist-on connectors

1. Material: 100% silicone-based sealant protects against moisture and corrosion. .
2. UL Listed to 486D for use in damp/wet locations.
3. UL 94V-2 flame-retardant shell rated 221 deg F

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

A. Feeders: Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

A. Concealed Feeders: Type THHW, single conductors in raceway.

B. Concealed Branch Circuits: Type THHW, single conductors in raceway.

C. VFD Motor Leads: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.

B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

C. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.

D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

E. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

B. All splices for conductors #10 AWG or less shall be made with moisture and corrosion resistant wire connectors suitable for wet locations. Wire connectors shall be UL listed to 486D and 94V-2.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.

2. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:

   a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
   b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:

      1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
      2) Calibrated torque wrench.
      3) Thermographic survey.

   c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
   d. Inspect for correct identification.
   e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
   f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
   g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
   h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.

B. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:

1. Procedures used.
2. Results that comply with requirements.
3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 260519

SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
   1. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   1. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electric

2. Harger Lightning and Grounding
3. O-Z/Gedney; a brand od Emerson Industrial Automation
4. Thomas and Betts Corporation.

2.3 CONDUCTORS

A. Insulated Conductors: Copper or tinned-copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
5. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
6. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

2.4 CONNECTORS

A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.

D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy, with two wire terminals.

E. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.

F. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.

G. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.

H. Straps: Solid copper, cast-bronze clamp. Rated for 600 A.

I. Tower Ground Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal two-piece clamp.

J. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

B. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

3.3 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.

B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:

1. Feeders and branch circuits.
2. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

B. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.

1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
2. Use exothermic welds for all below-grade connections.

C. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.

1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

E. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:

1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
2. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 1 ohm(s).
3. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.

F. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
3. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.

B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.

C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for enclosures, cabinets, and conduit racks and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
4. Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Metal Conduit:

1. Provide products by the following manufacturers:

    a. Allied Tube & Conduit Corp
    b. Wheatland Tube Co.
    c. Engineer approved equal

2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
4. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.

    a. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
    b. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch minimum.

5. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

B. Metal Fittings:

1. Provide products by the following manufacturers:

    a. Appleton Electric Co.
    b. O-Z/Gedney
    c. Engineer approved equal

2. Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
3. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
5. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.

6. Expansion Fittings: steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
7. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

2.2 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Provide products by one of the following:

1. Hoffman
2. Monosystems, Inc
3. Square-D

B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 4X unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.

1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

D. Wireway Covers: Flanged-and-gasketed type unless otherwise indicated.

E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.3 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Provide products by one of the following:
1. Hoffman
2. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions
3. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation
4. Thomas & Betts Corporation

B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be NEMA 4X stainless steel.

C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

D. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.

E. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

F. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 4X with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

G. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 4X galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: GRC, PVC coated.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC, PVC coated.
3. Connection to Vibrating Equipment Including Transformers: LFMC.
4. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 4X stainless steel.

B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: GRC, PVC coated.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC, PVC coated.
3. Connection to Vibrating Equipment Including Transformers: FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
4. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC, PVC coated.
5. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 4X stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded pvc-coated rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
3. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.

B. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

C. Do not install raceways or electrical items on any "explosion-relief" walls or rotating equipment.

D. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.

E. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

F. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

G. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

H. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.

I. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells. Field bending shall be according to NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.

J. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.

K. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.

L. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

M. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.

N. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.

O. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

P. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.

Q. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.

R. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.

S. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire.

T. Surface Raceways:

1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch radius control at bend points.
2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.

U. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

V. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
1. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

W. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground PVC-coated RMC conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:

a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
d. At all bridge expansion joints.
e. Where otherwise required by the TBTA.

3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000065 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.
4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.

5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

X. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

Y. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

Z. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.

1. Provide products be one of the following manufacturers:
   a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
   b. CALPICO, Inc.
   c. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
   d. Proco Products, Inc.
2. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.

4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

1. Provide products by the following:
   a. HOLDRITE

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.

C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:

1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:

   a. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.

2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.

D. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical

sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 260544

SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
2. Labels.
3. Bands and tubes.
4. Tapes and stencils.
5. Tags.
6. Signs.
7. Cable ties.
8. Paint for identification.
9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.

B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

C. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with ASME A13.1.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

E. Comply with NFPA 70E and Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" requirements for arc-flash warning labels.

F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces].

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
1. Legend: Indicate voltage.

B. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder, and branch-circuit conductors.

1. Color shall be factory applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG.
2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:

a. Phase A: Black.
b. Phase B: Red.
c. Phase C: Blue.

3. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:

a. Phase A: Brown.
b. Phase B: Orange.
c. Phase C: Yellow.

4. Color for Neutral: White or gray.
5. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.

C. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at More Than 600 V:

1. Black letters on an orange field.
2. Legend: "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING."

D. Warning Label Colors:

1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.

E. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES"

F. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on a white field.

2.3 LABELS

A. Self-Adhesive Labels: protected graphics, self-sticking, flexible, high performance polyester, rated indoor/outdoor,
1. Labels shall carry manufacturer certifications indicating evaluations relative to ASTM D1000 as to adhesion to steel, task, tensile strength and elongation, application temperature.
2. Labels shall be rated and certifiable by the manufacturer to show no visible effect to legibility of text or color to temperatures down to -20 degree C, humidity (95% R.H. at 37 degree C.), ultraviolet light and salt fog per ASTM B 117 with an average durability rating of eight years.
3. Labels for application to pull/junction boxes (over 600 volts) shall be 7x10 inches and marked in accordance with NFPA 70E.
4. Reflective self-adhesive tape labels identifying circuit numbers and pull box numbers on covers of pull/junction boxes shall be outdoor rated, machine printable, text and background color to match the circuit application.
5. Reflective labels identifying circuit numbers on covers of pull/junction boxes shall be outdoor rated, machine printable, one inch high black text on silver background. Reflective labels.

B. Pre-Tensioned, Wraparound Plastic Sleeves: Flexible, preprinted, color-coded, acrylic bands sized to suit diameter of the line identified thereby and arranged to stay in place by pre-tensioned gripping action when placed in position.

C. Colored Adhesive Tape: Self-adhesive, vinyl tapes not less than 3 mils think by 1 to 2 in. wide.

D. Tape Markers: Vinyl or vinyl cloth, self-adhesive, wraparound-type with preprinted numbers and letters.

E. Aluminum, Wraparound Marker Bands: Bands shall be cut from 0.014 inch thick aluminum sheet, with stamped or embossed legend. And fitted with slots or ears for permanently securing around wire or cable jacket or around groups of conductors.

F. Self-Laminating Blank Tags: Tags shall be 5 ¾ inch x 3 inch, polyester tags with eyelets and cable ties, hand-printable with one mil overlay.

G. Aluminum-Faced Card Stock Tags: Tags shall be wear resistant, 18-point minimum card stock faced on both sides with embossable aluminum sheet, 0.002 inch thick, laminated with moisture-resistant acrylic adhesive and punched for fasteners. Preprinted legends shall be suited to each application.

H. Stainless Steel Tags: Metal tags shall be stamped with legend, and punched for fasteners. Dimensions: 2 in. dia. x 0.05 in.

I. Engraved Nameplates and Identification Signs

1. Engraving stock, melamine plastic laminate, 1/16 inch minimum think for signs up 20 sq. in., 1/8" thick for larger sizes.
   a. Engraved legend: Black letters on white face
   b. Punched for mechanical fasteners
2. Baked enamel signs for interior use: Preprinted aluminum signs, punched for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size as indicated or otherwise required for application. Provide 1/4" grommets in corners for mounting.
3. Exterior, Metal-Backed, Butyrate Signs: Wear-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396 in. galvanized steel or aluminum backing, with colors, legend, and size appropriate application. Provide ¼" grommets in corners for mounting.
4. Fasteners for Plastic Laminated and Metal Signs: Self-tapping, stainless steel screws or No. 10/32 stainless steel machine screws with nuts, flat washers and lock washers.

2.4 ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. General: Except as otherwise indicated, provide manufacturer's standard products of categories and types required for each application. Follow directions specified herein. All outdoor signs shall be ultraviolet resistant weatherproof and non-fading in direct sunlight exposure. All materials rated for outdoor use shall be so rated over temperature range -10 to 105 degrees F.

B. Color-Coded Conduit Markers
   1. General: Provide Seton or approved equal standard pre-printed, flexible or semi-rigid, permanent, plastic-sheet conduit markers extending 360 degrees around conduits, designed for attachment to conduit by adhesive, adhesive lap joint of markers matching adhesive plastic tape at each end of marker or pre-tensioned snap-on.
   2. Except as otherwise indicated, provide lettering indicating voltage of conductors in conduits. Provide 8'' minimum length for 2'' and smaller conduit, 12'' length for larger conduit.

C. Color-Coded Plastic Tape
   1. General: Provide Seton or approved equal standard self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils thick by 1 ½" wide.
   2. Colors: Unless otherwise indicated or required by governing regulations, provide orange tape.

D. Cable/Conductor Identification Tags
   1. General: Tags shall be stainless steel 0.025" thickness with factory precision engraved white lettering (3/16" mm). Cable tags shall be attached with monel wire with tamper proof (meter) seals. Seals to have initials "TBTA" engraved into the die. Tags and wire shall be by Seton or approved equal.

E. Plasticized Tags
   1. General: Seton or approved equal standard pre-printed or partially pre-printed accident prevention and operational tags, of plasticized card stock with matt finish ssuitable for writing, with brass grommets and wire fasteners, and with appropriate pre-printed wording including large-size primary wording (as examples: DANGER, CAUTION, DO NOT OPERATE).

F. Self-adhesive Plastic Signs:

1. General: Provide Seton or approved equal standard, self-adhesive or pressure-sensitive, pre-printed, flexible vinyl signs for operational instructions or warnings, of sizes suitable for application areas and adequate visibility, with proper wording for each application (as examples: 208V, EXHAUST FAN).
2. Colors: Unless otherwise indicated or required by governing regulations, provide orange signs with black lettering.

G. Baked Enamel Danger Signs, Caution/Warning Signs and Notice Signs
1. General: Provide Seton or approved equal, OSHA standard “DANGER” signs, “CAUTION / WARNING” and “NOTICE” signs, of baked enamel finish on 20-gauge steel; of standard red, black and white graphics 14” x 10” size except where 10” x 7” is the largest size which can be applied where needed, and except where larger size is needed for adequate vision; with recognized standard explanation wording (as examples: HIGH VOLTAGE, KEEP AWAY, BURIED CABLE, DO NOT TOUGH SWITCH).

H. Engraved Plastic-Laminate Signs
1. General: Provide Seton or approved equal engraving stock melamine plastic laminate, complying with FS L-P-387, in sizes and thicknesses indicated, engraved with engraver’s standard letter style of sizes and wording indicated, black and white core (letter color) except where adhesive mounting is necessary because of substrate.
2. Thickness:
   a. 1/16”, for units up to 20 sq. in. or 8’’ length;
   b. 1/8” for larger units.
3. Fasteners: Self-tapping stainless steel screws, except contact-type permanent adhesive where screws cannot or should not penetrate substrate.

2.5 SIGNS

A. Safety Prevention Signs shall be fiberglass, with an average outdoor durability rating of 15 years.
1. Minimum thickness: 0.100 inches
2. Temperature rating: down to -40 degree F
3. UV, weather and salt spray-resistant
4. Protected graphics
5. Signs shall be grommeted in four corners for attachment with stainless steel self-tapping screws.

2.6 CABLE TIES

A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

B. Outdoor Rated Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and sunlight resistant, UV resistant nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
4. Color: Black.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Paint: alkyd-urethane enamel; primer as recommended by enamel manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Conduit Identification
   1. General: Where electrical conduit is exposed in spaces with exposed mechanical piping which is identified by a color coded method, apply color coded identification on electrical conduit in a manner similar to piping identification. Except as otherwise indicated, use orange as coded color for conduit.
   2. Signage location to meet the ANSI. A131 standard scheme for the identification of pipe systems.

B. Cable/Conductor Identification Tags
   1. High voltage (4.16kV): Install tags on each phase conductor (new and existing) in all manholes, pull boxes, equipment enclosures, etc.
   2. Low voltage (600V and below): Install tags on each set of conductors (Phase A, B, C, & N) in all manholes, pull boxes, equipment enclosures, etc.

C. Operational Identification and Warnings
   1. General: To ensure safe and efficient operation and maintenance of electrical systems, and electrically connected mechanical systems and general systems and equipment, including prevention of misuse of electrical facilities by unauthorized personnel, install self-adhesive plastic signs or similar equivalent identification. Where detailed instructions or explanations are needed, provide plasticized tags with clearly written messages adequate for intended purposes.
   2. All signage shall be included as part of shop drawing of equipment for review and approval.
   3. Provide operational and warning signs per manufacturers recommendations for the following items:
      a. Key interlock exchange systems.
   4. General: in addition to installation of danger signs required by governing regulations and authorities, install appropriate danger signs at locations directed by the engineer.

5. High voltage: Install warning signs on all high voltage switchgear and circuit beraker compartments, pull boxes, etc.
6. Install Warning signs on 208/120V substations on front and back of each cubicle 4'-0" above finished floor.
7. Provide as a minimum Warning signs as follows:
   a. "Warning – High Voltage – Authorized Personnel Only" on all doors into and out from 5 kV equipment areas, walk-in-substations, etc.
   b. "Warning High Voltage" on all high voltage equipment enclosures and in all applicable areas.

D. Equipment/System Identification
1. General: Install engraved plastic-laminate sign on each major unit of electrical equipment in building; including central or master unit of each electrical system including communication/signal systems, unless unit is specified with its own self-explanatory identification or signal system.

END OF SECTION 260553

SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.

D. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.

E. SPD: Surge protective device.

F. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.

   1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
   2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.

   1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
   2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
   3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
   4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
   5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
   6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
   7. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
   8. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.

9. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
2. Circuit Breakers: Two spares for each panelboard.
3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.

B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

    a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) to plus 104 deg F (plus 40 deg C).
    b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than 14 days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELBOARDS AND LOAD CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Enclosures: Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.

1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
   a. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4X.

2. Height: 84 inches (2.13 m) maximum.
3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
5. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
6. Finishes:

   a. Panels and Trim: galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
   b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel.

G. Incoming Mains:

1. Location: Bottom.
2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.

H. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.

   a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
   b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.

2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
4. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.

I. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.

4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.

J. NRTL Label: Panelboards or load centers shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.

K. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: 20 percent.

L. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.

1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

B. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 1.

2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products from one of the following:
1. Eaton
2. General Electric Company
3. Square-D

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

C. Mains: Circuit breaker.

D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

E. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products from one of the following:
1. Eaton
2. General Electric Company
3. Square-D

B. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:

a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.

2. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
3. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
4. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
5. MCCB Features and Accessories:

a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
e. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 75 percent of rated voltage or below without intentional time delay.

C. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.

1. Fuses and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Section 262813 "Fuses."
2. Fused Switch Features and Accessories:

a. Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.
b. Mechanical cover interlock with a manual interlock override, to prevent the opening of the cover when the switch is in the on position. The interlock shall prevent the switch from being turned on with the cover open. The operating handle shall have lock-off means with provisions for three padlocks.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.

B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.

C. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.

1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.

B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407.

C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.

D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Comply with NECA 1.

C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.

D. Equipment Mounting:
1. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
2. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

E. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.

F. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

G. Mount top of trim 90 inches (2286 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

H. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.

I. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 5/8 inch (16 mm) in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.

J. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.

1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.

K. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.

L. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

M. Stub four 1-inch (25 mm) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch (25 mm) empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.

N. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.

O. Mount spare fuse cabinet in accessible location.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.

C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

D. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers and low-voltage surge arrestors stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers and Paragraph 7.19.1 Surge Arrestors, Low-Voltage. Perform optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:

    a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    c. Instruments and Equipment:

        1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.

1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.
2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 20 percent.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 WORK INCLUDED

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install all wiring devices required for a complete and operating system/facility where indicated and outlined herein, as shown on the drawings and as directed by the Engineer.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

A. It is the Contractor's responsibility for scheduling and coordinating the Work awarded with other contractors, subcontractors, suppliers, and other individuals or entities performing and/or furnishing any portion of this Contractor's Work so as to provide a complete operating system.

B. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 (General Requirements) Specifications Sections, apply to this Section including the following related work:
   1. Section 26 05 00 – Common Work Results for Electrical
   2. Section 26 05 19 – Low Voltage Conductors and Cables
   3. Section 26 05 26 – Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
   4. Section 26 05 34 – Conduits and Fittings for Electrical Systems
   5. Section 26 05 35 – Junction, Pull and Outlet Boxes

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Use adequate number of skilled workers who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and are familiar with the Specified requirements and methods needed for proper performance of Work in this Section.

B. Reference Standards
   1. National Electric Code (NEC), latest edition
   2. New York State Building Code
   3. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL):
      a. UL No. 20, General Use Snap Switches
      b. UL No. 498, Attachment Plugs And Receptacles
      c. UL No. 943, Ground Fault Circuit Interrupters

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Submit for approval copies of manufacturer's technical information for all wiring devices proposed for use.

B. Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

1.05 PRODUCT HANDLING

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01 60 00 – Product Requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL

A. Provide only materials that are new and of the type and quality specified.

B. Where Underwriters have established standards for such materials, provide only materials bearing the UL or ETL label.

2.02 SWITCHES

A. Line voltage switches shall be specification grade with quiet mechanism, 20 A, rated at 120 V or 277 VAC as follows:
   1. Three-way toggle switches shall be Cat.HBL1223 as manufactured by Hubbell or approved equal.
   2. Single pole toggle switches shall be Cat.HBL1222 as manufactured by Hubbell or approved equal.

B. Low voltage switches shall be single-pole, double throw with center position rest, fitting conventional toggle switch opening; rated 3A at 24 VAC/VDC as follows:
   1. Standard momentary toggle switch, The Watt Stopper Cat. # LVS-1 or equal.
   2. Key operated toggle switch, The Watt Stopper Cat. # LVS-1K or equal. Key shall be supplied with the switch.

2.03 RECEPTACLES

A. Receptacles shall be provided with wrap-around bridge.
   1. Duplex receptacle 20 ampere, 125 volt, 3-wire, grounding, Hubbell Cat. #CR5362 or equal.
   2. Quad (4-PLEX) receptacle 20 ampere, 125 volt, 3-wire, grounding, Hubbell Cat. #HBL415 or equal.
   3. GFCI duplex receptacle 20 A, 120 VAC; 2-pole 3 wire grounding, Hubbell Cat. #GFR53521IA or equal.
   4. Faceless GFCI - 20 A, 120 VAC feed-through quad protection; Hubbell Cat. #GFR53501I or equal.

2.04 DEVICE PLATES

A. Provide brushed stainless steel wall plates for each switch, receptacle, signal and special purpose outlet. Plates to meet Federal Specification W-P455a.

2.05 BOXES

A. Provide for each wall outlet indicated on the drawings, standard galvanized steel outlet boxes. Boxes and covers shall be not less than 1/16 inches thick and in every instance of such form and dimensions to be adapted to its specific use and location, type of fixture to be used and number, size and arrangement of conduits connecting therein. Outlet boxes shall be firmly anchored in place. Junction boxes shall be provided with blank covers.

B. The final location of all wall outlets shall be as directed by the Engineer. All boxes for local switches at doors shall be located at the strike side of the door as finally hung or as indicated on the drawings.

C. Outlet boxes for receptacles, etc. shall not be less than 4 inches square by 1 ½ inches deep and fitted with appropriate single or gang device covers for flush mounting as herein before specified.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. All electrical devices, outlets and wall switches shall be mounted at locations as shown on the drawings in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions and all applicable code regulations and as directed by the engineer.

B. Where two or more switches and receptacles are located at the same point, they shall be gang-mounted with gang plates.

C. Install wiring devices in outlet or device boxes with device cover plates.

D. Install receptacles with ground lug on top.

E. Install receptacles 18 inches above floor unless noted otherwise.

END OF SECTION 262726

SECTION 262815 - SAFETY SWITCHES AND FUSES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 WORK INCLUDED

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install all safety switches and fuses in accordance with the specifications, where and when indicated on the Contract Drawings, as required by Codes and a directed by the Engineer.

1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Use adequate number of skilled workers who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and are familiar with the Specified requirements and methods needed for proper performance of Work in this Section.

B. All equipment shall be manufactured and tested in accordance with the latest applicable standards of::
   1. National Electric Code (NEC)
   2. New York State Building Code
   3. PSE&G Standards, Specifications and Requirements for Electric Installations.
   4. Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL)

C. Equipment shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.

1.03 RELATED WORK

A. It is the Contractor’s responsibility for scheduling and coordinating the Work awarded with other contractors, subcontractors, suppliers, and other individuals or entities performing and/or furnishing any portion of this Contractor’s Work so as to provide a complete operating system.

B. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 (General Requirements) Specifications Sections, apply to this Section including the following related work:
   1. Section 26 05 11 – Requirements for Electrical Installations.
   2. Section 26 05 19 – Low Voltage Conductors and Cables
   3. Section 26 05 34 – Conduits and Fittings for Electrical Systems
   4. Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

B. The following information shall be submitted to the Engineer:
   1. Nameplate schedule
   2. Conduit entry / exit locations

3. Unit ratings & wiring diagrams
4. Cable terminal sizes
5. Product data sheets

1.05 PRODUCT HANDLING

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Section 01 60 00 – Product Requirements.

B. Equipment shall be handled and stored in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. One (1) copy of these instructions shall be included with the equipment at time of shipment.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 DISCONNECT SWITCHES AND FUSES

A. Safety disconnect switches shall be heavy-duty, 600 Volt, (250 Volt for 120-208/240 Volt systems) metal enclosed, externally operated switches, with a quick-make, quick-break operating mechanism, and interlocked cover with override for authorized persons.

B. Switches installed indoors shall be in NEMA 1 enclosures. Switches installed outdoors shall be in NEMA 3R enclosures.

C. Where fuses are indicated, provide Class R rejection type fuse clips in the switches.

D. Fuses shall be rated 600 or 250 Volts as required by switch voltage. Fuses in local safety switches shall be UL Class RK-5.

E. Safety disconnect switches shall be manufactured by Square-D or approved equal.

F. Fuses shall be manufactured by Bussmann or approved equal.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. All equipment shall be installed in strict accordance with manufacturer's written installation requirements.

B. Install equipment according to approved submittal data.

C. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations.

3.02 DISCONNECT SWITCH INSTALLATION

A. Install all safety disconnect switches in accordance with the manufacturer's and NEC requirements.

B. Where fused switches are specified, provide a complete set of fuses in the switch as required by load equipment manufacturers and by the NEC.

C. All openings in disconnect switches shall be plugged or protected by appropriate UL listed barriers. Where switches are installed outdoors, the installation shall be weather tight in accordance with applicable codes.

END OF SECTION 262815

SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. The Contractor shall furnish and install all enclosed switches, including safety switches and enclosed circuit breakers, in accordance with the Specifications, as indicated on the Contract Drawings, as required by all applicable Codes and as directed by the Engineer.

B. This section also includes the installation of fusible switches, non-fusible switches, molded-case circuit breakers, molded case switches and shunt trip switches and breakers.

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

A. It is the Contractor's responsibility for scheduling and coordinating the Work awarded with other contractors, subcontractors, suppliers, and other individuals or entities performing and/or furnishing any portion of this Contractor's Work so as to provide a complete operating system.

B. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 (General Requirements) Specifications Sections, apply to this Section including the following related work:
1. Section 26 05 00 – Common Work Results for Electrical
2. Section 26 05 19 – Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
3. Section 26 05 34 – Conduits and Fittings for Electrical Systems
4. Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Use adequate number of skilled workers who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and are familiar with the Specified requirements and methods needed for proper performance of Work in this Section.

B. Referenced Standards:
1. National Electric Code (NEC), latest edition
2. New York State Building Code
3. PSE&G Standards, Specifications and Requirements for Electric Installations.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, over-current protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single source from single manufacturer.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
   1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA Standard 250, Type 1.
   2. Current and voltage ratings.
   3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).

B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.05 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:
   1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
   2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
   3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
   4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 600-Vac, 1200 A and smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:
   1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
   2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
   3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
   4. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.02 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 600-Vac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:
1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.03 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:
1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. General Requirements: Comply with UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.

C. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

D. Features and Accessories:
1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
2. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.

2.04 ENCLOSURES

A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected unless otherwise directed.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install fuses in fusible devices.

C. Comply with NECA 1, Standard Practices For Good Workmanship In Electrical Construction.

D. Furnish and install non-fused safety disconnect switches at all mechanical equipment as required by code, whether shown on drawings or not.

3.03 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 53 – Identification for Electrical Systems.
   1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
   2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.
      a. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

3.04 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 262816

SECTION 283111 - DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

B. The work covered by this section is to be coordinated with related work as specified elsewhere in the specifications. Requirements of the following sections apply:

1. 26.00 Electrical

2. 26.05 Common Work Results for Electrical

3. 23.00 Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC)

4. 25.00 Integrated Automation

C. The system and all associated operations shall be in accordance with the following:

1. Requirements of the following Model Building Code: NFPA 5000, 2015 Edition

2. Requirements of the following Model Fire Code: NFPA 1, 2018 Edition

3. Requirements of the following Model Mechanical Code: IMC, 2020 Edition

4. NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm Code, 2016 Edition

5. NFPA 70, National Electrical Code, 2014 Edition

6. NFPA 101, Life Safety Code, 2018 Edition

7. NFPA 90A, Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems, 2018 Edition

8. Local Jurisdictional Adopted Codes and Standards

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section covers fire alarm systems, including initiating devices, notification appliances, controls, and supervisory devices.

B. Work covered by this section includes the furnishing of labor, equipment, and materials for installation of the fire alarm system as indicated on the drawings and specifications.

C. The Fire Alarm System shall consist of all necessary hardware equipment and software programming to perform the following functions:

1. Fire alarm system detection and notification operations.

2. Control and monitoring of smoke control equipment, and other equipment as indicated in the drawings and specifications.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ADA: Americans with Disabilities Act

B. AHJ: Authority Having Jurisdiction

C. ANSI: American National Standards Institute

D. ASME: American Society of Mechanical Engineers

E. FACU: Fire Alarm Control Unit

F. FM: Factory Mutual

G. IBC: International Building Code

H. ICC: International Code Council

I. IDC: Initiating Device Circuit

J. IEEE: Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers

K. IFC: International Fire Code

L. IMC: International Mechanical Code

M. IRI: Industrial Risk Insurers

N. LED: Light-emitting diode.

O. NAC: Notification Appliance Circuit

P. NFPA: National Fire Protection Association

Q. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.

R. RAC: Releasing Appliance Circuit

S. SLC: Signaling Line Circuit

T. UL: Underwriters Laboratories

U. ULC: Underwriters Laboratories, Canada

1.4 SCOPE OF WORK

A. The Contractor shall provide all modifications to the existing Fire Alarm System required to integrate all HVAC upgrades within the scope of the project into the system.

B. The Contractor shall provide all required input and output devices compatible with the existing FACP, for the new and modified existing HVAC equipment, including but not limited to, duct smoke detectors with sampling tubes; heat detectors; individual addressable I/O modules (IAM), etc.

C. The Contractor shall provide all required software updates for the existing Fire Alarm System and verify that the existing interface with the Building Management System (BMS) is operational.

1.5 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. General: Provide a complete, non-coded addressable, microprocessor-based fire alarm system with initiating devices, notification appliances, and monitoring and control devices as indicated on the drawings and as specified herein.

B. Power Requirements

1. The control unit shall receive AC power via a dedicated fused disconnect circuit.

2. The system shall be provided with sufficient battery capacity to operate the entire system upon loss of normal AC power in a normal supervisory mode for a period of 24 hours with 5 minutes of alarm operation at the end of this period. The system shall automatically transfer to battery standby upon power failure. All battery charging and recharging operations shall be automatic.

3. All circuits requiring system-operating power shall be 24 VDC nominal voltage and shall be individually fused at the control unit.

4. The incoming power to the system shall be supervised so that any power failure will be indicated at the control unit. A green "power on" LED shall be displayed continuously at the user interface while incoming power is present.

5. The system batteries shall be supervised so that a low battery or a depleted battery condition, or disconnection of the battery shall be indicated at the control unit and displayed for the specific fault type.

6. The system shall support NAC Lockout feature to prevent subsequent activation of Notification Appliance Circuits after a Depleted Battery condition occurs in order to make use of battery reserve for front panel annunciation and control.

7. The system shall support 100% of addressable initiating devices in alarm or operated at the same time, under both primary (AC) and secondary (battery) power conditions.

8. Loss of primary power shall sound a trouble signal at the FACU. FACU shall indicate when the system is operating on an alternate power supply.

C. Software: The fire alarm system shall allow for loading and editing instructions and operating sequences as necessary.

1. The system shall be capable of on-site programming to accommodate system expansion and facilitate changes in operation.

2. All software operations shall be stored in a non-volatile programmable memory within the fire alarm control unit. Loss of primary and secondary power shall not erase the instructions stored in memory.

3. Panels shall be capable of full system operation during new site specific configuration download, master exec downloads, and slave exec downloads.

4. Remote panel site-specific software and executive firmware downloads shall be capable of being performed over proprietary fire alarm network communications

5. Panels shall automatically store all program changes to the panel's non-volatile memory each time a new program is downloaded. Panels shall be capable of storing the active site-specific configuration program and no less than 9 previous revisions in reserve. A compare utility program shall also be available to authorized users to compare any two of the saved programs. The compare utility shall provide a deviation report highlighting the changes between the two compared programs.

6. Panels shall provide electronic file storage with a means to retrieve a record copy of the site-specific software and up to 9 previous revisions. Sufficient file storage shall be provided for other related system documentation such as record drawings, record of completion, owner's manuals, testing and maintenance records, etc.

7. The media used to store the record copy of site-specific software and other related system documentation shall be electrically supervised. If the media is removed a trouble shall be reported on the fire alarm control unit.

D. History Logs: The system shall provide a means to recall alarms and trouble conditions in chronological order for the purpose of recreating an event history. A separate alarm and trouble log shall be provided.

E. Recording of Events: The system shall be capable of recording all alarm, supervisory, and trouble events by means of system printer. The printout shall include the type of signal (alarm, supervisory, or trouble) the device identification, date and time of the occurrence. The printout shall differentiate alarm signals from all other printed indications.

F. Wiring/Signal Transmission:

1. Transmission shall be hard-wired using separate individual circuits for each zone

of alarm operation, as required or addressable signal transmission, dedicated to fire alarm service only.

2. System connections for initiating device circuits shall be Class A, , signaling line circuits shall be Class B, and notification appliance circuits shall be Class A.

3. Circuit Supervision: Circuit faults shall be indicated by a trouble signal at the FACU. Provide a distinctive indicating audible tone and alphanumeric annunciation.

G. Required Functions: The following are required system functions and operating features:

1. Priority of Signals: Fire alarm events have highest priority. Subsequent alarm events are queued in the order received and do not affect existing alarm conditions. Priority Two, Supervisory and Trouble events have second, third-, and fourth-level priority, respectively. Signals of a higher-level priority take precedence over signals of lower priority even though the lower-priority condition occurred first. Annunciate all events regardless of priority or order received.

2. Noninterfering: An event on one zone does not prevent the receipt of signals from any other zone. All zones are manually resettable from the FACU after the initiating device or devices are restored to normal. The activation of an addressable device does not prevent the receipt of signals from subsequent addressable device activations.

3. Transmission to an approved Supervising Station: Automatically route alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to an approved supervising station service provider, under another contract.

4. Annunciation: Operation of alarm and supervisory initiating devices shall be annunciated at the FACU and the remote annunciator, indicating the type of device, the operational state of the device (i.e. alarm, trouble or supervisory) and shall display the custom label associated with the device.

5. Selective Alarm: A system alarm shall include:

a) Indication of alarm condition at the FACU and the annunciator(s).
b) Identification of the device /zone that is the source of the alarm at the FACU and the annunciator(s).
c) Operation of audible and visible notification appliances until silenced at FACU.
d) Closing doors normally held open by magnetic door holders.
e) Unlocking designated doors.
f) Shutting down supply and return fans serving zone where alarm is initiated.
g) Closing smoke dampers on system serving zone where alarm is initiated.
h) Initiation of smoke control sequence.
i) Transmission of signal to the supervising station.
j) Initiation of elevator Phase I functions (recall, shunt trip, illumination of

indicator in cab, etc.) in accordance with ANSI/ASME A17.1 / CSA B44, Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, when specified detectors or sensors are activated, as appropriate.

6. Supervisory Operations: Upon activation of a supervisory device such as a fire pump power failure, and tamper switch, the system shall operate as follows:

   a) Activate the system supervisory service audible signal and illuminate the LED at the control unit and the remote annunciator.
   b) Pressing the Supervisory Acknowledge Key will silence the supervisory audible signal while maintaining the Supervisory LED "on" indicating off-normal condition.
   c) Record the event in the FACU historical log.
   d) Transmission of supervisory signal to the supervising station.
   e) Restoring the condition shall cause the Supervisory LED to clear and restore the system to normal.

7. Alarm Silencing: If the "Alarm Silence" button is pressed, all audible and visible alarm signals shall cease operation.

8. Priority Two Operations: Upon activation of a priority two condition, the system shall operate as follows:

   a) Activate the system priority two audible signal and illuminate the LED at the control unit and the remote annunciator.
   b) Pressing the Priority 2 Acknowledge Key will silence the audible signal while maintaining the Priority 2 LED "on" indicating off-normal condition.
   c) Record the event in the FACU historical log.
   d) Transmission of priority two signal to the supervising station.
   e) Restoring the condition shall cause the Priority 2 LED to clear and restore the system to normal.

9. System Reset

   a) The "System Reset" button shall be used to return the system to its normal state. Display messages shall provide operator assurance of the sequential steps ("IN PROGRESS", "RESET COMPLETED") as they occur. The system shall verify all circuits or devices are restored prior to resetting the system to avoid the potential for re-alarming the system. The display message shall indicate "ALARM PRESENT, SYSTEM RESET ABORTED."
   b) Should an alarm condition continue, the system will remain in an alarmed state.

10. A manual evacuation (drill) switch shall be provided to operate the notification appliances without causing other control circuits to be activated.

11. WALKTEST: The system shall have the capacity of 8 programmable passcode protected one person testing groups, such that only a portion of the system need be disabled during testing. The actuation of the "enable one person test" program at the control unit shall activate the "One Person Testing" mode of the system as follows:

    a) The city circuit connection and any suppression release circuits shall be

bypassed for the testing group.
b) Control relay functions associated with one of the 8 testing groups shall be bypassed.
c) The control unit shall indicate a trouble condition.
d) The alarm activation of any initiating device in the testing group shall cause the audible notification appliances assigned only to that group to sound a code to identify the device or zone.
e) The unit shall automatically reset itself after signaling is complete.
f) Any opening of an initiating device or notification appliance circuit wiring shall cause the audible signals to sound for 4 seconds indicating the trouble condition.
(a) Any device which is activated during the time that Walktest is enabled but is not within the group under test shall immediately cause a normal alarm sequence to commence as if the system was not under any testing sequence.

12. Install Mode: The system shall provide the capability to group all non-commissioned points and devices into a single "Install Mode" trouble condition allowing an operator to clearly identify event activations from commissioned points and devices in occupied areas.

a) It shall be possible to individually remove points from Install Mode as required for phased system commissioning.
b) It shall be possible to retrieve an Install Mode report listing that includes a list of all points assigned to the Install Mode. Panels not having an install mode shall be reprogrammed to remove any non-commissioned points and devices.

13. Service Gateway: A Service Gateway software application shall be provided that allows an authorized service person to remotely query panel status during testing, commissioning, and service without the need to return to the panel using standard email or instant messaging tools. For systems without a service gateway application the service provider shall provide a minimum of two technicians for any system testing or commissioning.

H. Integrated Automation

1. Security Integration

a) The FA System shall provide the means to be integrated directly to a Software House C•Cure 9000 Security Management System (SMS) or a Kantech Corporate and Global EntraPass system via a software interface for the purpose of communicating fire alarm events directly to the security system.
b) Communication between the FA System and security system shall be accomplished using Computer Port Protocol (CPP).
(a) The FA and the security system shall be connected via a local or network serial port server based RS-232 serial port connection.
c) The CPP shall consist of a bi-directional serial protocol capable of accessing most of the Fire Alarm Control Unit (FACU) diagnostic features.
d) The interface shall provide the means to communicate the following information to the security system:
(a) Device/Point status changes (e.g., Fire, Trouble, Disabled)

(b) Panel event status (e.g. Number of Unacknowledged Fire Alarms, Card Failure Troubles, etc.)
(c) Panel health status (e.g., AC power, battery status)

e) Interface software shall include a data acquisition function that provides the following:
(a) Establishes and maintains a supervised serial link
(b) Extraction of the point database from the FACU
(c) Merges the FACU database into the C•Cure SMS database

f) The software interface shall not allow system control functionality from the security system to the FA System.

g) The installation, programming and maintenance of the FA/security integration software interface shall be conducted by factory trained certified technicians.

2. Building Automation and Control Network (BACnet) Integration

a) The fire alarm control unit shall be capable of providing a one-way communications interface between the fire alarm control unit and an industry-standard Building Automation and Control Network (BACnet) using ASHRAE® BACnet® IP (internet protocol) compliant with ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135.

b) The BACnet communications module shall be agency listed to UL Standard 864.

c) The fire alarm control unit shall be capable of communicating status changes of up to 1500 devices and system points to the building automation system. This shall include the capability to discretely identify and report the status of each notification appliance and initiating device.

d) Status of addressable initiating and notification devices shall be accomplished via multi-state BACnet objects, and each point shall include detailed custom descriptions matching those provided in the fire alarm control panel site specific programming.

e) Programming of the BACnet interface shall be accomplished using the current version of the manufacturer's approved fire alarm panel programming software.

f) MS/TP Master and MS/TP Slave data link layer options communicating at baud rates up to 76,800 bps shall be supported.

g) The interface shall be capable of supporting ANSI X3.4, ISO 10656 (ICS-4), ISO 10656 (UCS-2), ISO 8859-1, or IBM/Microsoft DBCS character sets.

h) A standard RJ-45 Ethernet connection to the Building Automation System Ethernet network shall be provided at the fire alarm control unit as part of the contract.

i) Systems using relay interfaces shall not be accepted.

3. Refer to section: 25.00 Integrated Automation

I. Analog Smoke Sensors:

1. Monitoring: FACU shall individually monitor sensors for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition, and shall individually adjust for sensitivity. The control unit shall determine the condition of each sensor by comparing the sensor value to the stored values.

2. Environmental Compensation: The FACU shall maintain a moving average of the sensor's smoke chamber value to automatically compensate for dust, dirt, and other conditions that could affect detection operations.

3. Programmable Sensitivity: Photoelectric Smoke Sensors shall have 7 selectable sensitivity levels ranging from 0.2% to 3.7%, programmed and monitored from the FACU.

4. Sensitivity Testing Reports: The FACU shall provide sensor reports that meet NFPA 72 calibrated test method requirements.

   a) Reports shall be capable of being printed for annual recording and logging of the calibration maintenance schedule.
   b) Where required, reports shall be accessible remotely through:
      (a) A Fire Panel Internet Interface using Ethernet and TCP/IP communications protocol compatible with IEEE Standard 802.3. The Fire Panel Internet Interface shall be capable of automatically scheduling email reports to individual user accounts on a weekly, bi-weekly, or monthly schedule

5. The FACU shall automatically indicate when an individual sensor needs cleaning. The system shall provide a means to automatically indicate when a sensor requires cleaning. When a sensor's average value reaches a predetermined value, (3) progressive levels of reporting are provided. The first level shall indicate if a sensor is close to a trouble reporting condition and will be indicated on the FACU as "ALMOST DIRTY." This condition provides a means to alert maintenance staff of a sensor approaching dirty without creating a trouble in the system. If this indicator is ignored and the second level is reached, a "DIRTY SENSOR" condition shall be indicated at the FACU and subsequently a system trouble is reported to the Supervising Station. The sensor base LED shall glow steady giving a visible indication at the sensor location. The "DIRTY SENSOR" condition shall not affect the sensitivity level required to alarm the sensor. If a "DIRTY SENSOR" is left unattended, and its average value increases to a third predetermined value, an "EXCESSIVELY DIRTY SENSOR" trouble condition shall be indicated at the control unit.

6. The FACU shall continuously perform an automatic self-test on each sensor that will check sensor electronics and ensure the accuracy of the values being transmitted. Any sensor that fails this test shall indicate a "SELF TEST ABNORMAL" trouble condition.

7. Multi-Sensors shall combine photoelectric smoke sensing and heat sensing technologies. An alarm shall be determined by either smoke detection, with selectable sensitivity from 0.2 to 3.7 %/ft obscuration; or heat detection, selectable as fixed temperature or fixed with selectable rate-of-rise; or based on an analysis of the combination of smoke and heat activity.

8. Programmable bases. It shall be possible to program relay and sounder bases to operate independently of their associated sensor.

9. Magnet test activation of smoke sensors shall be distinguished by its label and

history log entry as being activated by a magnet.

J. Fire Suppression Monitoring:

1. Water flow: Activation of a water flow switch shall initiate general alarm operations.

2. Sprinkler valve tamper switch: The activation of any valve tamper switch shall activate system supervisory operations.

3. Water flow switch and sprinkler valve tamper switch shall be capable of existing on the same initiating zone. Activation of either device shall distinctly report which device has been activated on the initiating zone.

K. Audible Alarm Notification: By horns in areas as indicated on drawings.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit the following according to Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

1. Product data sheets for system components highlighted to indicate the specific products, features, or functions required to meet this specification. Alternate or as-equal products submitted under this contract must provide a detailed line-by-line comparison of how the submitted product meets, exceeds, or does not comply with this specification.

2. Wiring diagrams from manufacturer.

3. Shop drawings showing system details including location of FACU, all devices, circuiting and details of graphic annunciator.

4. System power and battery charts with performance graphs and voltage drop calculations to assure that the system will operate in accordance with the prescribed backup time periods and under all voltage conditions per UL and NFPA standards.

5. System operation description including method of operation and supervision of each type of circuit and sequence of operations for all manually and automatically initiated system inputs and outputs. A list of all input and output points in the system shall be provided with a label indicating location or use of IDC, SLC, NAC, relay, sensor, and auxiliary control circuits.

6. Operating instructions for FACU.

7. Operation and maintenance data for inclusion in Operating and Maintenance Manual. Include data for each type product, including all features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual. Provide the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of service organizations.

8. Product certification signed by a certified representative of the manufacturer of the fire alarm system components certifying that their products comply with indicated requirements.

9. Record of field tests of system.

B. Submission to Authority Having Jurisdiction: In addition to routine submission of the above material, make an identical submission to the authority having jurisdiction. Include copies of shop drawings as required to depict component locations to facilitate review. Upon receipt of comments from the Authority, make resubmissions, if required, to make clarifications or revisions to obtain approval.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A factory authorized installer is to perform the work of this section.

B. Each and every item of the Fire Alarm System shall be listed under the appropriate category by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory and shall bear the respective "NRTL" label.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Fire-Alarm Service: Do not interrupt fire-alarm service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary guard service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of fire-alarm service.

2. Do not proceed with interruption of fire-alarm service without Owner's written permission.

1.9 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

A. Existing Fire-Alarm Equipment: Maintain existing equipment fully operational until new equipment has been tested and accepted. As new equipment is installed, label it "NOT IN SERVICE" until it is accepted. Remove labels from new equipment when put into service and label existing fire-alarm equipment "NOT IN SERVICE" until removed from the building.

B. Equipment Removal: After acceptance of new fire-alarm system, remove existing disconnected fire-alarm equipment and wiring.

1.10 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Comply with UL 864.

B. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support

for two years.

C. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.

1. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

1.11 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Warranty Maintenance Service: Provide maintenance of fire alarm systems and equipment for a period of 12 months, using factory-authorized service representatives

B. Basic Services: Routine maintenance visits on an “as needed” basis at times scheduled with the Owner. Respond to service calls within 24 hours of notification of system trouble either by customer visit or other customer contact as necessary. Adjust and replace defective parts and components with original manufacturer's replacement parts, components, and supplies.

C. Additional Services: Perform services within the above 12-month period not classified as routine maintenance or as warranty work when authorized in writing. Compensation for additional services must be agreed upon in writing prior to performing services.

D. Maintenance Service Contract: No later than 60 days prior to the expiration of the warranty maintenance services, deliver to the Owner a proposal to provide contract maintenance and repair services for an additional one-year term. As an option with this proposal, deliver to the Owner a proposal to provide scheduled inspection and testing services for a one-year term. Owner will be under no obligation to accept maintenance service contract proposal or inspection and testing proposal.

1.12 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. General: Furnish extra materials, packaged with protective covering for storage, and identified with labels clearly describing contents as follows:

1. Break Rods for Manual Stations: Furnish quantity equal to 15 percent of the number of manual stations installed; minimum of 6 rods.

2. Notification Appliances: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of each type and number of units installed, but not less than one of each type.

3. Smoke Detectors or Sensors, Fire Detectors, and Flame Detectors: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of each type and number of units installed but not less than one of each type.

4. Detector or Sensor Bases: Furnish quantity equal to 2 percent of each type and number of units installed but not less than one of each type.

5. Printer Ribbons: Furnish 6 spare printer ribbons when a printer is provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE EQUIPMENT AND SERVICE PROVIDERS

A. Manufacturers: The equipment and service described in this specification are those supplied and supported by Johnson Controls and represent the base bid for the equipment.

1. Subject to compliance with the requirements of this specification, provide products by one of the following:

a) Simplex, a Johnson Controls Company

B. Being listed as an acceptable Manufacturer in no way relieves obligation to provide all equipment and features in accordance with these specifications.

C. Alternate products must be submitted to the Owner at the time of bid for approval. Alternate or as-equal products submitted under this contract must provide a detailed line-by-line comparison of how the submitted product meets, exceeds, or does not comply with this specification.

D. The equipment and service provider shall be a nationally recognized company specializing in fire alarm and detection systems. This provider shall employ factory trained and NICET Level IV certified technicians and shall maintain a service organization within 50 miles of this project location. The equipment and service provider shall have a minimum of 10 years' experience in the fire protective signaling systems industry.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and systems:

1. Smoke detectors.

2. Duct smoke detectors.

3. Verified automatic alarm operation of smoke detectors.

B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions as required:

1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances.

2. Identify alarm at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.

3. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.

4. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.

5. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.

6. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.

7. Activate smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighter smoke-control system panel.

8. Activate stairwell and elevator-shaft pressurization systems.

9. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.

10. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.

11. Activate emergency lighting control.

12. Activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.

13. Record events in the system memory.

14. Record events by the system printer.

C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Valve supervisory switch.

2. Low-air-pressure switch of a dry-pipe sprinkler system.

3. Elevator shunt-trip supervision.

D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.

2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.

3. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.

4. Ground or a single break in fire-alarm control unit internal circuits.

5. Abnormal AC voltage at fire-alarm control unit.

6. Break in standby battery circuitry.

7. Failure of battery charging.

8. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.

9. Fire-pump power failure, including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.

E. System Trouble and Supervisory Signal Actions: Initiate notification appliance and annunciate at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators. Record the event on system printer where provided.

2.3 NON-SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

A. Single-Station Duct Smoke Detectors:

1. Comply with UL 268A; operating at 120-V ac.

2. Sensor: LED or infrared light source with matching silicon-cell receiver.

a) Detector Sensitivity: Smoke obscuration between 2.5 and 3.5 percent/foot (0.008 and 0.011 percent/mm) when tested according to UL 268A.

3. Detector shall be twist-lock mounted to a fixed base inside a duct mounted housing with associated electronic components. Provide terminals in the duct housing for connection to building wiring.

a) Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector.

4. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.

5. Fan Shutdown Relay: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

6. Provide a red alarm LED, a green power-on LED, a piezoelectric tone-alert silence switch, and a key switch for selecting normal operating mode or to initiate a test or reset operation all mounted to a stainless steel 2-gang electrical plate to be provided in a constantly attended location or located as per the AHJ.

7. Provide test port on duct housing for functional smoke testing access with cover in place.

2.4 ADDRESSABLE INITIATING

A. ADDRESSABLE DUCT SMOKE SENSOR

1. Standard Addressable Duct Smoke Sensor Unit. Photoelectric type, with sampling tube of design and dimensions as recommended by the manufacturer for the specific duct size and installation conditions where applied. Duct housing shall include relay or relay driver as required for fan shutdown.

a) Environmental compensation, programmable sensitivity settings, status testing, and monitoring of sensor dirt accumulation for the duct smoke sensor shall be provided by the FACU.
b) The Duct Housing shall provide a supervised relay driver circuit for driving up to 15 relays with a single "Form C" contact rated at 7A@ 28VDC or 10A@ 120VAC. This auxiliary relay output shall be fully programmable

independent of the sensor head for activation by other alarm initiating devices within the fire alarm system. Relay shall be mounted within 3 feet of HVAC control circuit.

c) Duct Housing shall provide a magnetic test area and Red sensor status LED and Duct Housing shall provide a relay control Yellow LED trouble indicator.

d) Duct Housing shall have a transparent cover to monitor for the presence of smoke. Cover shall secure to housing by means of four (4) captive fastening screws.

e) Duct Housing shall provide two (2) Test Ports for measuring airflow and for testing. These ports will allow aerosol injection in order to test the activation of the duct smoke sensor.

f) For maintenance purposes, it shall be possible to clean the duct housing sampling tubes by accessing them through the duct housing front cover.

g) Each duct smoke sensor shall be provided with a Remote Test Station with an alarm LED and test switch.

h) Where indicated provide a NEMA 4X weatherproof duct housing enclosure that shall provide for the circulation of conditioned air around the internally mounted addressable duct sensor housing to maintain the sensor housing at its rated temperature range. The housing shall be UL Listed to Standard 268A.

2. Addressable In-Duct Mounted Smoke Sensors. Photoelectric type, for applications with controlled dust and humidity providing HVAC duct smoke sensing where sampling tube designs are not appropriate. In-Duct housing shall include relay or relay driver as required for fan shutdown.

a) Shall accommodate duct airflow from 0 to 4000 ft/min (0 to 1220 m/min), and provide environmental compensation, programmable sensitivity settings, status testing, and monitoring of sensor dirt accumulation for the duct smoke sensor by the FACU.

b) The In-Duct Housing shall provide a supervised relay driver circuit for driving up to 15 relays with a single "Form C" contact rated at 7A@ 28VDC or 10A@ 120VAC. This auxiliary relay output shall be fully programmable independent of the sensor head for activation by other alarm initiating devices within the fire alarm system. Relay shall be mounted within 3 feet of HVAC control circuit.

c) Standard models shall be for rectangular ducts from 6” (152 mm) square to 36” (914 mm) square with optional adapters available to allow use with round ducts of 6”, 8” (203 mm), 10” (254 mm) or 12” (305 mm) in diameter.

d) In-Duct Housing shall provide a magnetic test area and Red sensor status LED and In-Duct Housing shall provide a relay control Yellow LED trouble indicator.

e) Duct Housing shall have a transparent cover to monitor for the presence of smoke. Cover shall secure to housing by means of four (4) captive fastening screws.

f) Each duct smoke sensor shall be provided with a Remote Test Station with an alarm LED and test switch.

3. Addressable Air Aspirating Duct Smoke Sensors. Photoelectric type smoke detection with an aspirating system shall provide remote sensor location for ducts

with difficult service access. Detectors shall support remote housing up to 82ft with 1.05" OD rigid pipe; detectors shall support remote housing up to 50ft with ¾" OD flexible tubing. Sampling tubes shall be provided per design and dimensions as recommended by the manufacturer for the specific duct size and installation conditions where applied. Duct Detection system shall be UL listed to Standards 268A, and ULC listed to Standard S529.

a) Environmental compensation, programmable sensitivity settings, status testing and monitoring of sensor dirt accumulation for the duct smoke sensor shall be provided by the FACU.
b) The Air Aspirating duct detection system shall supervise air flow through the duct housing and shall communicate trouble to the fire alarm control unit on a high or low air flow condition.
c) The Air Aspirating Duct Housing shall provide a supervised relay driver circuit for driving up to 15 relays with a single Form C contact rated at 7A@ 28VDC and 120VAC. This auxiliary relay output shall be fully programmable. Relay shall be mounted within 3 feet of HVAC control circuit.
d) Air Aspirating Duct Housing shall provide a magnetic test area and Red sensor status LED.
e) Each duct smoke sensor shall have a Remote Test Station with an alarm LED and test switch.
f) Each duct housing shall have remote functional smoke testing capability.
g) Each duct housing shall be supplied with a replacement air inlet filter.
h) Each duct housing shall have an optional water trap with a ball valve for draining to eliminate moisture buildup.
i) The Air Aspirating Detection system shall have an operating air velocity range of 0 to 4000 linear ft/minute) 0 to 1220 meters/minute.
j) The Addressable Air Aspirating Detection system shall be capable of use in other areas as open area detection where point type detectors are not practical, such as; prison cells in correctional facilities, transformer vaults, cable tunnels and MRI rooms.

B. ADDRESSABLE CIRCUIT INTERFACE MODULES

1. Addressable Circuit Interface Modules: Arrange to monitor or control one or more system components that are not otherwise equipped for addressable communication. Modules shall be used for monitoring of waterflow, valve tamper, non-addressable devices, and for control of AHU systems.

2. Addressable Circuit Interface Modules will be capable of mounting in a standard electric outlet box or be cabinet mounted using appropriate mounting to allow quick replacement. Modules will include cover plates to allow surface or flush mounting. Modules will receive their operating power from the signaling line circuit or a separate two wire pair running from an appropriate power supply, as required.

3. There shall be the following types of modules:

a) Type 1: Monitor Circuit Interface Module:
(a) For conventional 2-wire smoke detector and/or contact device monitoring

with Class B or Class A wiring supervision. This module will communicate status (normal, alarm, trouble) to the FACU.

(b) For conventional 4-wire smoke detector with Class B wiring supervision. The module will provide detector reset capability and over-current power protection for the 4-wire detector. This module will communicate status (normal, alarm, trouble) to the FACU.

b) Type 2: Line Powered Monitor Circuit Interface Module

(a) This type of module is an individually addressable module that has both its power and its communications supplied by the two wire signaling line circuit. It provides location specific addressability to an initiating device by monitoring normally open dry contacts. This module shall have the capability of communicating four zone status conditions (normal, alarm, current limited, trouble) to the FACU.

(b) This module shall provide location specific addressability for up to five initiating devices by monitoring normally closed or normally open dry contact security devices. The module shall communicate four zone status conditions (open, normal, abnormal, and short). The two-wire signaling line circuit shall supply power and communications to the module.

c) Type 3: Single Address Multi-Point Interface Modules

(a) This multipoint module shall provide location specific addressability for four initiating circuits and control two output relays from a single address. Inputs shall provide supervised monitoring of normally open, dry contacts and be capable of communicating four zone status conditions (normal, open, current limited, and short). The input circuits and output relay operation shall be controlled independently and disabled separately.

(b) This dual point module shall provide a supervised multi-state input and a relay output, using a single address. The input shall provide supervised monitoring of two normally open, dry contacts with a single point and be capable of communicating four zone status conditions (normal, open, current limited, and short). The two-wire signaling line circuit shall supply power and communications to the module.

(c) This dual point module shall monitor an unsupervised normally open, dry contact with one point and control an output relay with the other point, using a single address. The two-wire signaling line circuit shall supply power and communications to the module.

d) Type 4: Line Powered Control Circuit Interface Module

(a) This module shall provide control and status tracking of a Form "C" contact. The two-wire signaling line circuit shall supply power and communications to the module.

e) Type 5: 4-20 mA Analog Monitor Circuit Interface Module

(a) This module shall communicate the status of a compatible 4-20 mA sensor to the FACU. The FACU shall annunciate up to three threshold levels, each with custom action message; display and archive actual sensor analog levels; and permit sensor calibration date recording.

4. All Circuit Interface Modules shall be supervised and uniquely identified by the control unit. Module identification shall be transmitted to the control unit for processing according to the program instructions. Modules shall have an on-

board LED to provide an indication that the module is powered and communicating with the FACU. The LEDs shall provide a troubleshooting aid since the LED blinks on poll whenever the peripheral is powered and communicating.

2.5 DEVICE GUARDS

A. Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for the manual station, smoke detector, gong, or other device requiring protection.

1. Factory fabricated and furnished by manufacturer of device.

2. Finish: Paint of color to match the protected device.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install system components and all associated devices in accordance with applicable NFPA Standards and manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Installation personnel shall be supervised by persons who are qualified and experienced in the installation, inspection, and testing of fire alarm systems. Examples of qualified personnel shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Factory trained and certified personnel.

2. National Institute of Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) fire alarm level II certified personnel.

3. Personnel licensed or certified by state or local authority.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

A. Furnish and install a complete Fire Alarm System as described herein and as shown on the plans. Include sufficient control unit(s), annunciator(s), manual stations, automatic fire detectors, smoke detectors, audible and visible notification appliances, wiring, terminations, electrical boxes, Ethernet drops, and all other necessary material for a complete operating system.

B. Existing Fire Alarm Equipment shall be maintained fully operational until the new equipment has been tested and accepted.

C. Equipment Removal: After acceptance of the new fire alarm system, disconnect and remove the existing fire alarm equipment and restore damaged surfaces. Package operational fire alarm and detection equipment that has been removed and deliver to the Owner. Remove from the site and legally dispose of the remainder of the existing material.

D. Water-Flow and Valve Supervisory Switches: Connect for each sprinkler valve

required to be supervised.

E. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in the public space immediately adjacent to the device they monitor.

F. Install manual station with operating handle 48 inches (1.22 m) above floor. Install wall mounted audible and visual notification appliances not less than 80 inches (2.03 m) above floor to bottom of lens and not greater than 96 inches (2.44 m) above floor to bottom of lens.

G. Mount outlet box for electric door holder to withstand 80 pounds pulling force.

H. Make conduit and wiring connections to door release devices.

I. Automatic Detector Installation: Conform to NFPA 72.

J. Ethernet Drop: A standard RJ-45 Ethernet connection to the owner's Ethernet network shall be provided at each fire alarm control unit as part of the contract.

3.3 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate work of this Section with other affected work and construction schedule.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.

1. Verify that hardware and devices are NRTL listed for use with fire-alarm system in this Section before making connections.

B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 3 feet (1 m) from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.

1. Alarm-initiating connection to smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighter smoke-control system panel.

2. Alarm-initiating connection to stairwell and elevator-shaft pressurization systems.

3. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.

4. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.

5. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency lighting control.

6. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.

7. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.

8. Supervisory connections at low-air-pressure switch of each dry-pipe sprinkler system.

9. Supervisory connections at elevator shunt trip breaker.

10. Supervisory connections at fire-pump power failure including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.

11. Supervisory connections at fire-pump engine control panel.

3.5 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. System Wiring: Wire and cable shall be a type listed for its intended use by an approval agency acceptable to the Authority Having Jurisdiction and shall be installed in accordance with the appropriate articles from the current approved edition of NFPA 70: National Electric Code (NEC).

B. Contractor shall obtain from the Fire Alarm System Manufacturer written instruction regarding the appropriate wire/cable to be used for this installation. No deviation from the written instruction shall be made by the Contractor without the prior written approval of the Fire Alarm System Manufacturer.

C. Color Coding: Color-code fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color code for alarm initiating device circuits wiring and a different color code for supervisory circuits. Color-code notification appliance circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.

D. Ethernet Circuits:

1. Ethernet circuits shall be provided to the Fire Alarm Control Unit as shown on the plans.

2. Where a dedicated Fire Alarm Ethernet LAN is specified only Agency Listed Fire Alarm Ethernet hardware shall be installed.

3. The electrical contractor shall coordinate and ensure proper Ethernet connections occur at the fire alarm control unit and other designated equipment locations prior to system turnover.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

3.7 GROUNDING

A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Services: Provide services of a factory-authorized service representative to supervise the field assembly and connection of components and the pretesting, testing, and adjustment of the system.

B. Service personnel shall be qualified and experienced in the inspection, testing, and maintenance of fire alarm systems. Examples of qualified personnel shall be permitted to include, but shall not be limited to, individuals with the following qualifications:

1. Factory trained and certified.

2. National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) fire alarm certified.

3. International Municipal Signal Association (IMSA) fire alarm certified.

4. Certified by a state or local authority.

5. Trained and qualified personnel employed by an organization listed by a national testing laboratory for the servicing of fire alarm systems.

C. Pretesting: Determine, through pretesting, the conformance of the system to the requirements of the Drawings and Specifications. Correct deficiencies observed in pretesting. Replace malfunctioning or damaged items with new and retest until satisfactory performance and conditions are achieved.

D. Inspection:

1. Inspect equipment installation, interconnection with system devices, mounting locations, and mounting methods.

2. Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.

E. Acceptance Operational Tests:

1. Perform operational system tests to verify conformance with specifications:

a) Each alarm initiating device installed shall be operationally tested. Each device shall be tested for alarm and trouble conditions. Contractor shall submit a written certification that the Fire Alarm System installation is complete including all punch-list items. Test battery operated emergency power supply. Test emergency power supply to minimum durations specified. Test Supervising Station Signal Transmitter. Coordinate testing

with Supervising Station monitoring firm/entity.

b) Test each Notification Appliance installed for proper operation. Submit written report indicating sound pressure levels at specified distances.

c) Test Fire Alarm Control Unit and Remote Annunciator.

2. Provide minimum 10 days' notice of acceptance test performance schedule to Owner, and local Authority Having Jurisdiction.

F. Retesting: Correct deficiencies indicated by tests and completely retest work affected by such deficiencies. Verify by the system test that the total system meets the Specifications and complies with applicable standards.

G. Report of Tests and Inspections: Provide a written record of inspections, tests, and detailed test results in the form of a test log. Use NFPA 72 Forms for documentation.

H. Final Test, Record of Completion, and Certificate of Occupancy:

1. Test the system as required by the Authority Having Jurisdiction in order to obtain a certificate of occupancy. Provide completed NFPA 72 Record of Completion form to Owner and AHJ.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

3.10 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

A. Cleaning: Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Clean unit internally using methods and materials recommended by manufacturer.

B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within one year of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sound pressure levels and adjusting controls and sensitivities to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to three visits to the site for this purpose.

3.11 TRAINING

A. Provide the services of a factory-authorized service representative to demonstrate the system and train Owner's maintenance personnel as specified below.

1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel in the procedures and schedules involved in operating, troubleshooting, servicing, and preventive maintaining of the system. Provide a minimum of 8 hours' training.

2. Schedule training with the Owner at least seven days in advance.

END OF SECTION 283111